

**REFINING METADATA FOR GENRE ARCHIVES: A CASE STUDY OF
TRAVEL ARCHIVES**

by

LEROY JOE ARNOLD

submitted in accordance with the requirements
for the degree of

DOCTOR OF LITERATURE AND PHILOSOPHY

in the subject

INFORMATION SCIENCE

at the

UNIVERSITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

SUPERVISOR: PROF T B VAN DER WALT

NOVEMBER 2015

Table of Contents	Page
Chapter 1: Introduction and Context	
1.1 Background to the Study	1
1.1.1 Genre Archives	1
1.1.2 Travel Archives	2
1.1.3 Personal Papers and Special Collections	4
1.1.4 Travel and Memory	5
1.2 Context	6
1.2.1 Library of Congress Subject Headings	6
1.2.2 Initial Literature Review	7
1.2.3 Archival Description and Representation	8
1.3 Statement of the Problem	9
1.4 Purpose	9
1.5 Objectives	9
1.5.1 To Assess the Current State of Metadata Relating to Travel Archives	10
1.5.2 To Ascertain How Researchers Use Travel Collections	10
1.5.3 To Suggest How Travel Archives Can Be Better Described	10
1.5.4 To Propose These Remedies to Other Genre Collections	10
1.6 Research Questions	11
1.7 Methodology Summary	11
1.7.1 Research Approach	11
1.7.2 Research Method	12
1.7.3 Data Collection Methods	12
1.7.4 Data Analysis	14
1.7.5 Population	15
1.7.6 Sampling	15
1.8 Scope and Delimitations	16
1.9 Significance and Originality	17
1.10 Motivation	19
1.11 Definition of Terms	19
1.12 Ethical Considerations and Ethical Principles	21
1.13 Conclusion	22
Chapter 2: Literature Review	
2.1 Introduction	24
2.2 The Importance of Subject Access	26
2.3 The Role of MARC AMC	34
2.4 The Role of the Finding Aid	39
2.5 The Role of Full-text, EAD, DACS and FRBR	45

2.6	Examining User Interface	48
2.7	Access to Genre Archives	51
2.8	The Culture of Collecting	55
2.9	Review Summary	58
2.10	Conclusion	59

Chapter 3: Research Methodology

3.1	Introduction	61
3.2	Research Approach	61
3.3	Research Method/Design	64
3.3.1	Survey	65
3.3.2	Case Study	65
3.4	Data Collection Methods	67
3.4.1	Bibliometric Analysis	67
3.4.2	Interviews	70
3.4.3	Questionnaires	71
3.5	Data Analysis	72
3.6	Data Population Sets	74
3.7	Sampling	75
3.8	Ethical Considerations and Ethical Principles	76
3.9	Conclusion	77

Chapter 4: Presentation of Data

4.1	Introduction	78
4.2	Online Computer Library Center	79
4.2.1	Library of Congress Subject Headings	79
4.2.2	Searching Strategy	81
4.2.3	Initial WorldCat Search	81
4.2.4	Secondary WorldCat Search	85
4.2.5	Tertiary WorldCat Search	90
4.2.6	Fourth WorldCat Search	91
4.2.7	<i>Description and travel</i> as a Subfield in WorldCat	93
4.2.8	Summary of WorldCat Searches	93
4.3	ArchiveGrid	94
4.3.1	Primary Travel Terms	94
4.3.2	Subfield Travel Terms	95
4.3.3	Summary of ArchiveGrid Searches	95
4.4	PACSCL	96
4.4.1	PACSCL Online Finding Aids	96
4.4.2	Summary of PACSCL	98

4.5	American Philosophical Society	98
4.5.1	<i>Catalog of Mss</i>	99
4.5.2	APS 1969-1984 Manuscript Card	100
4.5.3	<i>Subject Collections</i>	101
4.5.4	<i>New Guide</i>	101
4.5.5	<i>American Scientific Exploration</i>	101
4.5.6	APS Online Catalogue	102
4.5.7	APS Subject Access Summary	103
4.6	Penn Museum	104
4.6.1	<i>Guide to the University Museum Archives</i>	105
4.6.2	University Museum Finding Aids	105
4.6.3	Penn Museum Subject Access Summary	105
4.7	Presbyterian Historical Society	106
4.7.1	PHS Card Catalogue	108
4.7.2	PHS Online Catalogue	108
4.7.3	<i>PHS Guides to Archival Collections</i>	108
4.7.4	<i>Guide to the Manuscript Collections</i>	109
4.7.5	<i>Guide to Foreign Missionary Manuscripts</i>	109
4.7.6	PHS Subject Access Summary	109
4.8	Historical Society of Pennsylvania	110
4.8.1	HSP Manuscript Card Catalogue	112
4.8.2	HSP Online Catalogue	113
4.8.3	<i>HSP Guide to Manuscripts</i>	113
4.8.4	HSP Subject Access Summary	114
4.9	Institutional Archivists	117
4.9.1	Interview Schedule	118
4.9.2	Summary of the Interviews	119
4.10	Users	130
4.10.1	Questionnaire	131
4.10.2	Summary of the Questionnaires	132
4.11	Conclusion	134

Chapter 5: Interpretation of the Data

5.1	Introduction	136
5.2	Quantitative Population Data Sets	137
5.2.1	WorldCat	138
5.2.2	ArchiveGrid	139
5.2.3	PACSCL	139
5.2.4	Repository Site Visits Summary	140
5.2.4.1	American Philosophical Society	142

5.2.4.2 Penn Museum	142
5.2.4.3 Presbyterian Historical Society	142
5.2.4.4 Historical Society of Pennsylvania	143
5.2.5 Repository Comparisons	143
5.3 Qualitative Population Data Sets	144
5.3.1 Archival Staff Interview Schedules	144
5.3.2 User Questionnaires	150
5.3.3 Finding Aids	154
5.4 Summaries and Recommendations	155
5.4.1 Overall Summary of the Test Populations	155
5.4.1.1 Databases	156
5.4.1.2 Repositories	158
5.4.1.3 People (Archives and Users)	160
5.4.2 Recommendations	162
5.4.2.1 <i>Description and travel</i>	162
5.4.2.2 <i>Voyages and travels</i>	163
5.4.2.3 Genre/Form Primary Terms	166
5.4.2.4 Genre/Form Subfields	167
5.4.2.5 Keywords	167
5.4.2.6 Analogue Access Points	170
5.5 Conclusion	170

Chapter 6: Conclusions and Recommendations

6.1 Introduction	173
6.2 Meeting the Objectives of the Thesis	176
6.2.1 Current State of Metadata	176
6.2.2 Researchers and Travel Archives	179
6.2.3 Describing Travel Archives Better	180
6.2.4 Other Genre Archives	180
6.3 Improving Access to Travel Archives	181
6.4 Application to Other Genre Archives	182
6.4.1 Standard Subject Terms	183
6.4.2 Genre/Form Primary Terms	186
6.4.3 Genre/Form Subfields	186
6.4.4 Topical Subfield Terms	187
6.5 Summary	188
6.6 Conclusion	191

Bibliography	194
Appendix A Interview Schedule and Questionnaire	211
Appendix B Charts B1-B16	220
Appendix C Consent Forms and Travel Terms Lists	229
Appendix D Interview Schedule Responses	236
Appendix E Questionnaire Responses	261
Appendix F Acronyms	269

Chapter 1: Introduction and Context

1.1 Background to the Study

Travel archives are perhaps one of the more unappreciated archival collections accumulated and kept, often coming only to a repository when the originator dies or is no longer able to enjoy its existence. These archives may be the notes and journals of travel writers, leisure world travellers, scientists on expedition or average people making momentous life relocations. These archives are not something usually passed down from one generation to the next. Family members of these deceased travellers may view keeping memorabilia of trips they have not taken, especially when that memorabilia is voluminous, as more a burden than an honour. However, these travel archives could prove a rich trove for researchers if publically accessible.

That fact, however, does not deter the traveller from documenting a life of travel: saving itineraries, programmes, brochures, menus, post-cards, ephemera, trinkets and doodads. They may keep lists and tables. The traveller may also keep a journal or diary. They may write and publish about their sojourns at a later date. But a travel archive is much more than an accumulation of miscellanea. It is both a documentation of the world out there (one snapshot, diary entry, or preserved brochure at a time) and the character of the traveller who created the collection. These travellers may be *bona fide* travel writers, people of means who travel for leisure, scientists on expedition/missionaries on mission, or emigrants/migrants who are making a life-altering move from one land to another.

Accessing travel archives, which are a subset of genre archives, is the crux of this thesis.

1.1.1 Genre Archives

Just as there are categories in literature for genre fiction (such as mystery, romance or science fiction), this thesis begins with the construct that there also is something that may be termed genre archives. [The use of this new term, however, differs from the use of the term *Genre* when using a 655-tag in a machine readable record; see Section 1.11.] This thesis considers travel archives part of the larger category of genre archives. They share both rich research potential and inadequate access. Genre archival collections (or simply genre archives), for the purpose of this thesis, refer to collections which focus on the activities of one aspect of their creators' lives. Researchers attempting to access genre archives are often stymied by insufficient metadata. They frequently overlook collections because a processing archivist may not have described those collections in a way which would have benefitted their research. For example, someone researching accounts of 19th century travel may find collections under the search term *Travel*, but may miss collections dealing with exploration or expeditions, if an archivist considered these collections more "scientific" than travel and did not provide access to them under *Travel*. This then necessitates the question: How can an archivist apply access points in a more effective way when describing genre archives?

Genre archives are most often personal archives, and travel archives are but one type of genre archives. Other types of genre archives may include: family history archives, artists' archives, archives of religious or sports figures. The issue of research access is common to these other forms of archives as well. It is the goal of this research that remedies for improving subject access to travel archives also be available for application to these other types of genre archives.

Travel archives may be unique but their access problems are shared with many other genre archives. Genealogical archives and literary archives are not as easily identifiable as one may think. Archivists can play a more active role in helping these collections expand their audiences by making them more accessible.

Determining just how researchers are using these collections is also a key to description. Duff and Johnson (2003) find addressing the archival needs of genealogists a useful approach when using family history papers as a case study. Genealogical archives, like travel archives, are a subset of genre archives. Since, like Perrone (2006) who describes her frustration in trying to locate archives of closed Roman Catholic women's colleges in the United States, there is a problem with description of travel archives, then it is incumbent to devise ways to remedy the dilemma of access. The aim of this study, therefore, is to explore, using travel archives as a case study, how archivists can better use metadata in describing genre archives.

1.1.2 Travel Archives

For the purposes of this thesis, travel archives are seen as material accumulated which document someone's purposeful travel. These could be the personal papers of travel writers, notes and papers of explorers, diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business, leisure or relocation. This concept is based on the parallel definition for travel writing [see Section 1.11].

People use travel archives to acquire a better understanding of their creators or of the situations their creators were in. For instance, the library at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania holds the Bartram Family Papers. John and William Bartram were American explorers (the states of North and South Carolina, Georgia and Florida in the United States) and naturalists. Researchers are interested in their journals for their descriptions (and sketches) of not only flora and fauna, but also of the American Indians¹. These encounters with the American Indians were often the first such meetings in these areas of the American south. The journals also contain detailed accounts of the hardships of their journeys. One gets a sense of the Bartrams as people—as well as explorers (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2009).

Historic travel writing, often the end-product of a travel archive, generally focused on pilgrimages, exploration, adventure and leisure (Arnold 2000). Yet finding these and perhaps other types of genre archives is a difficult task due to either too narrow/too broad or insufficient metadata. It is most likely the intent of the creator of the collection which foreshadows its archival description. This may be because archivists have traditionally described collections based on archival *fonds* (MacNeil 1996) -- basing access on provenance rather than pertinence.

One aim of this study is to determine, using travel archives as a case study, how archivists can better use metadata in describing genre collections. In order to accomplish that, one needs to investigate how they are currently described. They could have been described in many ways, since they were most likely personal papers of travel writers, notes and papers of explorers, or diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business, leisure or relocation.

Travel archives may not even be in repositories. American travel writer, and travel writing instructor, L. Peat O'Neil accumulated over twelve linear feet of travel notebooks and journals during thirty years of journal writing (O'Neil 2000:1). Yet, they do not show up in any collection after search on OCLC's WorldCat.

For this case study, travel² archives are viewed as the accumulation of materials associated with someone's travels. These could be the personal papers of travel writers such as the Graham Greene papers at Boston College in Massachusetts. Graham Greene was an English novelist, playwright, and literary critic. As a travel writer (*Journey Without Maps* [Liberia] and *The Lawless Roads* [Mexico]), he often incorporated his actual travels into his fiction (*The Power and the Glory* [Mexico] and *The Comedians* [Haiti]) (Iyer 2013).

They could be the notes and papers of individual explorers or expeditions - the Meriwether Lewis expedition journals, at the American Philosophical Society [APS] in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, or the William and John Bartram exploration collection at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP], are examples of this type. Meriwether Lewis and William Clark headed up the American Corps of Discovery Expedition from 1804-1806. American President Thomas Jefferson commissioned the Lewis and Clark Expedition to explore the newly acquired (from France in 1803) Louisiana Territory. Their objectives were to reach the Pacific Ocean, map and establish American legal presence in the territory and establish diplomatic relations with the various American Indian tribes there (American Philosophical Society 2001). The Bartrams were explorers (Georgia and Florida in the United States) and botanists. Their journals contain descriptions (and sketches) of not only flora and fauna, but also of the American Indians. Their contacts were often the first such encounters in these areas. The journals also contain day-to-day accounts of the hardships of their journeys (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2009).

It could be diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business or leisure, such as the Atherton Blight papers. Atherton Blight was one of the many Americans who took a "grand tour" of Europe in the 1800s. His diary (1855-1856), housed at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, documents his travels to Western Europe, Egypt, Palestine, Syria, Turkey, the Crimea, and Greece (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991a).

The few examples, cited above, also help outline the difficulty with access. For instance, the OCLC (Online Computer Library Center, an international [23,000 libraries, archives and museums in 170 countries] cooperative database based in the American city of Dublin, Ohio) record for the Graham Greene papers contains no subject tracings for travel, only a mention of

travel in a 351-tag organisation and arrangement notes (OCLC 2014). The finding aid for the Graham Greene collection does not mention *Travel* in its subject listings (Boston College 2013). For the Meriwether Lewis journals, there are no direct subject tracings for *Travel*, only subdivisions for the Louisiana Purchase [another name for the newly-acquired American land called the Louisiana Territory] and the United States for *Discovery and exploration* and a subdivision for the West (U.S.) for *Description and travel*. There is mention of travel in the 520-tag contents note (OCLC 2014). The finding aid for the Meriwether Lewis journals on the American Philosophical Society's website does list *Travel* as a subject heading (American Philosophical Society 2001).

Likewise for the OCLC record on the Bartram family papers: There are no direct subject tracings for *Travel*, only subdivisions for the American states of Georgia and Florida for *Description and travel* (OCLC 2014). For the Atherton Blight papers, there are *Description and travel* subdivisions for several of the geographic locations mentioned in his diaries, plus a travel note in the 520-tag contents note (OCLC 2014).

There is a clear need for better access to travel archives.

1.1.3 Personal Papers and Special Collections

Travel archives, like family papers or genealogical collections, are almost always (though not exclusively) considered personal papers. Bradsher (1991) defines personal papers as: “Information recorded or received by private individuals and employees of a governmental entity or private organization or institution, and not created or received during the course of conducting official business ... personal papers are accumulated by individuals or families in the conduct of their personal, professional, and private concerns” (Bradsher 1991:2).

Travel archives are the materials (either in manuscript form or printed ephemera) which document the purposeful travel of an individual. Like family papers (which are also personal papers) they may be perceived as having limited value beyond their fellow travellers or family members. Sometimes repositories gather together similar material into special collections, even though provenance differs. For instance, an archive may group together a collection of journals as a special collection, or a group of commonplace books, daybooks, diaries, etc. (Zboray & Zboray 2009).

Personal papers may also include items relating to travel, even when the majority of the collection is non-travel. For instance, if there is a collection of a New York City woman's diaries from 1876, one of them may include a portion (or perhaps an entire volume) dedicated to a visit to the Centennial Exposition in Philadelphia (America's first World's Fair). While this woman's collection of diaries would not be considered a travel archive, it may be considered a travel-related collection. Irrespective of the terminology, that collection should be adequately described so that a researcher, looking at 19th century travel patterns by American women, could find it.

1.1.4 Travel and Memory

People collect as a way to hang on to a memory. So too does the traveller collect and document a life of travel: saving itineraries, programmes, brochures, menus, post-cards, ephemera and trinkets. They may keep lists and charts. The traveller may also keep a journal or diary. They may have hopes of writing and publishing about their sojourns at a later date. A travel archive is much more than an accumulation of stuff. It is both a documentation of the world out there, one snapshot at a time, and the character of the traveller. For examples: Why did the traveller go to one place and not another; why did he love Hong Kong but find Macao tiring; why did he choose to keep precise records on Paraguay yet barely any evidence of a side-trip to its neighbour Argentina?

American travel writer and novelist Reggie Nadelson (2012) holds that a “great souvenir is a singular tangible memory keeper, an almost metaphysical object in which you’ve invested the essence of a journey, and which, seen or touched in repose, can instantly bring it back” (Nadelson 2012:64). Unlike the odd souvenir someone may take back from a trip, a travel collection is more substantial, more referential. It serves as an *aide-mémoire* for not only the item but also the travel experience. Stewart (1993) writes: “In contrast to the souvenir, the collection offers example rather than sample, metaphor rather than metonymy. The collection does not displace attention to the past; rather, the past is at the service of the collection, for whereas the souvenir leads authenticity to the past, the past lends authenticity to the collection” (Stewart 1993:151).

The American memoirist and playwright Lillian Hellman (1980) was obsessed with memory and reevaluation, and writes about both in the introduction to a memoir chapter called “Pentimento,” describing people who had influenced her either positively or negatively: “Old paint on canvas, as it ages, sometimes becomes transparent. When that happens it is possible, in some pictures, to see the original lines: a tree will show through a woman’s dress, a child makes way for a dog, a large boat is no longer on an open sea. That is called pentimento because the painter ‘repented,’ changed his mind. Perhaps it would be as well to say that the old conception, replaced by a later choice, is a way of seeing and then seeing again. That is all I mean about the people in this book. The paint has aged now and I wanted to see what was there for me once, what is there for me now” (Hellman 1980:309).

The editor of the long-standing *Best American Travel Writing* series, Jason Wilson, writes that traditionally travel writing has been about “fear and suffering and travail” (Theroux 2014: xvi). But, more importantly, he adds that “this truth is only partially correct. Travel is also very much about love and memory” (Theroux 2014: xvi).

1.2 Context

This thesis uses an established name authorities system as a base for measuring subject access.

1.2.1 Library of Congress Subject Headings³

In the United States, the Library of Congress [LOC] has developed a name authorities system to facilitate access to metadata (Library of Congress authorities 2014). The LOC subject heading *Travel* contains many nuances. While there are no broader terms (or more encompassing terms) for *Travel*, there are many narrower ones: *Adventure travel*, *Air travel*, *Astrology and travel*, *Automobile travel*, *Bicycle touring*, *Bus travel*, *Business travel*, *Caravans*, *Games for travelers*, *Homecoming*, *Independent travel*, *International travel*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage—packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Ocean travel*, *Pets and travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Signs and symbols for travelers*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Travel restrictions*, *Travelers' aid societies*, *Workers' travel programs* and *Youth travel programs*. The LOC suggests seeing also the related terms *Tourism* and *Voyages and travels*. In a MARC [Machine-Readable Cataloguing] record, an *x* subdivision *Description and travel* is used under the names of countries and cities. The *x* subdivision *Travel* is used under individual persons and corporate bodies, classes of persons and ethnic groups. The *x* subdivision of *Journeys* may also be used. *Travel*, as an *x* subdivision, may also be used with countries and cities. [In these instances, *x* refers to a topical description of a subfield of a primary field—also called a tag. These tags can be subject headings, personal or corporate names, or geographical locations.]

The LOC also has a subject heading for *Travel writing*. This is used mainly for narratives and memoirs. Collections of works by travel writers have the heading *Travelers' writings*. This may also be further described by adding a nationality, like: *Travelers' writings, Canadian*. Works on journalism, focusing on travel, have the subject heading *Travel journalism*.

Voyages and travels, as a subject heading, also has no broader terms but plenty of narrower ones: *Aeronautics - flights*, *Air travel*, *Buccaneers*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Ocean travel*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Railroad travel*, *Scientific expeditions*, *Seafaring life*, *Shipwrecks*, *Space flights*, *Travel delays*, *Voyages around the world* and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*. *Voyages and travels'* see-also references are: *Adventure and adventurers*, *Travel* and *Travelers*. *Description and travel* and *Discovery and exploration* may be used as an *x* subdivision under the names of countries and regions larger than countries. The *x* subdivision *Travel* is used under individual persons and corporate bodies, classes of persons' ethnic groups, and names of individual ships. Like *Voyages and travels*, *Tourism* as a subject heading has no broader terms but many narrower ones: *Architecture and tourism*, *Cruise lines*, *Culture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Dark tourism*, *Ecotourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Garden tours*, *Geotourism*, *Heritage tourism*, *Holistic tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Indian tourism*, *Lake tourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Outfitting*

industry, Package tours, River tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism, Sex tourism, Sightseeing business, Space tourism, Sports and tourism, Sustainable tourism, Volunteer tourism, Wine tourism and Women in tourism. Tourism's see-also references are: National tourism organizations and Travel.

The LOC set-up is similar for the subject heading *Archives*. There are no broader terms for *Archives* but a healthy number of narrower ones: *Anthropological archives, Archival institutes and workshops, Archival materials, Archival resources, Art archives, Audio-visual archives, Broadcasting archives, Church archives, Court archives, Dance archives, Family archives, Film archives, Folklore archives, Genealogical libraries, Historical libraries, Jewish archives, Medical archives, Municipal archives, Museum archives, Newspaper archives, Performing arts archives, Personal archives, Scientific archives, Sound archives, Temple records and registers and Web archives*. The see-also terms are: *Cartularies, Charters, Diplomats and Public records*. The *v* subdivision *Archival resources* is used under topical headings and names of countries and cities. The *v* subdivision *Archives* is used under types of corporate bodies, classes of persons and ethnic groups, and names of individual persons, families and corporate bodies for collections, etc. The *v* subdivision, unlike the *x* subdivision discussed earlier, refers to the physical description of the material, not the topical.

There is, of course, a possibility that the access problem is greater than terminology at the descriptive level. Given modern archival practices, these records may not have been retained either due to life cycle schedules or simply by the fact that an archivist may not have considered them germane to the collection. One, however, would hope that archives by known travellers would not have been subject to destruction during processing. Once again, one may consider the author Graham Greene. For example, any documentation of his time at the Hotel Oloffson in Port-au-Prince, Haiti (when writing the book *The Comedians*) should not have been viewed on the same level as incidental travel in other contexts. Focusing on archives which document purposeful travel should help in this endeavour.

For this thesis, purposeful travel is intended to mean travel that is (usually) planned and results in another product (such as a novel, travel narrative, travelogue) or a life-altering event (moving across country for a new job, moving across the sea for a new life). Incidental travel is intended to mean daily or mundane travel (a daily commute to work or school, trips to go shopping). Travel writers Nadelson (2012) and Shteyngart (2014) speak of travel, writing and memory. It is not surprising that travel writers maintain a travel archive (organized as one or not) in order to facilitate their writing.

1.2.2 Initial Literature Review

A search for basic phraseology of “finding aids” and “travel archives” using the Library, Information Science and Technology Abstracts [LISTA] database did not yield any results (LISTA 2014). A broader literature search was only slightly more forthcoming. While there

were lots of studies about access to archival collections, over the past 30 years, they were mostly general and did not address travel archives (and rarely addressed genre archival collections). Prior to 2003 these types of studies provided a concise overview of the history of archival description and how each new development would solve the problems or deficiencies of the previous “new thing”: Creating a finding aid was better than typing out subject cards; Machine-Readable Cataloguing Archival and Manuscripts Control [MARC AMC] would make collections more accessible; Dublin Core and Encoded Archival Description [EAD] would render MARC AMC and paper finding aids (respectively) irrelevant. None of these studies have a direct impact on the thesis at hand, but they do provide a litany of the ongoing problem of archival access. Czeck (1998), Feeney (1999), Dooley (1992) and Greenberg (1998) are good examples.

Within the last ten years, new solutions are described which would address the old deficiencies -- for example, the belief that search-engines would solve the problem. Some of the concepts from these types of articles, like MacNeil (MacNeil 2005), have an indirect impact on this proposal.

There were a handful of studies which looked at similar issues but through the lens of other genre archival collections (genealogy, presidential papers, regional history, etc.). Perrone’s (2006), Southwell’s (2002), and Strong’s (2000) studies are good. However, none of these articles directly (or indirectly) address the issue of access to travel archives. The question still remaining, then, is: How does one describe travel archives better to provide more efficient access by researchers? More precisely, for the larger scope of this research proposal: How can metadata be applied in a more effective way to genre archives to increase access?

Overall, the articles provide a concise overview of the history of archival description and how each new development would solve the problems or deficiencies of the previous iteration. None of them have a direct impact on the thesis at hand, but they do provide a litany of the ongoing problem of archival access. Looking at articles published over the last ten years, new solutions are described which would address the old deficiencies. [For a more complete literature review, see Chapter 2.]

1.2.3 Archival Description and Representation

Bradsher (1991) states that “The goal of descriptive activity is to assist researchers in locating pertinent documents” (Bradsher 1991:70). Description can be either at the provenance level (or archival *fonds*) and pertinence (MacNeil 1996). Provenance level description focuses on the intent of the creator. Pertinence level description focuses on how the materials could be accessed (and used) by potential researchers (Lytle 1980).

“[A]rchival description comprises clear, accurate and objective reporting of the common characteristics of documents which were maintained as a group by their creator” (Bradsher 1991:70). Bradsher (1991) lists five categories of information crucial for minimum archival description: 1) title phrase, 2) series dates, 3) series quantity, 4) physical arrangement and 5) informational content (Bradsher 1991:70).

The last category, informational content, includes subject access. In a finding aid these are subject terms which denote people or entities, geography, and topics related to the collection. In a machine readable record, these would be 600-tags (personal names), 610-tags (corporate names), 650-tags (subjects) and 651-tags (geographical).

Archival representation (an often tangible outcome of archival description) may take a variety of forms: guides, inventories, finding aids, bibliographic records, card catalogs, bibliographic databases or EAD databases. Irrespective of the form, they are the initial surrogate to the collection. They allow the researcher to determine not only if the collection is pertinent to their research, but what in the collection (and often where in the collection if there is an inventory) that relevant material is located.

1.3 Statement of the Problem

Due to inadequate subject description, it is often difficult for researchers to access travel archives. Travel archives are a form of genre archives. Archives are described by metadata (MARC [Machine-Readable Cataloguing] records, finding aids, path-finders, etc.).

There is a secondary problem related to this one: other genre archives also have access issues.

1.4 Purpose

The purpose of this research is to examine, describe, and identify gaps in the description of travel archives with the goal of better describing travel archives, in order to provide more efficient access. Research conducted on travel archives (and the recommendations stemming from this research) will serve as a case study and be applicable to other forms of genre archives. The same measures recommended to improve access to travel archives should also be beneficial, for example, to genealogical archives (another genre archive).

1.5 Objectives

There are four overarching objectives to this research project:

- To assess the current state of metadata relating to travel archives;
- To ascertain how (or why) researchers use travel archives;
- To suggest how travel archives can be better described; and
- To propose these remedies to other genre collections.

1.5.1 To Assess the Current State of Metadata Relating to Travel Archives

Travel archives are not easy to locate. In a similar vein, Perrone (2006) [see Chapter 2] knew there must be archives of closed colleges run by Roman Catholic religious congregations (sisterhoods) in existence, but could not locate the records using traditional archival search terms. This researcher also had difficulty locating travel archives using standard searching methods of union databases. Looking at the current state of metadata provides a clue as to why these collections prove to be elusive. In many cases, collections that should have had access points which included *Travel* as a subject term did not (OCLC 2014). For instance, a journal of someone who made a “grand European tour” in the 19th century should have a subject heading of *Travel writing* or *Voyages and travels* or at least a subfield *Travel* after a name subject heading for the traveller. A researcher, looking for such a diary, would not find it if it were only classified as “Smith, John - Diaries.”

1.5.2 To Ascertain How Researchers Use Travel Archives

Ascertaining just how or why researchers use travel archives may aid archivists as they assign metadata. For instance, a researcher using a travel collection may not be interested in the travel aspect of it, but rather in some historical or cultural facet. For instance, a researcher documenting the Hotel Oloffson in Port-au-Prince, Haiti may wish to consult the papers of travel writer and novelist Graham Greene (who stayed at the hotel when writing his book *The Comedians*), even though they are not all that interested in Greene’s actual travels. Archivists are crucial in helping to identify researchers who use travel archives. These researchers can then be queried on their use of the material. If current travel archives users are not available, archivists can be solicited to describe past use of travel archives by researchers.

1.5.3 To Suggest How Travel Archives Can Be Better Described

After assessing how metadata is currently being applied to travel archives and how researchers use or would like to use these materials, one is able to suggest how travel archives can benefit from being better described, or at the very least described differently. Providing a solution for badly or under-described archival collections can be beneficial to researchers. It involves “re-describing” currently processed collections. It certainly necessitates describing unprocessed collections, with an eye to highlighting the travel aspects of the content.

1.5.4 To Propose These Remedies to Other Genre Collections

Travel archives are just one type of genre archive. Genre archives are most often personal archives. The issues of research access are common to other forms of genre archives as well. This thesis holds that remedies for accessing travel archives may also be applied to these other genre archives.

1.6 Research Questions

The following research questions are answered in the course of this project:

- How are travel archives currently described (as exploration, expedition, travel accounts, cartographic, etc.) and what is the quality (based on standard criteria) of the finding aids to these collections?
- How are these collections used by researchers?
- How can travel archives be better described?
- How can the remedies for accessing travel archives be expanded to other genre collections?

How travel archives are described is addressed in Chapter 4. The Society of American Archivists and the Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries [PACSCCL] have each developed a finding aid standard which will be used as the basis for the second part of the first research question [see Chapter 5].

For the second research question, data collection instruments are further discussed in Chapter 3. How travel archives can be better described is addressed in Chapter 5. Additional remedies are covered in Chapter 6.

1.7 Methodology Summary

Gilliland-Swetland (2000) holds that doctoral archival students “... should be able to formulate their own way of looking at the world of archives and archival issues, and obtain a set of leadership skills, research tools, and a vocabulary to query, understand, and advance the profession and the discipline” (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:259). [Further discussion of methodology is found in Chapter 3.]

1.7.1 Research Approach

A combination of quantitative and qualitative measures is used in gathering data. This mixed methods research methodology is a solid approach to this research topic. Cresswell (2003) outlines four criteria for choosing a mixed methods research strategy: implementation, priority, integration, and theoretical perspective. “Implementation means either that the researchers collect both the quantitative and qualitative data in phases (sequentially) or that they gather it at the same time (concurrently)” (Cresswell 2003:211). This project will collect data sequentially.

This study is intended to be applied research, in that it is “... intended to address issues that have immediate relevance to current practices, procedures and policies” (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:43). While institutional policies may not be gravely affected, the recommendations for better accessing travel archives will be practical and doable and should have a positive effect on archival practices and procedures. But Gilliland-Swetland (2000) encourages archival doctoral

students “ ... to learn how to apply research skills not only with a view to *improving* the professional environment (applied research), but also to *proving* the premises upon which it has developed (theoretical research)[italics hers]” (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:260). [For greater detail see Section 3.2.]

1.7.2 Research Method/Design

Using travel archives as a case study, this thesis focuses in particular on travel archives located at four institutions in the American city of Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. Rudestam and Newton (2007) hold that case studies “...are more commonly associated with qualitative designs, in which there is an intensive effort to understand a single unit of study within a complex context. The research questions may vary, but the goal is to obtain a comprehensive understanding of the case” (Rudestam & Newton 2007:50). Gilliland-Swetland (2000) defines a case study as: “In-depth study of an individual situation, institution, or process in order to understand it in complex detail, and sometimes, to compare against other cases” (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:267). The study of travel archives (and their issues with access) produces results that are applicable to other genre archives. However, focusing on only one genre ensures that the project is attainable. [For greater detail, see Section 3.3.]

1.7.3 Data Collection Methods

First, using a form of bibliometric analysis, the research begins by surveying MARC records of travel archives at publicly accessible institutions, described in English, from OCLC’s WorldCat (OCLC 2014). The next component of bibliometric analysis is to examine travel-related finding aids on ArchiveGrid (ArchiveGrid 2014). [See Section 3.4.1 for greater detail.]

For analysing these records, the premier component is searching the OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] WorldCat database, for travel archives or travel-related collections. OCLC is an international cataloguing database with: 25,900 participating libraries, archives and museums from 170 countries and territories, 2 billion + holdings, and new records being added every few seconds (OCLC 2014). WorldCat’s records are routinely downloaded into ArchiveGrid and may be searched from either database. To get only WorldCat MARC records in a search on ArchiveGrid, one needs to include this qualifier in the search terms: type:amc.

The next component of bibliometric analysis is to examine finding aids for travel archives on ArchiveGrid. ArchiveGrid is an excellent tool to research how travel archives are described in finding aids. According to its website: “ArchiveGrid is a collection of over two million archival material descriptions, including MARC records from WorldCat and finding aids harvested from the web... ArchiveGrid provides access to detailed archival collection descriptions such as documents, personal papers, family histories, and other archival materials held by thousands of libraries, museums, historical societies, and archives” (ArchiveGrid 2014). The University of

South Africa is a contributing institution, as are three of the four local repositories examined in this study: American Philosophical Society, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. [The University of Pennsylvania Rare Book and Manuscript Library is a contributor, but not the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology.] ArchiveGrid has EAD, HTML, and PDF finding aid types. To get them all, one needs to include this qualifier in the search terms: (type:ead OR type:html OR type:pdf).

WorldCat and ArchiveGrid are global databases. To refine the research, the second step is to search a smaller, regional American version of ArchiveGrid called the PACSCL Finding Aids database. PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] consists of 36 members in the Greater Philadelphia area. The “site provides access to finding aids for manuscript and archival collections held by its members, a group of 36 libraries and archives, whose collections offer primary resources on national, regional, and local history; the natural and social sciences; world history; literature; religion; art and architecture; business and industry; and the performing arts. It also hosts finding aids for smaller institutions in the region prepared through the Historical Society of Pennsylvania's Hidden Collections Initiative for Pennsylvania Small Archival Repositories” (PACSCL 2014). The American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Rare Book and Manuscript Library (but not the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology), Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania are all founding members of PACSCL. The same controlled vocabulary used for WorldCat and ArchiveGrid is used on this smaller data set. [See Section 3.4.1 for greater detail.]

For the third step, initial interviews with archivists during site visits of the targeted repositories, will be followed up by a one-on-one, administered interview schedule of selected staff. As a way to ascertain how users access travel archives or travel-related collections, the researcher will send a questionnaire to archival patrons, gleaned from suggested by the staff archivist at the selected repositories. Gilliland-Swetland (2000) describes survey research as: “Written or oral surveys designed to produce systematic, representative, qualitative, and quantifiable data based on responses provided by individuals within a targeted population to a predetermined set of questions” (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:267). These surveys include questions using Likert-type scales as well as opened-ended questions for assessing modes of improved access. [See Sections 3.4.2 and 3.4.3 for greater detail.]

The researcher will devise an interview schedule [see Appendix A] for archival staff at the four designated repositories: the American Philosophical Society, the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. These four repositories hold material representing four distinct types of travel: the American Philosophical Society (geographic exploration), the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology (scientific expedition), Presbyterian Historical Society (foreign missionary) and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (leisure and emigration). There are, of course, overlaps. The American

Philosophical Society also contains scientific expedition collections. The Historical Society of Pennsylvania also contains exploration collections. But, generally, these categories hold.

The Interview Schedule [see Appendix A] results from a combination of the researcher's literature review, personal research and site visits and background discussions with archival staff at the four targeted institutions (the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania). The researcher will choose two representatives, each from the four repositories, to take the survey. The Interview Schedule refers to the practices at each repository, not for the archival field in general.

The researcher will devise a questionnaire [see Appendix A] for researchers at the four designated repositories: the American Philosophical Society, the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. Researchers at these four repositories use material representing four distinct types of travel: geographic exploration, scientific expedition, missionary activity and leisure and emigration. There are, of course, overlaps. Researchers at the American Philosophical Society could also use scientific expedition collections. Researchers at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania could also view exploration collections.

1.7.4 Data Analysis

In examining MARC records, attention is paid to the MARC subject tracings: 600-tag (personal name), 610-tag (corporate name), 650-tag (subject); 651-tag (geographical), 655-tag (genre/form) etc. —looking for indication of travel-related access terms. Records with explicit 6xx fields with the terms *Travel* and *Description and travel*, etc. as subfields are more helpful than those with more opaque terms. [A more complete discussion of Data Analysis is found in Section 3.5.]

For examining finding aids, completeness of description (based on abstract, background note, scope & content note, overview of arrangement, series descriptions, bibliography, administrative information, and inventory) is the consideration.

Interviews are conducted (seeking detailed information on collections scope and use) with archivists and users receive questionnaires, to ascertain how archivists process and researchers use travel-related collections. Review of all data is concurrent with its gathering and used to formulate recommendations for improved access.

One measure of internal validity is determining if the results of the data collected on WorldCat, ArchiveGrid, the PACSCL finding aids site, and card catalogues for the site visits mirror each other. In the initial sample, mentioned above comparing WorldCat and finding aids access points, the (paltry) results are similar. Likewise, seeing if the findings are generalisable (external

validity) can also be measured by consulting another repository with travel archives, seeing how their access points compare to the controlled groups.

Replication by other researchers should not be an issue. All of the databases (WorldCat, ArchiveGrid and PACSCL) are publically available for research. Each of the four targeted repositories is open to the public. Another researcher should be able to replicate the searching performed on these data sets.

1.7.5 Population

The overall method moves from larger to smaller quantitative data sets of populations. The largest set consists of world-wide data on union databases, consisting of MARC records and online finding aids which document travel collections. These are represented by OCLC (MARC records) and ArchiveGrid (finding aids) [see Section 3.7]. A smaller search is then conducted on regional finding aids which may not be represented on ArchiveGrid (from PACSCL) [see Section 3.6].

The smallest data set involves site visits to repositories in the Philadelphia area which hold substantial travel-related archives: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.3.3].

There are two qualitative data sets of populations: the views and opinions of archivists and users of travel collections. Both of these populations are represented by samples from the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, the Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.7].

1.7.4 Sampling

There are three quantitative sampling components to this study [see Section 3.4.1]: MARC records on OCLC, finding aids on ArchiveGrid and PACSCL and manual access points at four noted repositories with substantial travel archives (American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania). The first quantitative sample, MARC records, is gleaned from the OCLC database WorldCat. OCLC is an international cooperative database based in Dublin, Ohio, representing 23,000 libraries, archives and museums in 170 countries (OCLC 2014).] [WorldCat MARC records are regularly imported into ArchiveGrid where one can do a unified search or searches via MARC and finding aids (ArchiveGrid 2014).]

The second quantitative sample, finding aids, is gleaned from the ArchiveGrid and PACSCL. ArchiveGrid, with thousands of contributing members, is an excellent tool to research how travel archives are described. According to its website: “ArchiveGrid is a collection of over two

million archival material descriptions, including MARC records from WorldCat and finding aids harvested from the web... ArchiveGrid provides access to detailed archival collection descriptions such as documents, personal papers, family histories, and other archival materials held by thousands of libraries, museums, historical societies, and archives” (ArchiveGrid 2014). The PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] Finding Aids union database (PACSCL finding aids 2014) consists of 36 members in the Greater Philadelphia area representing more than 4,000,000 rare books, 260,000 linear feet of manuscripts and archival materials and 9,000,000 photographs (PACSCL 2014).

The third quantitative sampling component, examining manual access points at four noted repositories with substantial travel archives (American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania), is a purposive sample, drawn due to their significant holdings.

1.8 Scope and Delimitations

People’s travel collections (individuals most often do not think of their material as an archives; usually that term is used when a collection is described at a repository) basically serve as a memory aid, to help them write travelogues, novels, scientific reports when they return home. They may also just have been a way to document a voyage or journey for future generations. There are also those who have no intention of professional or public writing about their travels or leaving their material to anyone (or any place) when they have died. They keep their travel collections for purely self interest, either as enjoyment or simply an *aide-mémoire*. But even these collections, unintended travel archives, end up in repositories.

It is unrealistic to attempt a universal study of access to travel archives. Delimiters are deliberate limitations placed on a study by the researcher, usually in terms of a research population (Rudestam & Newton 2007:105). The first delimiter of this thesis is to focus on paper-based archives. Travel writers, like Russian-born Gary Shteyngart, already are beginning to only keep electronic records, in his case on his iPhone (Shteyngart 2014:46). Electronic travel archives, like any other topic of electronic records, will be something that archives will need to address. Recommendations from this study should be beneficial for this medium as well. But for efficiency, this study will concentrate on traditional paper-based material.

As limiting this study to paper-based archives is efficient, also for efficiency of research, the second delimiter is to examine those travel archives described in English. For ease of access, limiting the study to travel archives described in English (world-wide), the researcher is able to capture institutions that basically follow the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules [AACR2] (AACR2 2012).

The third delimiter is to move from larger to smaller data sets. One begins by surveying travel archivists at publicly accessible institutions. ArchiveGrid, with thousands of contributing

members, is an excellent tool to research how travel archives are described. According to its website: “ArchiveGrid is a collection of over two million archival material descriptions, including MARC records from WorldCat and finding aids harvested from the web... ArchiveGrid provides access to detailed archival collection descriptions such as documents, personal papers, family histories, and other archival materials held by thousands of libraries, museums, historical societies, and archives” (ArchiveGrid 2014). The University of South Africa is a contributing institution of ArchiveGrid. An initial search of ArchiveGrid for “travel archives” returned seven records; “travel collection” returned 39 (ArchiveGrid 2014). Another search source is the OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] database for travel archives collections. OCLC is a worldwide cataloguing cooperative, its WorldCat records are also downloaded into ArchiveGrid. They can be searched on ArchiveGrid using a specific protocol for MARC records only (as a specific protocol on ArchiveGrid can be used to search only finding aids).

Another step is to sample finding aids for travel archives. A smaller, regional American version of ArchiveGrid is the PACSCL Finding Aids database. PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] consists of 36 members in the Greater Philadelphia area: “The collections of PACSCL member libraries include a total of more than 4,000,000 rare books, 260,000 linear feet of manuscripts and archival materials, and 9,000,000 photographs, maps, architectural drawings, and works of art on paper. PACSCL member libraries hold rich collections of materials on national, regional, and local history; the natural and social sciences; world history, literature and religion; art and architecture; and business and industry” (PACSCL 2014). An initial search using the term “travel archives” returned zero records; a search using both of those words, but not together, yielded 156 records, not all of which seemed appropriate for this study (PACSCL finding aids 2014). But one knows that there must be more collections out there; they are just not described under travel (but may well be under other American name authority standards).

Archivists are also surveyed on the use of travel archives by researchers. This survey is drawn from member archives in the PACSCL group and from the local professional archivists association: the Delaware Valley Archivists Group [DVAG]. Representing the metropolitan area of the American city of Philadelphia, DVAG was founded in 1980 to provide archivists with opportunities for greater communication and professional development (DVAG 2014).

1.9 Significance and Originality

This study is significant in that it suggests remedies for improving access to travel-related archival collections. Researchers attempting to access this type of archive are often hindered by insufficient (or inefficient) metadata. They frequently overlook collections because a processing archivist may not have described a collection in a way which would have benefitted their research. However, travel archives are only one type of genre archive. The remedies proposed

in the project should be beneficial to other genre archives (such as family papers or literary papers).

Travel, as an industry, has seen an uptake in recent years. Despite security obstacles for the travelling public, more people are flying, travelling by rail, or otherwise going places. For example, 83% of flights (on American-based carriers) in 2012 were filled, compared to 71% in 2000 and 56% in 1977 (Peterson 2013:34). American airlines were profitable again in 2012, after a decade of crises (Peterson 2013:41). This travelling by the public is reflected in the surge of travel literature being published. In order to write about travelling, authors need to document their travels: writing things down in a journal or diary or collecting pamphlets, brochures, menus, tickets, etc. as memory aids for later reference. It is this material which often makes up travel archives, which may end up in a repository. For instance: travel writer Graham Greene's papers are at Boston College in the American state of Massachusetts; a portion of the English travel writer Patrick Leigh Fermor's diaries are at the National Library of Scotland. But collecting travel memorabilia is not just for those who wish to write an article or publish a book. People also collect as a way to hang on to a memory.

It is, however, the very ephemeral nature of the material in travel archives which may lessen their outward credibility as serious research material. Yet, one has only to delve into them to see that there is cultural and societal relevance. Having better access to these rich collections will expose them to more researchers. Archivists will be able to suggest these collections to researchers beyond those working on travel or tourism. Their opportunities for use will expand and they will be viewed less of a quaint oddity and more of a valid research source. Additionally, archivists can use this approach with other types of genre archives.

It is incumbent that archivists endeavour to increase access to their collections. There are a myriad of studies which document such efforts: Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo (1989) looking at providing access by form of material, genre and physical characteristics; Wiberley (1988) studying indexing vocabulary in the humanities; Riley and Shepherd (2009) analysing shareable descriptive metadata; Greene and & Meissner (2005) with their profession-changing (and challenging) concept of "more product, less process"; and Miles and Bergstrom (2009) evaluating classification of library resources by subject; just to name a few.

For all the writing on subject access to archives [see Section 2.2.2], most of the literature is from the 1980s, 1990s, and the following early 2000s. Archivists have seemed to have simply moved on. But the problem with subject access has not. In one sense, dealing with electronic interfaces has made the issue more dire, providing researchers with too many results [see Section 2.2.5]. This thesis looks at subject access, using travel archives as a case study, to determine how metadata can be better applied to provide more efficient access. Archivists should be able to take the remedies from this study and apply them to not just travel archives in their own collections, but also to like archives, which is termed genre archives for this project: family history archives, artists' archives, archives of religious or sports figures, etc.

Another significance of this study is to shed light on the existence of travel archives (or travel-related archival collections) in general. These collections exist in publicly accessible repositories, but due to their lack of adequate metadata, are often invisible as such. This project should expose travel archives in the case study repositories and prompt archives to reconsider what they consider as travel archives.

A search using the basic phraseology of “finding aids” and “travel archives” on the Library, Information Science and Technology Abstracts [LISTA] database did not yield any results (LISTA 2014). A search of WorldCat (OCLC 2014), searching for dissertations focusing on travel archives and access, was equally not forthcoming. It is believed that this is the first such study, on a doctoral level, investigating the larger plight of access to genre archives, using regional travel archives as a case study. A similar search (for basic phraseology of “finding aids” and “travel archives”) on the South African database Nexus (Nexus 1999) was not fruitful. The closest to analysing any finding aids or archival collections was: Archival information retrieval for the research of history (Ingram 2000).

1.10 Motivation

The researcher has been involved in travel writing (and travel archives for decades). His qualifying paper for the Master of Liberal Arts degree at Temple University (Philadelphia, Pennsylvania) was on travel writing. He is a published travel writer and a regular reviewer of travel literature for the U.S.-based *Library Journal*. The researcher is a member of the Academy of Certified Archivists and the National Book Critics Circle. Besides his work as an archivist and librarian he is a certified tour guide.

The researcher endeavours to enhance subject access to travel archives. As a travel writer and an archivist, the researcher believes travel archives are a rich resource for disciplines beyond travel and tourism: including sociology, literature, anthropology and natural sciences.

Following this research, he proposes a better, more holistic, way of describing genre collections which facilitates a broader user base. This broader user base also benefits the archival profession.

1.11 Definition of Terms

Archival Description

According to Bradsher (1991) archival description “comprises clear, accurate and objective reporting of the common characteristics of documents where were maintained as a group by their creator” (Bradsher 1991:70). These five categories of information crucial for minimum archival description are: 1) title phrase, 2) series dates, 3) series quantity, 4) physical arrangement and 5) informational content (Bradsher 1991:70).

Archives

“Institutional records and personal papers maintained by an archival repository ... a body of functionally and/or organizationally related material that has grown organically out of some activity ... business (legal, administrative, policy, fiscal) records of an individual or public or private entity, that are preserved because of their value, either as evidence of transactions, and/or because of the information they contain about people, places, and things” (Bradsher 1991:3).

The Society of American Archivists describes archives as: “The preserved documentary records of any corporate body, governmental agency or office, or organization or group that are the direct result of administrative or organizational activity of the originating body and that are maintained according to their original provenance” (Society of American Archivists 1989:9).

This research thesis uses the Bradsher definition since it encompasses both institutional records and personal papers.

Genre/Form

In relation to a 655-tag in a MARC record, genre/form means: “A term indicating the form, genre and/or physical characteristics of the materials being described. Genre terms for textual materials designate specific kinds of materials distinguished by the style or technique of their intellectual content (e.g., biographies, catechisms, essays, hymns or reviews)” (OCLC 2014).

Genre Archives

Genre archival collections (or simply genre archives) refer to collections which focus on the activities of one aspect of their creators’ lives, often documenting a parallel discipline found in genre literature: travel archives document travel writing; genealogical archives document family histories; literary archives may document mystery writing, science fiction, historical fiction, or popular literature. [Definition formulated by the researcher.]

Metadata

The International Council on Archives [ICA] provides six definitions for metadata, for the purpose of this thesis the following suffices: “Structured information that describes and/or allows users to find, manage, control, understand or preserve other information over time. Metadata is attached to records when they are created and added to as a result of different processes such as sentencing and disposal” (International Council on Archives 2016).

Personal Papers

“Information recorded or received by private individuals and employees of a governmental entity or private organization or institution, and not created or received during the course of conducting official business ... personal papers are accumulated by individuals or families in the conduct of their personal, professional, and private concerns” (Bradsher 1991:2).

The Society of American Archivists uses the term “collection” to encompass personal papers: “A body of archival material formed by or around a person, family group, corporate body, or subject

either from a common source as a natural product of activity or function, or gathered purposefully and artificially without regard to original provenance” (Society of American Archivists 1989:9).

The thesis uses the Bradsher definition (even though personal notes and journals kept as part of a formal expedition may be considered as institutional records).

Representation

“Representation refers to both the processes of arrangement and description as well as the creation of access tools (guides, inventories, finding aids, bibliographic records) or systems (card catalogs, bibliographic databases, EAD databases) resulting from those activities ... *archival representation* is used for the archival function commonly and variously identified as arrangement and description, processing, and occasionally archival cataloging” (Yakel 2006:151).

This thesis reviews all modes of access tools (guides, inventories, finding aids, bibliographic records) or systems (card catalogs, bibliographic databases, EAD databases). It pays particular attention to subject access.

Travel Archives

For the purpose of this thesis, travel archives are material accumulated which document, or are associated with, someone's purposeful travel. These could be the personal papers of travel writers, notes and papers of explorers, diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business, leisure or relocation. [Definition formulated by the researcher, based on the related definition of travel writing.]

Travel-Related Collections

Travel-related collections are items relating to travel, but when the majority of the collection is non-travel. An example may be when one diary or journal out of a set, kept by someone, is travel-related. [Definition formulated by the researcher, based on the nuance between collections which are primarily about travel (travel archives) and those which have only a minor portion allocated to travel.]

Travel Writing

The Society of American Travel Writers defines travel writing as: “Travel article, image, video, broadcast, book or similar product...that shows, describes, discusses, and/or facilitates travel” (Society of American Travel Writers 2014).

1.12 Ethical Considerations and Ethical Principles

The research project follows Unisa’s Policy on Research Ethics (Unisa 2007), including (Unisa’s Policy on Research Ethics numbered sections cited) [see also Section 3.8]:

- Researchers should be competent and accountable (5.2.1).

- Researchers have a duty to refrain from undertaking or continue any research that contravenes the Policy on Research Ethics (5.2.2).
- Researchers may undertake only such research involving participants as has been approved by an appropriate Ethnic Review Committee (5.2.3).
- Researchers should undertake only such research as will contribute to knowledge on the subject (5.2.4).
- Researchers have a right and a duty to make all necessary efforts to bring the research and its findings to the public domain (5.2.5).
- Researchers should not undertake secret or classified research (5.2.6).
- Researchers have a responsibility towards those involved in or affected by their work (5.2.7).
- Researchers should be honest in respect of their own actions in research (5.2.8).
- Researchers may not commit plagiarism, piracy, falsification or the fabrication of results at any stage of the research (5.2.9).
- Plagiarism, falsification, the fabrication of results, and scientific misconduct in general are regarded as serious disciplinary offences (5.2.10).
- Researchers undertaking research involving participants by be requested to report regularly to the relevant Ethics Review Committee (5.2.11).

1.13 Conclusion

This chapter (Chapter 1: Introduction and Context) provides background context to genre archives and travel archives and the inadequate researcher access which plagues both of them. The chapter also outlines the purpose, objectives, scope and delimitations, and structure of the thesis. Chapter 2 (Literature Review and Theoretical Framework) is discussed further below. Chapter 3 (Research Methodology) focuses on the research design and methodology used for the research study. This includes the rationale for the research approach, methodology, data collection instruments, data analysis, the research population and sampling. The chapter also addresses any ethical issues involved in the process.

Chapter 4 (Presentation of Data) describes and interprets the results of the research. Chapter 5 (Interpretation of Data) reviews the results outlined in Chapter 4, including critical evaluation, looking for themes or consistencies within data in order to formulate recommendations. Scrutiny is also applied in addressing any extraneous findings. Chapter 6 (Conclusion and Recommendations) looks at the entire project, noting how it met the problem, purpose, objectives and research questions of the thesis. Recommendations are made to improve access to travel archives. Summations are also made on the feasibility of applying these recommendations to other genre archives.

The Literature Review (Chapter 2) is the next chapter of the thesis. It discusses the historical development of addressing patron access to archival collections. Since the literature does not

address travel archives in particular, the review details the history of defining the problem, remedies that were devised to address these deficiencies, and how each new cure often produced more issues. The chapter also covers the following: the importance of subject access, the role of MARC AMC, the role of the finding aid, the role of full-text, user interface, access to genre archives and literature on the culture of collecting.

Notes

¹Throughout this thesis, any reference to the indigenous peoples of the United States uses the term American Indian, in lieu of Native American. This first term seems to be generally more accepted in the arts, government, and political activist circles, such as: the Smithsonian's National Museum of the American Indian, the United States Department of the Interior's Bureau of Indian Affairs, the National Congress of American Indians, American Indian College Fund and the American Indian Movement.

²There has always been an on-going discussion about the terms "traveller" and "tourist." Are they interchangeable or does the former imply someone who wants to travel off-the-beaten-path and the latter someone who wishes to follow a pre-packaged experience? Some may think of these terms as being attached to a mode of travel: perhaps a traveller is a lone adventurer and a tourist is someone participating in an organized group journey. This thesis views both terms as a bit more interchangeable, rather than one having a weightier meaning than another. The latter could be the subject of an entirely other study.

³For this thesis, direct quotes and titles of works maintain their original English spelling, following either the American or British manner -- depending on country of publication. Library of Congress Subject Headings [LCSH] follow American English spelling.

Chapter 2: Literature Review and Theoretical Framework

2.1 Introduction

As mentioned in Chapter 1, just as there are categories in literature for genre fiction (such as mystery, romance or science fiction), this thesis begins with the construct that there also is something that may be termed genre archives. Genre archives are most often personal archives, and travel archives are but one type of genre archives. Travel archives may be unique but their access problems are shared with many other genre archives. Determining just how researchers are using these collections is also a key to description. For the purposes of this thesis, travel archives (either in manuscript form or printed ephemera) are seen as material accumulated which document someone's purposeful travel. People use these travel archives to acquire a better understanding of their creators or of the situations their creators were in. Travel archives, like family papers or genealogical collections, are almost always (though not exclusively) considered personal papers. Personal papers may also include items relating to travel, even when the majority of the collection is non-travel. This study refers to those items as travel-related collections. Irrespective of what they are called or how they are viewed, one thing is the same: People collect as a way to hang on to a memory.

Accessing travel archives, which are a subset of genre archives, is the crux of this thesis. The question still remaining, then, is: How does one describe travel archives better to provide more efficient access by researchers? More precisely, for the larger scope of this research proposal: How can metadata be applied in a more effective way to genre archives to increase access?

A search for basic phraseology of “finding aids” and “travel archives” using the Library, Information Science and Technology Abstracts [LISTA] database did not yield any results (LISTA 2014). A broader literature search was only slightly more forthcoming. While there were lots of studies about access to archival collections, over the past 30 years, they were mostly general and rarely addressed genre collections. Prior to 2003, studies provide a concise overview of the history of archival description and how each new development would solve the problems or deficiencies of a previous one: Creating a finding aid was better than typing out subject cards; Machine-Readable Cataloguing Archival and Manuscripts Control [MARC AMC] would make collections more accessible; Dublin Core and Encoded Archival Description [EAD] would render MARC AMC and paper finding aids (respectively) irrelevant. None of these studies have a direct impact on the thesis at hand, but they do provide a litany of the ongoing problem of archival access. Czeck (1998), Feeney (1999), Dooley (1992) and Greenberg (1998) are good examples (addressing archival MARC, search engines, subject indexing and natural language processing, respectively).

Within the last ten years, new solutions are described which would address the old deficiencies of archival access -- for example, the belief that search-engines would solve the problem of researcher access to collections. Now systems like Encoded Archival Context – Corporate

bodies, Persons, and Families [EAC-CPF], describing individuals, families and corporate bodies that create, preserve, use and are responsible for and/or associated with records, are the next big plan. Some of the concepts from these types of articles, like MacNeil (2005), have an indirect impact on this proposal.

There are a handful of studies which looked at these similar issues but through the lens of other genre archival collections (genealogy, presidential papers, regional history, etc.). Perrone (2006), Southwell (2002), and Strong (2000) are good studies (addressing scattered collegiate archives, regional history collections and personal papers, respectively). However, none of these articles directly (or indirectly) address the issue of access to travel archives.

The researcher performed literature searches (using terminology such as “subject access,” “finding aids,” “subject tracings,” “description,” etc.) primarily on two library science databases: EBSCOhost’s *Library, Information Science & Technology Abstracts* -- encompassing 735 titles - - and JSTOR’s *Library Science* -- encompassing 17 titles. These two mega databases index the premier scholarly, peer-reviewed journals in the archival field. EBSCO’s coverage includes *Journal of Academic Librarianship*, *Journal of Education for Library and Information Science* (Association for Library and Information Science Education), *Journal of the American Society for Information Science & Technology*, *Journal of the Society of Archivists* (Archives & Records Association [U.K./Ireland]), *Libraries & the Cultural Record* and *South African Archives Journal* (South African Society of Archivists). JSTOR’s database includes access to *The American Archivist* (Society of American Archivists), *American Libraries* (American Library Association) and *The Library Quarterly*. Relevant articles fit into six themes: The Importance of Subject Access; The Role of MARC AMC [Machine Readable Cataloguing Archival and Manuscripts Control]; The Role of the Finding Aid; The Role of Full-text, EAD [Encoded Archival Description], DACS [Describing Archives: A Content Standard], and FRBR [Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records]; Examining User Interface; and Access to Genre Collections. There is another category added to this list; and that is the literature on the culture of collecting. While not exhaustive, helping to understand why individuals and organisations collect, may help the archivist describe the collections to provide better access.

Overall, the articles provide a concise overview of the history of archival description and how each new development would solve the problems or deficiencies of the previous iteration. None of them have a direct impact on the thesis at hand, but they do provide a litany of the ongoing problem of archival access. Looking at articles published over the last ten years, new solutions are described which would address the old deficiencies.

The question still remaining, then, is: How does one describe travel archives better to provide more efficient access? The answer, unfortunately, was not to be found in the professional literature. No studies were found which directly address the topic of travel archives or their access. Perhaps it is because travel archives are primary personal archives. As such, they would not be found in most national and university archives. They are often found in not-for-profit

special collections. Cook (2011) derides this fact. “Why are personal archives (and their archivists) not part of most countries’ national archives? Why are those who look after government records in those archives called archivists and those who look after personal records in libraries usually labeled manuscript curators or special librarians or documentalists, with a whole range of assumptions (often negative) implied by these terms” (Cook 2011:624)? Cook takes the then somewhat radical approach of exhorting national libraries to open their doors to non-governmental records which would aid in the documentation of their country’s patrimony. “Appraisal would be sensitive to the citizens, not just the state...relationships with records creators would be repositioned ‘up front’ ...description would be opened up to presenting multiple origins and orders for situating records...[and] include extended essays on the deeper contextual elements enveloping the complex creation, uses and relationships of records over their entire and continuing history...(Cook 2011:629).

Cook (2006) believes that the appraisal process is crucial. “Appraisal imposes a heavy social responsibility on archivists. As they appraise records, they are doing nothing less than shaping the future of our documentary heritage. They are determining what the future will know about its past, which is often our present” (Cook 2006:169). He elaborates: “Archivist[s] are active agents in constructing social and historical memory” (Cook 2006:170).

Even though direct mention of travel archives and their access issues are not addressed in the professional literature, the literature does skirt around the issue by discussing larger issues of access which afflict a myriad of types of archival collections: subject access, MARC AMC, finding aids, full-text, user interfaces, genre archives and the collecting culture.

2.2 The Importance of Subject Access

The importance of subject access is, perhaps not surprisingly, one of the initial themes of archival literature. Whether old-fashioned card catalogues, MARC records or finding aids, there was near universal pleading for better subject access. Lytle (1980), Lytle and Dürr (1980), Joyce (1984), MacNeil (1996), McNitt (1989), Dooley (1992), Feeney (1999), Yakel (2006) and Miles and Bergstrom (2009) make the best arguments for this theme. Nesmith (2002), Gilliland-Swetland (2002) Hackett (2003), Bell (1994), Bogan (2000), Cole (2000), Collins (1998), Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989), Wiberley (1983), Wiberley (1988) and Weber (1989) also address this theme. While many of these articles may seem dated, the problems they document often are not. They still exist today.

Lytle (1980) outlines an age-old problem which still vexes researchers, namely: “...the paucity and poor quality of subject access information about archives” (Lytle 1980:64). Lytle describes two standard methods of subject retrieval: provenance and content indexing. Provenance indexing (a traditional archival approach) links back to only what is administratively known about a collection: the activities of the originator and the organization of the material itself. Content indexing, based on principles of librarianship has been adapted for archival purposes.

Content indexing may take more than one form; it may use various methods of indexing and may result in many forms: catalogues, back-of-book-style indexes or on-line index file. It is "...very flexible. It can include user-determined access points derived from past user requests, and document-determined access points selected by the indexer" (Lytle 1980:74). The comment about user-determined access points echoes what Light and Hyry (2002) [see Section 2.4] suggest with their annotations. The key to Lytle's (1980) research is that archivists need to create subject access to the entire collection, looking at the series and even document levels, to give broader access options for researchers. Using both the provenance and content indexing approaches provides this broader access. Lytle and Dürr (1980) continue where Lytle (1980) leaves off in his quest for intellectual access to archives, comparing the merits and functionality of provenance and content indexing access.

Lytle and Dürr (1980) take Lytle's (1980) initial study of provenance versus context indexing and put it to the test. They use the Baltimore Region Institutional Studies Center [BRISC] of the University of Baltimore (in the U.S. state of Maryland) as a case study. Lytle and Dürr (1980) write separately. Lytle (Lytle & Dürr 1980) writes of measuring provenance and context indexing methods by applying the same set of 15 devised criteria twice and then comparing the results. His major finding, and probably not much different today given the literature since then [MacNeil (1996), Dooley (1992), Feeney (1999) and Miles and Bergstrom (2009) are good examples] is that: "For those archivists who have suspected that they are retrieving only a small fraction of relevant documents for users, the results of this study are confirming evidence" (Lytle & Dürr 1980:193). Oddly enough, content indexing only scored marginally higher than provenance indexing. The searcher himself also played a factor in the results. For example: A searcher experienced with provenance indexing had a high retrieval result using that method, as did a searcher experienced with content indexing with the content indexing method. Lytle concludes that archivists should evaluate their archival access systems, with an eye to the nuances of provenance and content indexing. Dürr (Lytle & Dürr 1980), again writing separately, inserts that researchers, using the context indexing method, achieved results in less research time than the provenance method, nine minutes less on average (Lytle & Dürr 1980:207). The take-away from their study, for this project, is the efficiency of subject access based on content.

Joyce (1984) outlines the basic role of the archivist in promoting research use, including: "...by developing better index terms for access to records; by knowing more about researchers who use their materials and understanding better what their needs are ..." (Joyce 1984:124). These two points are relevant to this project. Better description of travel archives would lead to increased awareness and use. Using pre-Web terminology, Joyce states: "The mere fact of inclusion in bibliographic data bases...does not guarantee ready access by anyone. [B]ecause archival and manuscript material is by nature unique, the reference function of such a data base is realized only when access is augmented by use of index terms. While these terms may be derived from finding aids, archivists need to become more knowledgeable about providing additional access

points to research holdings” (Joyce 1984:129). Joyce expands on the second point, of knowing who the potential researchers are, by giving the following example: “...archivists often identify academics and genealogists as their primary constituents and then go on to list very general categories such as miscellaneous or other. As a means of combating this ineffective categorization of users, there should be an effort to discover the intentions of prospective users...” (Joyce 1984:130). This is a wise recommendation, but it may not be self-evident what the intentions of a prospective researcher may be. For genre archives, making some basic assumptions would be a good first start. For example: An archive about a prominent family in a large city should not just be considered a source of potential research for that city or the profession of the patriarch (or matriarch for that matter) or the era in which they lived. It should also be described and accessed as a potential source of study for genealogists. Likewise, a journal kept of a trans-Atlantic crossing should not just be of interest to researchers studying that individual or ship or country of emigration/immigration. That journal would also be of interest interested in travel and travel writing.

MacNeil (1996) examines access to archival *fonds*. [*Fonds* is widely held as the primary unit of archival arrangement and description.] She states: “Until fairly recently, subject indexing received limited attention as a topic of archival discussion in the literature” (MacNeil 1996:242) -- and even up to this point as this researcher has found. Access via provenance, which Lytle (1980), Lytle and Dürr (1980), Collins (1998) and Cole (2000) echo, really is only an indirect approach to subject access. One infers the content of a collection based on its creation. “Subject indexing, on the other hand, is a *direct* [italics hers] approach to achieving subject access, based on the principle of pertinence” (MacNeil 1996:243). The problem, though, with subject access for archives, as oppose to books, is that “a published work is created as an end in itself, an archival document is created as a means to an end” (MacNeil 1996:244).

This is an important distinction. Especially in personal archives (where so much of travel archives reside) subject access, and in particular access via the creator’s occupation is critical. “Occupations are relevant to an understanding of the subject of archives generated by individuals and families because they explain the perspective of the creator in relation to a particular subject” (MacNeil 1996:249). She also is a proponent of “associative links and historical antecedents” as part of a controlled vocabulary (MacNeil 1996:253). Like Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989), MacNeil (1996) is a proponent of using form terms for access within the context of a MARC record. Her results may appear to contradict the goal of this thesis, since this researcher proposes greater use of content indexing (otherwise known as subject access). But this researcher does not advance ignoring provenance indexing (the traditional archival method), but rather complementing it with greater content/subject access. [For more on MacNeil (1996), see Section 2.3.]

McNitt (1989) writes about the subject description thesaurus, Presnet [Presidential Libraries Information Network], developed by the archivists of the U.S. presidential library system. The Office of Presidential Libraries is part of the National Archives and Records Administration

[NARA]. Unsatisfied with the Library of Congress Subject Headings [LCSH], they developed their own thesaurus. They did not start exactly with a blank slate, but based their new thesaurus on the White House Central Files filing manual — this helped provide terms which would be useful for presidential archivists, but not codified within the LCSH system. This is an interesting concept. Would personal archives, which travel archives often are —but not exclusively — benefit from such an endeavour? But devising a whole new vocabulary should not be attempted lightly. McNitt (1989) lists seven lessons learned from the Present experience: 1) controlled subject terms can help overcome inconsistencies and inadequacies, 2) study thesaurus construction literature prior to developing one, 3) if possible, base a new thesaurus on an existing one, 4) creating a thesaurus requires significant resources, 5) a thesaurus is never complete, 6) inter-index consistency is important to retrieval and 7) indexing should be done by experienced archivists (McNitt 1989:364). [For more on McNitt (1989), see Section 2.7.]

Czeck's (1998) article summarizes Dooley's (1992) piece on subject indexing, noting that Dooley calls for more "consistent subject access" to archival and manuscript collections cataloged in the MARC format. Czeck (1998) reports that Dooley also calls for more attention to "proper names, time periods, geographic places, and organization," among other types of terms. "...MARC format is more than adequate to accommodate subject data, and archivists need to upgrade the provision of subject access to archival collection within the MARC structure" (Czeck 1998:430-431). [See Section 2.3 for a further description of Czeck (1998).] Dooley (1992) herself wonders why "...certain collections in MARC AMC databases [are] heavily used, whereas others, ostensibly of equal research value, are not used at all? Is it possible that materials currently accessible only through provenance might find their way to additional users if a variety of subject access points were added" (Dooley 1992:351)? This thought is tangential to the basic question of this thesis: Why is it so difficult to locate travel archives? Perhaps the problem really is that they are inadequately subject described. Dooley (1992) elaborates: "If users frequently are frustrated by 'zero hits' subject search results, the researcher should ask whether this might in part reflect inconsistent indexing and should consider whether cross references from a controlled vocabulary would help, rather than just concluding that subject indexing is useless for access to archival materials" (Dooley 1992:352).

Dooley (1992) proposes direct subject access, also referred to as content indexing [see Lytle (1980) and Lytle and Dürr (1980)]. She recommends seven principles: Archivists should confirm commitment to subject access as a supplement to provenance access; the archival community should study researcher needs for subject access; there should be a thesaurus of broad subject terms for MARC 072-tag [subject category code]; archivists should identify MARC subject fields which normally do not display; archivists should aid in adding contextual information to name authorities; archivists should study user needs and behavior in subject-oriented queries; and the Society of American Archivists should continue to develop and implement a training program for archivists in subject indexing (Dooley 1992:354). [For more on Dooley (1992), see Section 2.3.]

Feeney (1999) finds that searching can be frustrating due to inconsistent terminology. Southwell (2002) cites Feeney in her *Archival Issues* article. She sums up Feeney's research along these lines: "Feeney questions whether electronic full-text finding aids negated the need for MARC AMC records...since such utilities (like OCLC) provide briefer descriptions and thereby fewer subject terms on which readers may hit" (Southwell 2008:93). Southwell (2008) continues: "Feeney found that although searching a database of MARC records can be challenging due to inconsistent terminology and truncated subject access, searching the [Web] for finding aids can be just as difficult, due in part to the vast sea of information available..." (Southwell 2008:93). In other words, sometimes the information retrieved is too vast and too off-target to the core of one's research. One of Feeney's (1999) recommendations is for cooperative databases of findings aids in multiple repositories. This has, of course, now been done both regionally (as in the Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries [PACSCSL] finding aids database) and internationally (with ArchiveGrid, of which the University of South Africa contributes). In Feeney's study, she uses archives at the Southern Historical Collection [SHC] at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. The study outlines how too much information (or too many hit results) can equally stymie a researcher. Further, her study finds that finding aids, which should be most helpful to researchers trying to navigate a collection, were low on the list of retrieved hits. She writes: "The study found that searches often retrieved unmanageably large result sets and that the majority of the SHC finding aids containing the search terms were not among the first one hundred documents retrieved" (Feeney 1999:206).

But it was not supposed to be this way. The purpose of EAD [Encoded Archival Description] was to give archives "...a means of establishing an effective, accessible, and stable presence..." for their collections (Feeney 1999:207). Her findings were anything but effective, accessible and stable. Tibbo's (1994) study also found massive amounts of hits with free-text searching [Tibbo (1994) is further described in Section 2.3]. Feeney (1999) used two, now defunct, internet search engines: HotBot and AltaVista [for more historic studies on early search engines, see Tibbo & Meho (2001) in Section 2.5]. Feeney (1999) finds that searches, using these two engines, were "largely unsuccessful" in pointing researchers to the SHC holdings (Feeney 1999:217). Given that Feeney's conclusion was written in 1999, how much worse can the situation be today? She writes: "The findings of this study suggest that the Internet is too large and heterogeneous a search ground in which to locate archival holdings information by commonly used Internet searching practices and tools" (Feeney 1999:223). Yet that is precisely how many researchers begin a project. She does, however, still find value, and help in archival searching, with repository guides and subject bibliographies created by archivists. Personal names, contained in these guides and bibliographies, did point searchers to the SHC holdings (Feeney 1999:224). Results like these, albeit historic, confirm the need for this thesis to avoid general Internet searching and focus on specialized databases dedicated to archival collection access. [Feeney's (1999) study of archival finding aids and search engines is further described in Section 2.3.]

Yakel (2006) writes that “archivists should begin to think less in terms of a single, definitive, static arrangement and description process but rather in terms of continuous, relative, fluid arrangements and descriptions as ongoing representational processes ... electronic records description begins at creation and continues throughout the records continuum as metadata are added to document such events as versions, access, and redaction” (Yakel 2006:152). Yakel (2006) also points to two trends in the creation of a finding aid which may impact subject access: 1) the rise of more “global or collection-level synthesis of collection contents” in the form of more frontal matter (biographical and historical data) and 2) the decreasing “granularity of the contents descriptions,” no more item-by-item lists (Yakel 2006:159). The project at hand will be looking at archival representations in its many forms. [Yakel (2006) is further discussed in Section 2.4.]

Miles and Bergstrom (2009) try to determine if there is an optimal number of subject labels to aid researchers in accessing collections. They studied 120 students and staff to measure the effect of subject labels from lists and research response time. There were twelve initial groups of lists (ranging from 5 to 72 subject labels) which the participants needed to apply against 8 research questions (Miles & Bergstrom 2009:17). They found “...for any given level of relevance, the number of items of the list does not affect response time significantly” (Miles & Bergstrom 2009:18). They found, however, that characteristics of the categories on a list were more important than the quantity. For instance: “The response times using a subject list with twenty-eight labels is similar to the response times using a list of six labels” (Miles & Bergstrom 2009:18). They did find that response times significantly increased when a list had at least fifty items. The fact that they found that quality over quantity subject labels had a positive aspect to response time is relevant to this thesis.

Nesmith (2002), Gilliland-Swetland (2002) and Hackett (2003) write about InterPARES. Describing archives is not, of course, limited to items on paper only. “Both the UBC [University of British Columbia] and InterPARES [International Research of Permanent Authentic Electronic Record Project] projects have attempted to identify the ideal features a document should have in order to maximize confidence in its integrity as evidence of actions of its initial, literal inscribers” (Nesmith 2002:40). These features are meant to help shape the content of electronic records. But Nesmith (2002) holds that the shaping may come in the form of more practical factors such as “operational priorities, cost avoidance, and risk management calculations” (Nesmith 2002:41). Gilliland-Swetland (2002) advocates that “...emerging considerations specific to electronic records necessitate that the archival community delineate mechanisms for establishing, maintaining, and certifying the authenticity of preserved and reference copies of electron records” (Gilliland-Swetland 2002:196). Hackett (2003), perhaps taking the nod from Gilliland-Swetland, identifies fifteen data elements, integral to InterPARES, that must be in the record, linked to the record or consistently recorded (Hackett 2003:105). Electronic records are different from traditional paper ones in how they are viewed: “If [traditional] records are relied on by their creator in the usual and ordinary course of business,

they are presumed to be authentic. But with electronic systems, the presumption of authenticity must be supported by evidence” (Hackett 2003:104). Hackett (2003) lists eight benchmarks required to support electronic records authenticity: 1) record attributes (identity and integrity), 2) access privileges, 3) protective procedures (loss and record corruption), 4) protective procedures (media and technology), 5) establishment of documentary forms, 6) record authentication, 7) authoritative record identification and 8) removal and transfer of relevant documentation (Hackett 2003:105). Initial searching of archival databases for thesis, looking for travel archives, finds that all were paper based.

Bell (1994), Bogan (2000), Cole (2000), Collins (1998), Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989), Wiberley (1983), Wiberley (1988) and Weber (1989) address a variety of angles dealing with subject access which support this thesis’ call for greater precise and efficient subject access for archival collections.

Bell (1994) summarizes the theory, analysis and practice of determining subjects. She provides an excellent definition of subject analysis: “Subject analysis is the study of an item to determine a quality that is essentially an intellectual and subject decision by cataloguers and indexers in order to describe what the physical evidence *intends*” [italics hers] (Bell 1994:89).

Bogan (2000), in an opinion piece, adds that subject access terminology should reflect the needs of the topic being described. “[S]ubject cataloging is a viable, complex, and occasionally controversial discipline. The names we give to people and concepts in our catalogs are a critical facet of library service” (Bogan 2000:36). But for Bogan (2000), diction is not the only concern. She eschews outmoded terms and calls for new terms to fit the situation: “If we neglect our responsibility to establish new headings when needed, we make valuable resources difficult to find. If we retain outdated terminology in our catalogs, we sacrifice credibility by sounding out of date” (Bogan 2000:36).

Cole (2000) conducted a study of name pattern recognition among doctoral history students. This was a follow-up to a similar study he reported in 1998 (Cole 1998). He concludes that “the archive collection is indexed according to the logic of the collection and because the logic is based on ‘provenance,’ it is ‘creator oriented,’... not user oriented (which may change over time)” (Cole 2000: 93). He finds that one-fifth of students access collections using subject headings; the majority using names of people, organizations, and agencies (Cole 2000:93). He entreats Information Retrieval [IR] designers to incorporate enhanced name searching when developing new systems.

Collins (1998), while writing primarily about access to images, does echo Dooley (1992) and Cole (2000) in holding that archives are accessed by provenance and would be better served by a variety of subject access. “What is really needed is access to images in terms of their generic content, so patrons from any discipline can find images for purposes not predictable by the cataloger. The high percentage of queries containing generic subject words indicates the

importance of these terms for image retrieval” (Collins 1998:51). This recommendation can equally apply to subject access of archival collections.

Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) encourage adding form, genre, and physical characteristics terms to MARC records for better access. They list five “ingredients” for effective access by material type: common vocabulary, guidelines for assigning headings and subdivisions, the means to distinguish material type from subjects, the wider awareness of access points and increased cooperation among archivists and librarians (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:316). [Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) is further discussed in Section 2.3.]

Wiberley, (1983) and (1988), investigates the indexing vocabulary of the humanities. Both are very historic articles but give insight into what constitutes precision in indexing. Although he focuses primarily on library reference material, his studies are useful in the broader sense. According to Wiberley: “Precision is gauged by assessing how easily the referent of a term may be distinguished from the referent of any other term” (Wiberley 1988:2). He divides entry terms into four categories: singular proper terms, enumerable proper terms, general proper terms and common terms. Singular proper terms (names of people and creative works) are the most precise. Enumerable proper terms refers to a group whose membership is so restrictive that it functions as a singular proper term (he gives the example of the “Baby Ballerinas,” a group of well-known Slavic dancers); these terms are less precise—oddly enough. General proper terms include items like: Roman Catholics, Iceland, French philosophy, etc. These, and common terms, are the least precise. Common terms include: chair, magic, etc. (Wiberley 1988:2-4).

Weber (1989) investigates the concepts, principles and methodologies of archival description standards. Weber writes: “If the purpose of archival description is to provide access to materials, then archival description standards are mutually agreed-upon guidelines, rules, and specifications that prescribe methods of producing uniform and consistent results for products for use in providing access to primary source materials” (Weber 1989:506). But that never really materialised. Search on ArchiveGrid, one sees a vast variety of form and content of finding aids. Nothing seems uniform or consistent. Libraries seem to have surpassed archives on setting up rules and sticking with them. “In subject cataloging librarians analyze the contents of the work and assign subject terms from controlled vocabulary lists in order to provide access to the content and lead users to relevant works on a particular topic of interest” (Weber 1989:507). These standardised terms are a result of authority control. Authority control provides standardization of terminology in three ways, by: 1) distinguishing terms, 2) showing relationships and 3) documenting the decision-making process (Weber 1989:507). While librarians view descriptive cataloguing and subject analysis as separate, archives view them as one (using their parallels of finding aids with descriptive subject access points. This comparison seems a bit like hair-splitting and may have its detractors. But Weber (1989) does exhort archivists to become more like libraries in reference to setting up rules and sticking to them: “Development of description standards avoids the ‘reinvent the wheel’ syndrome and forces

archivists to make decisions once, document them, and not return to the same questions endlessly” (Weber 1989:511).

2.3 The Role of MARC AMC

There are many tools available to help in creating an effective MARC record: *Library of Congress subject headings*, Peterson’s (1994) *Art and architecture thesaurus*, *Genre terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing* (ACRL 1991), *Form terms for archival and manuscripts control* (Hickerson & Engst 1985), Yee’s (1988) *Moving image materials: genre terms*, *USMARC code list for relators, sources, description conventions* (LOC 1997), and *Descriptive terms for graphic materials: genre and physical characteristic headings* (Zinkham & Parker 1986). AACR2 [Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules] is gradually morphing into RDA [Resource Description and Access]. “RDA: Resource Description and Access is the new standard for resource description and access designed for the digital world. Built on the foundations established by AACR2, RDA provides a comprehensive set of guidelines and instructions on resource description and access covering all types of content and media” (RDA 2010).

The role of Machine Readable Cataloguing Archival and Manuscripts Control [MARC AMC] features in many of the articles, but takes centre stage in several of them. Berman (1989), Dooley (1992), Tibbo (1994), Czeck (1998), Feeney (1999), Prom (2004), McCrory and Russell (2005) and Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) provide examples. MacNeil (1996), Michelson (1987), Ostroff (1990) and Vargas and Padway (1992) also address this issue.

In a, by now, very dated article, Bearman (1989) writes a polemic for MARC AMC, focusing on its role in the, now defunct, Research Libraries Information Network [RLIN] an online catalogue of the equally defunct Research Libraries Group [RLG]. What is notable about Bearman’s (1989) stance is how partisan and radical he appears. He confronts with sentences like “AMC overthrows the bibliocentricism, the political hegemony, and the existing financial/functional underpinning of the bibliographic networks” (Bearman 1989:26) and “Few considered what must now be taken seriously, that AMC might be a Trojan horse, or a virus” (Bearman 1989:29). Hard-line rhetoric aside, his points are well taken, namely that archivists need to take control of archival description on bibliographic utilities. One point that he makes, which does not help the access issue, is that “The guiding principles of archival control are provenance and life-cycle management of records...They are not described, in themselves, except tangentially and as a matter of convenience. Therefore, archivists do not distinguish between what the materials are of and what they are about since they are by inference about whatever they are of and the volume of materials typically precludes description of what they are about but not of” (Bearman 1989:30-31). Besides being borderline incomprehensible, this stance ultimately does a disservice to the researcher, by not giving enough description. Light and Hyry’s (2002) article on colophons and annotations [see Section 2.4] may be a much wiser approach.

Dooley (1992) wonders why “... certain collections in MARC AMC databases [are] heavily used, whereas others, ostensible of equal research value, are not used at all” (Dooley 1992:351)? One of the reasons is most likely the lack of consistent subject access. Dooley cites Michelson (1987) who had done a study in 1986 of contributors to RLIN’s AMC file. [The RGL was a premier grouping of major research libraries, primarily in the U.S. but also with foreign members.] Dooley writes: “The results demonstrated virtually no consensus on the concepts that should be indexed and the indexing terms that should be assigned” (Dooley 1992:345). If the prestigious RLIN contributors could not get it right, what hope was there for the average archive? Dooley (1992) cites Ostroff (1990) and her work on the use of tags 072 (subject category code), 600-654 (subject added entries), 655 (genre/form), 656 (occupation index term) and 755 (physical characteristics). [See Michelson (1987) and Ostroff (1990), also in this section.]

The struggle Tibbo (1994) describes is truly epic and continuing. “There has been little discussion...of the difficulties of finding materials in such large database environments” (Tibbo 1994:311). The user’s goal is simple; it is “...to find all relevant material and nothing more” (Tibbo 1994:311). How hard could that be; were not databases invented to make our lives easier? Tibbo’s (1994) research on the topic indicates otherwise. “...the on-line catalog has not improved subject access but may have made the situation worse because it has led to the creation of much larger catalogs that represent the holdings of many libraries” (Tibbo 1994:311). Stacking MARC AMC records with as many subject headings as possible is not the answer either; “...selection is critical. It is irresponsible to ‘pollute’ a retrieval environment with extraneous or repetitive posting to terms just to increase the likelihood that a given record will be retrieved. We do not want to clog up our databases any more than our shelving or backlog areas” (Tibbo 1994:323). Tibbo (1994) describes the 1990s as a time of “information gluttony,” (Tibbo 1994:326) but cautions that “...catalogues need to describe works and collections while distinguishing them from a myriad of others” (Tibbo 1994:326). In a, perhaps, visionary call to databases which are dedicated to searching on-line finding aids, Tibbo (1994) prophesizes: “Some call for scrapping the information systems we now have and starting over, but this will not solve all the problems...Subject retrieval—or for that matter, any form of text representation—will never be perfect” (Tibbo 1994:326). This thesis will use databases dedicated to searching on-line finding aids, like ArchiveGrid. [Tibbo (1994) cites the work of Bearman (1989) and Dooley (1992), also described in this section. Additional Tibbo (1994) discussion is found in Section 2.6.]

Czeck (1998) strives “...to determine the extent to which archival MARC records represent chronological, geographical, personal, and corporate information contained in corresponding finding aids to archival collections” (Czeck 1998:426). Czeck (1998) posits that allowing for full-text searching of finding aids would allow for greater subject access. In comparing MARC to full-text, she notes that MARC has a higher precision level for hits and that this “...level will result in a more manageable number of hits per search...” (Czeck 1998:430). Czeck (1998)

continues: “While the MARC format ideally represents the most relevant subject information in finding aids and provides the advantage of precision, the individual record is only as good as the quality of the cataloging” (Czeck 1998:430). [Czeck (1998) cites Dooley (1992) on the quality of subject access.] Czeck (1998) ponders: “...whether finding aids alone are sufficient as an initial locator of a collections...it is not clear to what extent finding aids represent potential subject terms that the MARC records do not” (Czeck 1998:438). This situation would make the application of appropriate subject access even more crucial, especially for collections which are not self-evident. But Czeck (1998) does raise a good question about the roles of both MARC records and finding aids. Tools like Archivists’ Toolkit can take the information placed into them and produce whatever output an archivist would typically desire. But the MARC record is not just a finding aid squeezed into tag format. Creating, or rather assigned, accurate subject terms would benefit both the finding aid and the MARC record. [For more on Czeck (1998), see Section 2.4.]

Southwell (2002) writes of Feeney: “Feeney found that although searching a database of MARC records can be challenging due to inconsistent terminology and truncated subject access, searching the [Web] for finding aids can be just a difficult, due in part to the vast sea of information available ...” (Southwell 2002:93). Feeney (1999), like Dooley (1992), cites Michelson (1987) who had done a study in 1986 of contributors to RILIN’s AMC file, and reported on their blatant inconsistencies in applying subject access to collections. [Feeney also cites Tibbo (1994) and Czeck (1998) for their work on studying the quality of subject terms on MARC AMC records. The quality of archival subject terms are critical to this these.

Prom (2004) begins his article with a rather stark premise: “The representation of archival materials is inherently complex, and researchers’ successes in locating materials sometimes seem to show a high dependence on ‘strange attractors’ or clusters of information that do not at first appear to be logically connected” (Prom 2004:234). Prom (2004) derides the fact that many archivists placed finding aids online without using MARC or EAD (Prom 2004:235). This action may result in a frustrating experience for researchers seeking archival collections. But part of Prom’s complaint is that no one was studying (or addressing) this problem. “The literature regarding description shows a similar paucity of analysis regarding user interactions with finding aids” (Prom 2004:236). Prom (2004) sets to correct this deficit by researching how researchers interact with electronic finding aids. There were no huge surprises in the results. Prom (2004) finds that: “Finding aids currently placed on-line are most efficiently used by either archival and computer experts” (Prom 2004:263). It would be interesting to see what a follow-up survey would produce now. But ten years on and his assessment still rings true: “...it is unlikely that on-line finding aids will ever make the chaotic nature of archival systems wholly understandable to archives users” (Prom 2004:265). Irrespective of this archival abyss, Prom exhorts archivists to develop a better sense of archival users (Prom 2004:265). [For more on Prom (2004), see Section 2.4.] This thesis chips away at Prom’s (2004) pessimistic prediction by examining how refining metadata, for genre archives at least, may provide better access.

Slightly out-of-date, but none-the-less interesting, the article by McCrory and Russell (2005) focuses on the interaction of EAD and MARC (and, perhaps more importantly, on the interaction between archivists and librarians) at The Ohio State University Libraries. Mapping from EAD to MARC does hold some cautions. They give as an example, where a creator is also a subject, EAD mapped to a 1xx (instead of a 1xx and a 6xx in traditional MARC). “It does no good to accept the default mappings on principle if people are misled by the results of their author- or subject-limited searches” (McCrory & Russell 2005:104). The problem does not just rest with EAD. Archivists’ online tools, like the open source Archivists’ Toolkit, also have mapping quirks when instructed to create a MARC record. [For more on McCrory and Russell (2005), see Section 2.5.] The take-away of this article is the need for constant archival intervention.

Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) encourage adding form, genre, and physical characteristics terms to MARC records for better access. They define form as a term designating historically and functionally specific kinds of materials (daybooks, diaries, journals, memoranda, etc.); genre (for their purposes, not the definition used in this thesis) designates a style and technique of the contents (biographies, essays, hymns, etc.); physical characteristics designate production techniques and materials (lithographs, daguerreotypes, velum, autographs, etc.) (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:303). They focus to two similar (and somewhat irritatingly interchangeable) tags: the 655 (genre/form, subject heading) and the 755 (physical characteristics, added entry). The problem is that some archives insist on using one or the other for their own purposes, irrespective of the guidelines. “But the availability of *two* [italics theirs] fields has also caused confusion in some communities about where to put certain terms” (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:309). Choosing which tag/s to use, and what terms go where, still appear to be based on interpretation of the archive.

MacNeil (1996) Michelson (1987), Ostroff (1990) and Vargas and Padway (1992) also address the issue of MARC AMC. They complement the findings of Berman (1989), Dooley (1992), Tibbo (1992), Czeck (1998), Feeney (1999), Prom (2004), McCrory and Russell (2005) and Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989). The lack of effective genre/form terms also vex MacNeil (1996) and Ostroff (1990). This thesis examines the various 6xx MARC tags, looking at their flexibilities and usefulness.

Like Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989), MacNeil (1996) is a proponent of using form terms for access within the context of a MARC record. “To be effective as access points, form terms need to be clearly distinguished from subject terms. A controlled vocabulary should be capable of distinguishing between ... records about land deeds and actual examples of land deeds” (MacNeil 1996:255). MacNeil holds that inclusion of form terms (tag 655) and physical characteristics terms (tag 755) will aid in pertinence.

Michelson (1987) decries: “Extreme inconsistency in describing materials is the key problem facing archival reference in the age of automation. Archivists are inconsistent in both *how* they describe and in *what* [both italics Michelson] they describe” (Michelson 1987:194). Even

though a good twenty-five years has passed, some of Michelson's (1987) statements could be presented today. Because archival records are often heterogeneous collections, the issue was not that they did not have enough terms assigned, but rather whether those terms were consistent and pertinent. For instance, back in 1987 Michelson reports that the average terms for an archival record was thirteen; for a book that number was three (Michelson 1987:199). Books can be very often copy-catalogued (hence giving your researchers the same access that they would have at another institution holding that same title). Archives, because unique, are catalogued at the mercy of a lone processor, devising terms as they best see fit. Michelson reports four conclusions from this study: 1) there is not a standard practice among archivists, 2) this lack of consistency impedes access, 3) attaining consistency within bibliographic utilities will be difficult and 4) resolution of these problems requires research, resources, and willingness to balance local priorities (Michelson 1987:200).

Ostroff (1990) looks at subject access within MARC, focusing on tags 072 (subject category code), 600-654 (subject added entries), 655 (genre/form), 656 (occupation index term) and 755 (physical characteristics). Ostroff (1990) echoes Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989): "There is a great deal of confusion and variation among repositories in understanding and applying the differences between field 650, form subdivisions in fields 600-651, and 655 and 755. The distinctions between 655 and 755 are especially ambiguous" (Ostroff 1990:103).

Vargas and Padway (1992) describe a project where their institution performed original cataloguing (by librarians) of archival material into an online catalogue. What is fascinating about this reflective essay is that it was written by representatives of the two sides (library and archives) who often were not in sync with each other's goals and purposes. After a rocky project conclusion, the staff debated future options. Padway, the librarian, (Vargas & Padway 1992) writes: "The new [archival] staff was willing to discuss openly various options, including whether the archivists would be able to continue to handle their own cataloging further down the road. They had enough knowledge and understanding of descriptive cataloging rules and MARC-AMC tagging to accept, if not always agree with, national standards" (Vargas & Padway 1992:52). The archivists, for their part, were taking thin archival descriptions and turning them into MARC worksheets. Vargas, the archivist, (Vargas & Pagway 1992) writes: "Writing good descriptions was by far the most difficult part of the automations project" (Vargas & Padway 1992:56). There were adequate listings of forms of material and identification of the generators of the records, "[b]ut frequently the catalog records did not tell what subjects the collection documented" (Vargas & Padway 1992:56). Even with online access to the guides, the archival staff still found a demand for printed guides by researchers. Jointly Vargas and Padway (1992) provide ten recommendations for future joint library/archive cooperation: 1) Evaluate the relationship of the units involved, 2) Educate library staff what the archives is doing, 3) Respect the cataloguers' expertise, 4) Establish specific written goals, 5) establish a Review element to the project, 6) Learn the full capability of your online system, 7) Prioritize, 8) Follow the rules in APPM [Archives, Personal Papers, and Manuscripts], 9) Allow enough staff time and 10)

Maintain a consistent work perspective (Vargas & Padway 1992:60). While not directly related to the topic of this thesis, Vargas and Padway (1992) do reveal information professionals' not-so-discreet secret that librarians and archivists often do not trust each others' judgments and expertise. They seem to think that their own fields are so vastly different that the other could not possibly fully understand their complexities. This notion is even more baffling when one considers that most research repository users probably do not even realise that these are two separate professions.

2.4 The Role of the Finding Aid

The finding aid, both in paper and electronic form, is the basis for good archival access. But even it has its issues. Archivists' Toolkit (and soon to be replaced functionally by Archon) provides a way to create and maintain finding aids. It boasts: "The Archivists' Toolkit, or the AT, is the first open source archival data management system to provide broad, integrated support for the management of archives. It is intended for a wide range of archival repositories. The main goals of the AT are to support archival processing and production of access instruments, promote data" (Archivists' Toolkit 2009). According to the Archon website: "Archon is [award-winning software](#) for archivists and manuscript curators. It automatically publishes archival descriptive information and digital archival objects in a user-friendly website. With Archon, there is no need to encode a finding aid, input a catalog record, or program a stylesheet. Archon's powerful scripts will automatically make everything in the system searchable and browsable on your repository's website" (Archon 2011)!

Rabins (1983), Czeck (1998), Duff and Johnson (2002), Light and Hyry (2002), MacNeil (2005) and Krause and Yakel (2007) directly address the finding aid. Meyer, Calitz and Brink (2002), Prom (2004), Millar (2006), Lucas (1981), Berner (1971), Ross (2003) and Yakel (2006) also address this theme. In a clever and artistic endeavour, the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (2010) even created a "musical finding aid."

Rabins (1983) instructs readers to revisit finding aids, re-describing collections when necessary. If subject access determines the research life of archival records, (Rabins 1983:17) then the archivist may need to relook at how a collection was described in order to maximize its usefulness to researchers. This undertaking is no simple task: "Substantial shifts in the focus of scholarly inquiry over time may create the need for redescription...Archivists generally select subjects to be highlighted in finding aids by retrospective analysis of research interests. They give slight attention to possible future research trends because these seem too difficult to predict with any accuracy" (Rabins 1983:17). It was difficult enough of a task the first time around: "The device previously employed, a list of major subjects, had obvious limitations. The subject terms tended to be quite broad and lacking in specificity...the finding aid gave no indications to where in the collection these subjects might be found" (Rabins 1983:19). In one sense Rabins (1983) is really describing a type of index, but instead of referencing pages (as a book index) it would refer back to boxes or folders. "An index is a familiar tool to researchers and is easily

appended to existing finding aids” (Rabins 1983:21). A lot of the detailed work of perhaps renumbering (or even numbering at all) folders, when needed, she suggests can be done by paraprofessionals. But the actual development of the subject access Rabins (1983) leaves to the professionals. It is still unclear, in her article, where the divination of future research use (and the corresponding subjects to be added) would come from. Since this thesis looks at redefining metadata for genre archives, it is assumed that archivists may have to revisit finding aids and re-describe collections when necessary.

Czeck (1998) conducts a study, analysing finding aids and their corresponding MARC records, on the extent they represent specific access information (chronological, geographical, personal, and corporate). Czeck (1998) finds that geographical terms were most represented, followed by personal, chronological and corporate. She ponders “ ... whether finding aids alone are sufficient as an initial locator of a collection ... ”(Czeck 1998:438). Czeck (1998) cautions that full-text finding aids are not the access equivalent of MARC records: “[I]t is not clear to what extent finding aids represent potential subject terms that the MARC records do not” (Czeck 1998:438). Nor does she believe that MARC records would supplant finding aids. This situation would make the application of appropriate subject access even more crucial, especially for collections which are not self-evident, irrespective of finding aid or MARC format.

Duff and Johnson (2002) state the obvious: “Finding information in archives is not an easy task” (Duff & Johnson 2002:472). This theme is echoed through almost all of the literature reviewed for this project, irrespective of year. In this study Duff and Johnson (2002) look primarily at historians. [In 2003 they studied the information seeking behavior of genealogists; see Section 2.7.] In looking at finding aids, historians often seek keywords: “The list of keywords helped him focus his reading so as not to overlook important references...” (Duff & Johnson 2002:482). Not surprisingly, they also seek out the help of archivists. Returning to online searching: “Many of the historians interviewed...suggested that subject indexes, keyword searches, or identification of themes would help them with their research. Unfortunately, archives rarely provide this type of access” (Duff & Johnson 2002:490). Equally unfortunate, this is not the last article to state this deficiency. Redefining metadata, as this thesis holds, should aid in this endeavour. [For more on Duff and Johnson (2002), see Section 2.6].

Perhaps innovative ten years ago, Light and Hyry’s (2002) concept of adding colophons and annotations, reflecting advice from the processing archivist about the collection, now seems almost pedestrian. Light and Hyry (2002) describe the state of archival-ship and the archivist as “an impartial, passive keeper of records, an ‘invisible bridge’ between the past and present...” (Light & Hyry 2002:218). They argue that archival decisions are not neutral, but rather impacted by their own contexts. Or, as they quote Mark Green and Todd Daniels-Howell: “all appraisal is local and subjective” (Light & Hyry 2002:219). Colophons, a publishing term for statements printed after the main texts (regarding that work), can be adapted for archival purposes. Comparing archivists to printers, they hold that colophons should be notes about the collection and that “the archivist’s role is more about representation and interpretation of a collection...”

(Light & Hyry 2002:223-224). This point is all from the processing side. From the researcher side they recommend annotations. “While the colophon may self-consciously alert the researcher about the subjective and mediating role of the processor in appraising, arranging, and describing a set of records and recognized their singular perspective, annotations to finding aids would allow multiple voices to express different perspectives and reading of a collection after processing is complete” (Light & Hyry 2002:226). Web-based annotations seem to be a perfect venue for this new endeavour. “Annotations allow documents to grow, respond, and increase in value for a community of users” (Light & Hyry 2002:226). Use of these two tools would allow, amongst other things, archivists “...to incorporate multiple perspectives about the content of collections, and to provide a structure for recording growth in meaning of collections” (Light & Hyry 2002:229). Use of colophons, in particular, would allow for describing other potential use (i.e. a travel archives use) of a collection which may not be self-evident on the surface. Five years later, Krause and Yakel (2007) write of incorporating user comments into a finding aid at the Bentley Historical Library at the University of Michigan (U.S.).

MacNeil (2005) explores the relationship between archival description and authenticity. If sticking to the two archival principles of provenance and original order is essential to maintaining authenticity, how can the archivist insert him or herself in the mix to provide value-added commentary? Like Light & Hyry (2002), MacNeil (2005) is a firm believer in colophons. She holds that “...finding aids, like scholarly editions, are not simply neutral tools for facilitating research. They are cultural texts, historically situated in time and place. They are shaped by particular ideologies and intentionalities, which in turn shape what they include and exclude, what they emphasize and what they ignore” (MacNeil 2005:274). This article describes a study in progress (at that time) by the Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada, called Archival Description and the Apparatus of Authenticity. The study concluded in 2008. MacNeil covers aspects of this study in three subsequent articles: MacNeil and Mak (2007), MacNeil (2008) and MacNeil (2009).

MacNeil and Mak (2007) hold that authenticity of records is elusive, irrespective of the intentions of the creators or the archivists who process them. “... they are susceptible to multiple interpretation and could be said to possess multiple authenticities, depending on the circumstances of those interpretation” (MacNeil & Mak 2007:41). MacNeil (2008) further rethinks original order by inserting the concept of “alterity,” the altering of original order over time. “The literature accepts, if only implicitly, both the inevitability and legitimacy of alterity, and suggests new approaches to archival description that take into better account the open-ended and complex histories of records” (MacNeil 2008:20). MacNeil (2008) leaves the reader with three thoughts on original order: 1) arrangement of archives is never fixed in time, 2) archivists cannot restore original order but only their concept of original order and 3) records may no longer serve the same function as they had in their origins (MacNeil 2008:21).

In the last of the trilogy of the post-Research Council of Canada grant-funded project (MacNeil 2005), MacNeil (2009) writes about three areas archivists should keep in mind when defining

provenance: 1) creator history, 2) records history and 3) custodial history (MacNeil 2009:99). In any case, researchers rely on (and trust that) archivists “get it right” when establishing authenticity. The obligation in on the archivist: “... archivists and archival institutions [must] demonstrate, rather than simply assert, their role as trusted custodians” (MacNeil 2009:104).

These enriched narratives by archivists, call them colophons or scope notes or text for a 520-tag, would be useful for aiding researchers in finding genre archives.

Krause and Yakel (2007) describe a new type of finding aid which incorporates social interaction by users. As they describe it: “The ‘Polar Bear Expedition Collections’ is a nickname for a group of collections related to the event formally called the American Intervention in Northern Russia, 1918-1919” (Krause & Yakel 2007:283). American soldiers, mainly from the state of Michigan, went to Russia to fight the Bolsheviks. It was a long, cold winter—hence the nickname. These popular collections were digitized in 2000. The article describes a new type of finding aid which incorporates social interaction by users. Krause & Yakel (2007) went into the study believing that “...users of archives approach materials with rich backgrounds and can contribute constructively...to description of and access to the materials” (Krause & Yakel 2007:312). What they found, however, was a bit disappointing. They found some of the interactive features of the finding aid limited, perhaps due to the newness of it all. But, “The question remains as to whether these social navigation tools are the most appropriate for archival finding aids or whether other tools such as annotation of the finding aid itself, tagging, and the explicit ranking might better serve archival audiences” (Krause & Yakel 2007:213). [For more on Krause and Yakel (2007), see Section 2.7.] The topic of thesis looks for an archivist driven solution rather than relying on user interactive comments.

Meyer, Calitz and Brink (2002), Prom (2004), Millar (2006), Lucas (1981), Berner (1971), Ross (2003) and Yakel (2006) also address the finding aid. Meyer, Calitz and Brink (2002) outline how material at the National Archives of South Africa may be accessed through manual and electronic finding aids. They describe manual finding aids (the List of Archivalia, individual inventories, registers, guides, and card catalogues. There was a review in 1998 for the improvement of finding aids. One of the recommendations was to have old inventories, originally in Afrikaans, translated into English. But this was not a simple translation endeavour. The format of the old inventories needed to be revised and accrual of new acquisitions needed to be taken into account before wholesale revision of the old inventories could take place (Meyer, Calitz & Brink 2002:73). On the electronic side, they describe the National Archives Automated Archival Information Retrieval System [NAAIRS]. Back in 2002 it boasted nearly seven million computer records. But getting records into such a system takes time. A check of the NAAIRS website indicates that only half of the archival material at the National Archives is represented in NAAIRS (National Archives of South Africa 2014).

Prom (2004) laments that no one was studying (or addressing) the lack of efficient description in archival finding aids. “The literature regarding description shows a similar paucity of analysis

regarding user interactions with finding aids” (Prom 2004:236). He conducted a study to “measure and describe” use of online finding aids. Perhaps not surprising, he finds that experienced and non-experienced researchers use different methods when seeking archival information, with the experienced researchers finding greater success with online finding aids. However, user interfaces aided both expert and novice in more efficient searches (Prom 2004:234). By Prom’s (2004) own admission, his “study shines a dim crack of light into a very dark room” (Prom 2004:263). He holds that novice users are often stymied by complicated display elements and overwhelming online search choices (Prom 2004:263). [For more on Prom (2004), see also Section 2.5.] Anecdotally, at regular stints at the reference desk at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, this researcher finds that users consistently ask for paper copies of collection finding aids even though their counterparts are conveniently online.

Millar (2006) writes of a “continuum approach” to description, comparing it to the “traditional post-hoc” approach (and by post-hoc she means retrospective). Traditionally, the Canadian/American version of archival description occurs after acquisition, appraisal, and arrangement. The continuum model holds that “it would be possible to create descriptions of records that recognized changes in creation, management, and custody” (Millar 2006:65). Millar (2006) holds that metadata standards set the benchmark for archival accountability. “The application of a metadata schema or metadata standards is critical to the success of description in the continuum model. The schema serves as the mechanism by which standards can be applied to the capture of data” (Millar 2006:69). As much of an advocate for the continuum model, Millar, however, admits that it would not work on all types of archives. Personal papers, for instance, do not lend themselves to such a practice: “[T]he preservation of personal and private papers for historical purposes -- an endeavor tightly bound by politics, economics, and culture -- continues to demand an after-the-fact approach to archival management” (Millar 2006:67-68). Since travel archives are frequently personal papers, her suggestion will be heeded in this thesis.

Lucas (1981) strives for efficiency in finding aids as a way for better control of archives. She traces the history of this control from scholarly inventories, catalogue cards, and then finding aids. But the inevitable rise of processing backlogs stymied even the most conscientious archivist. “Do calendars ... or lengthy folder-by-folder descriptions, provide a refuge from the need to summarize and thereby omit precious specifics? Have we been writing narratives more for their literary qualities than for functional use” (Lucas 1981:25)? She provides a four-step solution: “(1) updatability of *compiled* [italics hers] finding aids ... (2) effective subject access to bodies of records ... that are hierarchically arranged and often interrelated in such a way that individual series cannot be assigned discrete names ... (3) subject access to random files ... and (4) linkage with data in other institutions” (Lucas 1981: 26).

Berner (1971) writes, in a now very historic article, about the relationship between manuscript catalogues and finding aids. Prior to online capabilities, these were the two options for archivists to use for patron access. Finding aids had the benefit of allowing for narration, while cards were

limited to the information a cataloguer could fit on one (or several) cards. Cards did not lend themselves to extended reading.

In an opinion piece, Ross (2003) writes of the role of archival finding aids in the electronic age, using examples from the state of Mississippi (U.S.). As an example, she compares two access records for a collection at the University of Southern Mississippi. The MARC record for the Zoya Zeman Papers barely takes up one page when printed out. Its counterpart online finding aid is nearly 14 pages (Ross 2003:51). MARC records and not just finding aids crammed into tags. This thesis looks at ways to refine metadata in whatever access format is being used.

Yakel (2006) lists three salient points for the nature of a good finding aid: 1) authorship and authority, 2) evolution and fluidity and 3) relationship between creation and access (Yakel 2006:159-159). She writes that finding aids have a dual role as both a collection management tool and an access tool. A well-crafted and researched finding aid is essential to patron access. Yakel (2006), like Millar (2006), also believes that finding aids may change over time. It may have been begun by one archivist but then augmented by another years or decades later when new information is discovered or the collection has been rearranged, etc. And lastly, a collection may reside in two different repositories, hence two separate finding aids from their respective institutions (with hopefully references from one to the other). The archivist is essential to the creation of a finding aid, their “representation” of the collection is “neither objective nor transparent...archival representations speak not only about the collections for which they act as surrogates but also about archival practice and archivists” (Yakel 2006:161). For this thesis, it is a reminder to be mindful of the finding aid creator (versus the collection creator) when examining finding aids on tools like ArchiveGrid.

In 2010, with funding from the Heritage Philadelphia Program’s “No Idea is Too Ridiculous Project,” archival staff at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] set out to create a new kind of finding aid, one that provided musical interpretation to standard series. Staff chose the Mary Elizabeth Hallock Greenewalt papers (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2010a). Mary Elizabeth Hallock Greenewalt was a Beirut-born Arab-American who became a musician, inventor, lecturer, writer and political activist. She was also a spiritualist. She was intrigued with the notion of color and music (combined) as an emotional force. “Greenewalt, a pianist noted for her interpretation of Chopin, began in the early 1900s to investigate how gradated colored lighting might enhance the emotional expression of music. By 1920 Greenewalt had obtained the first of many patents covering a color organ designed to project a sequence of colored lighting arranged for specific musical programs. In combining light and color as a single performance Greenewalt believed she had created a new, fine art which she named ‘Nourathar,’ or essence of light” (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2010a:2). HSP thought that this collection would be perfect for adding music interpretation to a finding aid, via links to original musical compositions. They advise: “Music may take a moment to load, so please be patient if it does not play immediately upon opening a series. These accompaniments exist to provide you, the researcher, with an emotional guide to this collection. As the text of this finding aid assists you

in learning the composition of materials within each series, the musical pieces are intended to provide you with emotional insight to their respective series” (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2010a:1). While the Society did receive many hits to the site and publicity, not to mention excitement in the local archival community, they have not created other musical finding aids.

2.5 The Role of Full-text, EAD, DACS, and FRBR

Full-text searching, Encoded Archival Description [EAD], Describing Archives: A Content Standard [DACS], and Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records [FRBR] relate to other themes, but Greenberg (1998), Tibbo and Meho (2001), Dickey (2008), Rush, Holdzkom, Backman, Santamaria and Leigh (2008) and Riley and Shepherd (2009) address these as primary issues. Prom (2004), McCrory and Russell (2005), Lowenthal (2006), Kiesling (1997), Mandel(2004) and Konzak, Nemmers and Thomas (2006) also address this theme.

Archivists have been dealing with natural language searching (aka full-text) for so long that thinking back to the days of a controlled-only vocabulary seems ancient. Greenberg (1998) defines the basic IR [Information Retrieval] framework for NLP [Natural Language Processing] as indexing, query formulating, and matching. “Indexing involves constructing a document representation...[query] involves transferring a mental query...to a query representation ...[and] match...seeks to compare and match the query representation to the document presentation...(Greenberg 1998:410-411). In one sense it takes away the human factor: “With NLP, the problem of inter-indexer inconsistency is nonexistent. An NLP operation will produce the same results, on the same document, every time ... [but c]learly, an NLP operation is not always as accurate as a human in terms of ‘understanding’ a document’s content” (Greenberg 1998:413). Another problem with NLP is relevancy, a weakness in Greenberg’s terminology (Greenberg 1998:417). A shorter restatement is that one gets too much information back. If NLP often returns too many irrelevant results in searching databases, what alternative does a researcher have? Searching finding-aids-only databases would be helpful, as long as one can also narrow down the search results.

In 2001, Tibbo and Meho, in another dated article, look at how well commercial search engines (such as Google) retrieve finding aids. They refer to search engines which no college student (or even basic lay-user) has perhaps even heard of anymore: AltaVista, Excite, Fast Search, HotBot, and Northern Light. Only Google, from Tibbo and Meho’s (2001) list, survives in a recognizable form; Alta Vista morphed simply into Yahoo. Even though so much of what they found is really irrelevant today, the gist of their dilemma is constant: How can a researcher locate on-line finding aids via web search engines? They state a premise that “... once a finding aid is mounted on the Web, users will be able to find it easily... Many factors, however...influence the ease with which users may retrieve a given finding aid ...” (Tibbo & Meho 2001:63). Any archivist worth their training would probably not use the word easy in conjunction with finding finding aids on the web, but the expectation is still there that it is possible. How did these search engines perform in 2001? In one example, when searching using a collection title or “other”

terms (for known finding aids from controlled collections), Fast Search located the finding aid 65% of the time; Google 59%, Northern Light 56%, AltaVista 52%, Excite 31%, and HotBot 17% (Tibbo & Meho 2001:70). But these semi-respectable numbers are for known finding aids. What comes up, when one searches for an unknown finding aid, is not addressed.

Dickey (2008) focuses on the need for better search and retrieval with items that exist in multiple formats. Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records [FRBR] focuses on the need for better search and retrieval for items that exist in multiple formats (music for example). While primarily an issue for libraries, instead of archives, it does focus on the OPAC as the means of interaction. Dickey (2008) states: “Catalog FRBRization will transpire in two segments: enhancing the existing catalog to add bibliographic relationships to surface in the retrieval phase, and designing or adapting a new interface and display to reflect the relationships” (Dickey 2008:27). On the other hand, how relevant is FRBR anymore? It has been stalled in its development and application by libraries. A search of library literature in JSTOR using “FRBR” or the full “Functional requirements bibliographic records” did not pull up any results after 2008.

Rush, Holdzkom, Backman, Santamaria and Leigh (2008) examine the application of DACS by Princeton University, New York State Archives and the UCLA Film and Television Archive. What exactly does DACS [Describing Archives: A Content Standard] do? “DACS represent the first standard for the content of all descriptive output in the United States ... it is output neutral... appl[ying] equally to MARC21 catalog records, paper-based inventories, EAD-encoded finding aids, databases ... unifying all descriptions of archival materials under a common standard” (Rush, Holdzkom, Backman, Santamaria & Leigh 2008: 211). Princeton University found DACS useful since it had just finished an ambitious EAD retrospective conversion project (Rush, Holdzkom, Backman, Santamaria & Leigh 2008:216). New York State Archives had some record-cleaning to do to meet minimal DACS standards. However, it was an overall positive experience for New York State: “Implementing DACS served a vehicle for ensuring that our staff is up to date on current standards ... however, DACS also inspired our staff to think more globally about our institution’s finding aids” (Rush, Holdzkom, Backman, Santamaria & Leigh 2008:220). UCLA’s collection of moving images is an entity unto itself; yet it too found DACS useful: “DACS compatibility with other standards facilitated its integration with ...established [UCLA] item-level cataloguing procedures” (Rush, Holdzkom, Backman, Santamaria & Leigh 2008:224).

Riley and Shepherd (2009) write about the notion of shareable metadata. They outline six principles (the “Six Cs”): Content should be optimized for the shared, rather than local, environment; Consistency breeds reliability; Coherence -- records should make sense on their own; records should include *enough* Context for the local environment and *just enough* [italics theirs] for system-specific information; humans should be involved in Communication; and Conformance to standards is essential (Riley & Shepherd 2009:96-97). Many institutions take pride in the professionalism and scholarly bend to their finding aids, but a finding aid must serve a dual purpose. “An EAD-encoded finding aid is therefore both metadata about an archival

collection and its contents, and a document in and of itself. The finding aid is not just a simple inventory -- it is a full narrative, not easily or losslessly [*sic*] converted to a form usable by record centric systems” (Riley & Shepherd 2009:99). These finding aids must include subject access points. “The use of data value standards (controlled vocabularies) is also important in creating useful shareable metadata ... Using standardized forms of subject terms and names enables the content of access points in archival descriptions to be compatible with others’ descriptive metadata -- archival or not” (Riley & Shepherd 2009:103-104). For example, a controlled vocabulary in Archivists’ Toolkit [AT] will transfer into a bibliographic utility when that MARC record is derived from AT. [For more on Riley and Shepherd (2009), see Section 2.6.]

Prom (2004), McCrory and Russell (2005), Lowenthal (2006), Kiesling (1997), Mandel (2004) and Konzak, Nemmers and Thomas (2006) also address this theme. Prom (2004) studies how researchers interact with electronic finding aids. He conducted a study to “measure and describe” use of online finding aids. Perhaps not surprising, he finds that experienced and non-experienced researchers use different methods when seeking archival information, with the experienced researchers finding greater success with online finding aids. However, user interfaces aided both pro and novice in more efficient searches (Prom 2004:234).

McCrory and Russell (2005) focus on the interaction of EAD and MARC at The Ohio State University Libraries. Mapping from EAD to MARC does hold some cautions. They cite errors in moving from EAD into MARC in some of the statement of responsibility and subject tags. Subject tags are germane to the topic of this thesis.

Lowenthal (2006) laments all the non-indexed material on the web. “Overload progressively inhibits retrieval: in 1997, one-third of the World Wide Web’s 320 million pages were indexed; in 1999, of 800 million pages only one-sixth were indexed ... Far from promoting knowledge, this avalanche of raw data imperils it” (Lowenthal 2006:196). He sees a need for order, in order to maintain cultural memory: “Some contend that the ease and speed of modern information retrieval makes such cultural memory redundant —why store in the mind names and dates readily found in databases? But to have references at our fingertips ... is by no means the same as having them in our head” (Lowenthal 2006:202).

Kiesling (1997) addresses EAD as an archival descriptive standard. In a somewhat prophetic piece, since 1997 was when the average archivist in America was also first learning about EAD, Kiesling (1997) suggests that EAD would “foster common practices regarding data content for finding aids” (Kiesling 1997:344). Seventeen years later, it has and it has not. Perhaps as equally prophetic, Kiesling (1997) writes: “There are no MARC police, as the saying goes, and there won’t be any EAD police either” (Kiesling 1997:353), meaning that institutions still construct their finding aids after their own needs and capabilities.

In an opinion piece, Mandel (2004) writes of improving access to hidden collections. Mandel praises the advent of EAD, and its “groundbreaking” work, and the role of the digital library. But with a digital library comes the need for digital library standards. “We also need to look carefully at some of the very newly emerging digital library metadata standards and technologies for managing access to information. These now allow us to make decisions and to know that any of the options is sustainable” (Mandel 2004:108). Believing that the solution to the national problem of access to hidden collections is really found locally, Mandel (2004) proposes four action points: “IOSO: Internalize, Organize, Strategize, Optimize” (Mandel 2004:109). Repositories need to internalise that their special collections are the core to their functions, organise on interdepartmental levels for a united front, strategise to address unprocessed special collections [here Mandel cites the work done by the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, which had a massive backlog], and optimise their resources (Mandel 2004:110-111).

Like Mandel (2004), Konzak, Nemmers and Thomas (2006) also write of improving access to hidden archival collections, this time in the state of Florida (U.S.). A previous grant from the federal government created catalogue records for over 700 archival collections in eight of Florida’s public universities. But they soon realised that that they needed something more. “Catalog records have been useful, but are extremely limited in their ability to adequately describe the complexities inherent in most archival collections.” (Konzak, Nemmers & Thomas 2006:16). They received another federal grant, under the title “Opening Archives,” and converted records into EAD. One benefit of EAD is that it “...permits better cross-repository indexing and searching, and helps mediate differences in descriptive standards and vocabularies” (Konzak, Nemmers & Thomas 2006:17). Finding similar material across repositories is essential for establishing a body of work.

2.6 Examining User Interface

Archivists have not been replaced by machines when it comes to aiding researchers in access. Tibbo (1994), Pugh (1982), Green (2003) and Yakel and Torres (2003) address the varieties of this interaction. Crawford, Arnold, Connolly and Shylaja (1992), Schrum, Hickson, Kim, Baker and Dawson (2012), Duff and Johnson (2002), Duff and Johnson (2003), Cole (2000), Price and Sherman (2001) and Riley and Shepherd (2009) also address this theme.

Tibbo (1994) states that: “There has been little discussion ... of the difficulties of finding material in such large database environments” (Tibbo 1994:311). She outlines a study of collection-level searching of archival records at the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill using the EPIC system. She echoes Bearman (1989) and Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) in mentioning the archivists “need to build a subject access framework to identify what subjects in archival collections should be represented in subject indexing ...” (Tibbo 1994:321). Even in 1994 Tibbo writes: “In this day of information gluttony and those surfeited years that surely lie ahead ...” (Tibbo 1994:326). The situation, of course, is even more severe now. If information consumption was described as gluttony in 1994, what other digestive term could be applied for

the situation of user interface today on the Internet? This thesis holds that using the Internet as a way to access archives is venture given to frustration. Databases which aggregate finding aids are a more confident approach.

In another very dated article, but still reputable, Pugh (1982) outlines the dilemma of the reference archivist. This role is different than reference service in libraries. She holds that while libraries really rely on subject access, "... subject retrieval of individual documents has not been a primary goal for most archivists" (Pugh 1982:33). Everyone knows that archivists do not normally reference to that level. Rather than "... providing item description and multiple access [points, each] record group tends to be described as an isolated entity, and there is little standardization among institutions" (Pugh 1982:35). Although, at least in 1982, archivists did not stress subject access, it was a typical request from researchers. The solution, again back in the 1980s, was "... the archivist with his knowledge of the subject matter of the records and knowledge of the functional and administrative structure of the agencies producing the records is able to match researcher requests with archival material" (Pugh 1982:36). That concept is of little help nowadays with so much preliminary research being done online. Pugh (1982) holds that with the archivists' zeal to distinguish themselves from librarians, and those librarian ways, they may have done a disservice to researchers: "Archivists have long sought to differentiate archival arrangement and description from library classification and cataloging. In the process, archivists may have unnecessarily neglected the idea of subject access" (Pugh 1982:42). That appears to be an understatement. But Pugh holds that it is more complex than simply adding subject indexing to record groups, or series, or sub-series, "...since so many subjects may be present" (Pugh 1982:43). But would not automation solve everything? Not according to Pugh (1982): "...automated systems will be unable to solve our problems of subject access if we do not clearly identify the assumptions underlying our activities and specify our needs precisely...Good descriptive inventories coupled with an indexing system, whether manual or automated, are necessary if the reference archivist is to provide adequate service for users" (Pugh 1982:44).

Greene (2003) takes a more philosophical look at history and memory. He "... looks at the still-vibrant argument that something called 'history' is a legitimate end to which archives can be put, while something called 'memory' (also referred to more broadly as 'social memory,' the idea that societies —not just individuals — create, shape, interpret, and hold memory) is a much less legitimate purpose" (Greene 2003:95). But Greene (2003) holds that it does not have to be an either/or situation. He states that: "As archivists, we frequently straddle the divide ... between history and memory, and we have comforted ourselves with the notion that we are guardians or purveyors of the neutral informational objects that are used or misused by both historians and community members" (Greene 2003:101). Greene holds that both creation and the selection of archival material are "... tainted ... by the values, missions, and even resources of the creators and the archivists ... We cannot simplify what is profoundly complex, but we can...accept as part of our role that of self-aware, visible, and active actors in the struggles to form both history

and social memory” (Greene 2003:101). Archival intervention, even with its “tainted” values, missions, resources, etc., is not necessarily a bad thing. An archival professional is there to help, to think of how to describe the material at hand so that it may reach potential researchers efficiently and effectively.

Yakel and Torres (2003) created a study which defined characteristics of an expert user. They developed a model which could be used in archival education to help “create information literacy for primary sources” (Yakel & Torres 2003:52). There are three “distinct forms of knowledge required to work effectively with primary sources...domain (subject) knowledge and artifactual literacy,...[and] archival intelligence” (Yakel & Torres 2003:52). Yakel and Torres (2003) find that experienced researchers had a “knowledge of archival theory, practice, and procedures; the ability to develop strategies to reduce uncertainty and ambiguity...; and intellectual skills” (Yakel & Torres 2003:63). They echo studies by Duff and Johnson (2002) and Pugh (1982). Yakel and Torres (2003) base these findings on in-depth interviews with 28 individuals who were users of archives. These individuals consulted 115 separate archival locations (both public and private) (Yakel & Torres 2003:62). Like nearly every other researcher in this review of literature, Yakel and Torres (2003) came to the same “shocking insight”: “Developing information literacy for primary sources is difficult” (Yakel & Torres 2003:78). Their twist on this conclusion is that if archivists look into aspects of what they refer to as “archival intelligence,” this would be a step in the right direction.

Crawford, Arnold, Connolly and Shylaja (1992), Schrum, Hickson, Kim, Baker and Dawson (2012), Duff and Johnson (2002), Duff and Johnson (2003), Cole (2000), Price and Sherman (2001) and Riley and Shepherd (2009) also address this theme. Crawford, Arnold, Connolly and Shylaja (1992) surveyed user OPAC satisfaction at diverse library settings. Surveying library users of a major research university, a liberal arts college, a public library and a pharmaceutical company, the researchers asked respondents not only questions about OPAC satisfaction but also OPAC success rates. They defined satisfaction in terms of the system and its interface with the user, including: performance, search techniques, displays and menus and overall satisfaction (Crawford, Arnold, Connolly and Shylaja 1992:82). Success was a little easier to measure and rather straightforward. The researchers defined it as: “[F]inding what the user wants on the system” (Crawford, Arnold, Connolly and Shylaja 1992:82). The researchers entered the study hypothesising that a user’s age, gender, and primary library type would be factors in satisfaction and success. Their findings, however, showed no significant result, for these factors, in either satisfaction or success (Crawford, Arnold, Connolly and Shylaja 1992:84).

Schrum, Hickson, Kim, Baker and Dawson (2012), in a survey of users of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP], report that during a four-week period, 34.4% of researchers at HSP indicated that they used its finding aids; 32.8% reported using its online catalogue Discover; 27.9% reported using its card catalogues. For that same period, 18.4% of researchers using HSP’s website viewed HSP’s online finding aids and 52.6% used Discover (Schrum, Hickson, Kim, Baker & Dawson 2012:10). On a scale of 1 to 5 (with 5 being the highest), the average

response to the online question “Are the [HSP] website resources easy to navigate?” was only 3.8. Scores improved when onsite researchers were asked: “How helpful was the staff to your research?” Eighty-five percent said that HSP staff were either “very helpful” or “helpful” (Schrum, Hickson, Kim, Baker & Dawson 2012:13).

Duff and Johnson (2002) find, not surprisingly, that historians actively seek out the help of archivists in accessing archives. Referring to online searching, many of those interviewed “...suggested that subject indexes, keyword searches, or identification of themes would help them with their research. Unfortunately, archives rarely provide this type of access” (Duff & Johnson 2002:490). In 2003, Duff and Johnson performed another study, this time looking at the access/archivist interaction patterns of genealogists [see Section 2.7].

Cole (2000) conducted a study of name pattern recognition among doctoral history students, looking to improve information retrieval design. He notes that students’ pattern of collecting names as a basis of access material is an information-seeking behaviour. “There is evidence ... that the technique goes further than this, that it has a cognitive function. The cognitive function has something to do with the comprehension and interpretation of textual material, a function performed by what cognitive psychology calls a schema” (Cole 2000:99). He entreats Information Retrieval [IR] designers to incorporate enhanced name searching when developing new systems.

Price and Sherman (2001), in a very dated (web-wise) piece, write about the “invisible web” which is hidden from most search engines. They propose seven strategies to conquer this dilemma: 1) adopt the mindset of a hunter, 2) use search engines, 3) datamine your bookmark collection, 4) use the Net’s “Baker Street Irregulars” [a Sherlock Holmes reference], 5) use invisible Web pathfinders, 6) use offline finding aids and 7) create your own “monitoring service” (Price & Sherman 2001:33). While dated, their message for this thesis is that a researcher needs to be tenacious in using online resources to locate archival material, irrespective of Internet advancement and improvements.

Riley and Shepherd (2009) write about researchers’ use of shareable metadata. “[A]rchivists would benefit from performing usability studies on the effectiveness of archival descriptions in aggregations with metadata from other communities to understand the challenges users of these systems face when presented with archival metadata and to plan for appropriate solutions” (Riley & Shepherd 2009:112).

2.7 Access to Genre Archives

While the researcher did not locate any article which addressed travel archives and access directly, McNitt (1989), Strong (2000), Duff and Johnson (2003), Perrone (2006), Krause and Yakel (2007) and Southwell (2012) did use genre collections in their studies. Yakel and Torres (2007), Redmann (1993) and Zboray and Zboray (2009) also address this issue.

McNitt (1989) addresses the needs of the Office of Presidential Libraries, part of the (U.S.) National Archives and Records Administration. Unsatisfied with traditional library subject headings, they developed their own thesaurus based on the White House Central Files filing manual. They wanted to provide terms which would be useful for presidential archivists, but not codified within the Library of Congress Subject Headings [LCSH] system. Developing ones' own subject terms is a dramatic tactic in the struggle to provide precise access for users, and an endeavour which should not be undertaken lightly. This thesis takes a less schismatic approach and simply seeks to refine metadata, for genre archives, for greater user access

While Strong (2000) does not address metadata for travel archives, she does delve into the more philosophical territory of why collectors collect in the first place (using the example of the archives of William Drummond Stewart, a world traveller from Scotland). While he travelled extensively in Russia, Egypt and Turkey, it was the American West (and American "Indians" in particular) which caught his fancy—spending seven years there. He travelled with an artist who documented his interactions with the American Indians via a sketch book and later turned selected sketches of these individuals into oil-on-canvas paintings. Stewart, besides collecting American Indian artifacts, also collected (bringing them back to Scotland) bison, Western plants, trees, and even actual American Indians. Stewart used his travels (both East and West) in his novel *Altowan*. Strong does not wave off Stewart's collecting as whimsy: "Yet Stewart's collection of souvenirs from his trip must not be dismissed as merely that; rather, his collecting should be understood as both a creative and an interpretive act with larger cultural meanings" (Strong 2000:128). This last sentence provides the archivist with the dilemma: How does one describe a collection beyond its physical components, but also include its meaning?

While not addressing a specific genealogical collection in particular, Duff and Johnson (2003) do address the needs of genealogists. As a general statement of fact, family archives are similar to travel archives in that they are open to interpretation and use. For instance, at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP], the large collection of the Coxe Family Mining Company records attracts users beyond those simply studying coal in eastern Pennsylvania (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2001). It contains a wealth of family information, likewise for HSP's Chew Family Papers. Ostensibly a collection about a landed-gentry family in the Germantown section of Philadelphia and their business ventures, genealogists have found a family history goldmine in examining inter-family letters, as well as interaction between the Chew family and their enslaved servants (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & Cliveden 2009). In their study, Duff and Johnson try to determine how genealogists identify relevant archival material, how they carry out their research, and how they use descriptive tools (both bibliographic and human) during the course of their research. They confirm that "...experts realize that the more background knowledge they have the better they will be able to identify sources that contain relevant information...More seasoned genealogists increase their historical or contextual knowledge in order to increase their access to personal information" (Duff & Johnson 2003:84). Returning to the HSP example, how may an archivist better describe the Chew Family papers

(beyond that of a well-heeled family) to indicate to genealogists that it would be useful to them, currently there is no genealogical subject heading listed (although one entire series is dedicated to family genealogy). For a travel reference, the question may be how a personal diary, kept by someone who did a grand European tour in the 1880s, be tagged as a travel archive. In the HSP model, such an item may simply have been subject accessed as a diary. And only when reading the card could one figure out that it was indeed a travel journal.

Perrone (2006) describes her quest, and frustration, in trying to locate archives of closed Catholic women's colleges in the United States. Of all the articles found in the literature search, this one held the most potential for the purpose of this thesis. Perrone (2006) wanted to find out where archives of 36 closed Roman Catholic women's colleges, in the United States, resided. That is similar to the question that prompted this thesis question: Where are the collections of travel archives in this country? In the case of this thesis, the problem manifested is the difficulty tracking down these collections. Searches of online bibliographic databases were not successful. A more promising solution came via searching finding-aids-only database. Insight on how Perrone (2006) tackles her research question was eagerly welcome. Perrone (2006), however, does not appear to even attempt the bibliographic database route. Rather, she mainly contacts the motherhouses (since most of these colleges were run by congregations of Roman Catholic women religious) and simply asks their congregational archivists. Since travel archives are predominantly personal papers an approach like Perrone's (2006) would not be practical for travel archives. One would have to contact living travel writers (such as Paul Theroux, Bill Bryson, Jan Morris, or William Least Heat-Moon) or the estates of travel writers deceased (like Bruce Chatwin) to see where they archives ended up -- or will end up. Nor is there a logical place for such archives to land, unlike other genre archives. For instance, many contemporary glass artists are leaving their archives to the Corning Museum of Glass, in Corning, New York (Drabeck 2012:2). A researcher, looking for travel archives still needs to research it the traditional way.

Krause and Yakel (2007) examine the use of collections related to the event formally called the American Intervention in Northern Russia, 1918-1919. These collections document the people, mainly from the state of Michigan who went off to Russia to fight the Bolsheviks. Due to the severe weather, it was soon dubbed the "Polar Bear Expedition." The collections were digitized in 2000 and the researchers look at user feedback and interaction as a means of enhancing access. At the time of their research, Krause and Yakel (2007) find the level of user participation disappointing. Given the rise of social media in the seven years since, their results may be very different nowadays.

Southwell (2002) examines user access patterns at the Western History Collections [WHC] at the University of Oklahoma. Southwell conducted her study in 2000. At that time, the main application for searching collection-level access previously was MARC AMC, via OCLC. Web-searching was just increasing in popularity. But often times it worked too well, giving what Southwell (2002) describes as information overload for the patron and information-production

overload for the archivist (Southwell 2002:92). In her study, 24% of those surveyed learned of the Western History Collection via word-of-mouth or through repository referrals. Thirteen percent cited a “direct inquiry” to the WHC; 25% cited footnotes or bibliographies; 28% cited Web searching; 9% published guides; and 1% RLIN. Not surprisingly, in 2000, researchers at this repository were not using online access, all that much, to find out what was at the WHC.

Yakel and Torres (2007), Redmann (1993) and Zboray and Zboray (2009) also address this issue tangentially, Yakel and Torres (2007) and Redmann (1993) via patrons and Zboray and Zboray (2009) via form. Like Duff and Johnson (2003) before them, Yakel and Torres (2007) look at the information seeking habits of genealogists. They note that genealogists have been an understudied group of library and archives users, even though sociologists “...examine genealogy as a cultural phenomenon, focusing on motivations for this activity and its underlying meaning to individuals or social groups” (Yakel and Torres 2007:94). They interviewed and observed 29 genealogists for this study, recruited through a variety of methods. They find that genealogists transform their findings into personal meaning. “Although genealogists promote increasing physical access through both political and social mechanisms, the focus of genealogical activities is on gaining understanding through interpreting archival records and family narratives” (Yakel and Torres 2007:110-111). Family papers, like most travel archives, are personal papers. For the purposes of this thesis, both are considered genre archives. Understanding the users of family papers and how they access collections, provides insight to users of travel archives.

Like Yakel and Torres (2007), Redmann (1993) calls for a truce between archivists and genealogists. Since the last episode of the popular American TV adaptation of Alex Haley’s *Roots* [a book tracing a family from enslavement in Africa and America to eventual emancipation and growth] ended in 1977, Americans have been flocking to local libraries and archives (as well as the National Archives) searching for their genealogy. This initial influx of people having no clue of what they were doing (including how to research or handle research material) left archivists perplexed and consternated. “Despite the similarities in the interests, and often the methodologies, of professional and amateur family historians in the 1970s, their research was rarely considered equivalent by archivists and historians” (Redmann 1993:124). Prior to this phenomenon, genealogy was often used as a tool of one social group to use over another (Arnold 2008). Royalty were seen somehow as being better than average citizens; people whose relatives came to America during Colonial times were supposed to be “more American” than those just arrived. Kaplan (2000) writes of the 1890s: “In the contemporary climate of xenophobia, aggressive patriotism, and contested ownership of the mantle of the ‘true American,’ many immigrant groups sought to discover (or fabricate) ‘ancestors’ as far back in American history as possible, providing themselves with an unbroken link from the earliest times to the present” (Kaplan 2000:139). That all changed with *Roots*. After 1997 average people (including many African Americans who were the subject of *Roots*) wanted to find out their roots for their own benefit and pride, not to belittle anyone else (Arnold 2008). But: “Archivists

often exhibited the professional historian's bias against genealogy as they came into contact with amateur family historians seeking primary sources in local and state historical societies and archives" (Redmann 1993:124). Situations have been improving and in some repositories, like the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, no distinction is made between service to the historian or genealogist. Family collections once thought to be of merely historical use are now finding new life as genealogical fodder. "Whatever the personal attitudes of individual archivists concerning genealogical research, clearly genealogists have had a significant impact on all aspects of archival function: appraisal and accessioning, arrangement and description, reference and outreach -- and perhaps eventually, even archives education" (Redmann 1993:129).

While not a unique genre collection, Zboray and Zboray (2009) struggle with nomenclature for mixed material items -- or as they refer to them: "Whatchamacallits." Diaries, commonplace books, account books and scrapbooks often crossed over from one form (and purpose) to another. What started out as a strict diary morphed into a commonplace book when the writer started to insert transcribed extracts from printed matter. No longer simply a record of daily events, it was now a "mixed" item. Or how does one categorise a diary that also tracks household expenses (typically known as an account book) or is filled with clippings (normally called a scrapbook)? "This common transgression or disregard of form or genre can present problems for archivists and catalogers wanting to characterize (and categorize) accurately their manuscript holdings as well as for researchers seeking out any one kind of item as a distinct, discrete entity" (Zboray & Zboray 2009:102). They exhort archivists to come up with new terminology for these hybrids: "So it behooves archivists to devise ways to designate mixed material as something more than mere anomalies, defined by what it is not, rather than what it is" (Zboray & Zboray 2009:116).

2.8 The Culture of Collecting

Because of the personal nature of travel archives, the researcher reviewed literature on the culture of collecting. Understanding the creator of an archive may aid the archivist in the efficient description of the collection. People often collect as a way to hold on to memory. Travel writer Reggie Nadelson (2012) is as guilty as the next person of not letting go of mementoes of her travels. Nadelson (2012) writes of a great souvenir being an almost metaphysical object "...in which you've invested the essence of a journey, and which, seen or touched in repose, can instantly bring it back...a real souvenir is yours alone, and has real meaning" (Nadelson 2012:64).

Travel writers collect copious notes because they need to write articles or books after they return home. Patrick Leigh Fermor, even at age 19, kept meticulous journals of his year-long trek on foot from Holland to Constantinople, in the 1930s. Despite some of them being stolen along the way, he had the determination (and memory) to be able to reconstruct and eventually produce three volumes of memoirs of that momentous trip, decades after the fact: *A Time of Gifts* (1977),

Between the Woods and the Water (1986) and *The Broken Road* (published posthumously in 2014).

Travel writer Gary Shteyngart (2014) writes about how he documents his travels: “I used to jot down my travel notes in a series of miniature reporter’s notebooks, but now most of my notes are typed on an iPhone and make for a long string of non sequiturs when I return home” (Shteyngart 2014:46). It is difficult to image how an archivist will deal with his papers when they become part of a repository.

Playwright and preservationist Larry Reed (2004) documents restoration and community history in his small town in the state of Wisconsin (U.S.). It is more than just a lark, Reed feels compelled. “I feel a real responsibility to Cooksville because it has been so good to me. But more than that, it’s just a human responsibility to preserve and understand and celebrate our history. If we don’t, we’re not much different from the lowest animal, just grunting our way through life, then gone” (Reed 2004:189). So often, small towns of America’s “rust belt” (where reliance on heavy or light industry has plummeted many of them into near extinction when those economies have changed) do not have the wherewithal, either financially or technically, to preserve their historic homes and buildings. Yet there is always one or two brave souls in any given town (who see the value in things past) who try. Often these architectural historians (amateur or not), as children, were the ones helping their grandmothers preserve family traditions (everything from handed-down recipes to being keepers of the old photos). As adults they expanded from grandmother’s kick-knacks to rehabbing old Victorian homes, churches and school houses. Collecting and preserving, for Reed anyway, is one of the traits that separate humans from other mammals.

Kaplan (2000) looks at collecting by an entire ethnic group. This endeavour, of course, is a separate issue from personal collecting, fraught with dissention and conflicting goals. But it is a form of collecting none-the-less. The American Jewish Historical Society [AJHS] is the oldest ethnic-based historical society in the United States, founded in 1892. “The initiative was not an exercise in vanity or luxurious self-absorption. The founders believed that they were operating in an atmosphere of crisis” (Kaplan 2000:130). Xenophobic sentiment was on the rise and their AJHS founders believed that it was an essential time to document their contributions to the establishment and growth of the U.S., at to its future success. But their goal was not just to save the past; their goal was to also send a message. “The act of founding a historical society had become a demonstration of ‘Americanness,’ and the concept of an historical society itself was one that had the stamp of American approval” (Kaplan 2000:135). The AJHS was actually late in the game. Each of the original 13 American colonies had long since established historical societies to document their colonial/state contributions to the new nation: Massachusetts Historical Society, 1791; New-York Historical Society, 1804; Virginia Historical Society, 1811; Rhode Island Historical Society, 1822; New Hampshire Historical Society, 1823; Historical Society of Pennsylvania, 1824; Connecticut Historical Society, 1825; Georgia Historical Society, 1839; Maryland Historical Society, 1844; North Carolina Historical Society, 1844 [now the

Southern Historical Collection at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill]; New Jersey Historical Society, 1845; South Carolina Historical Society, 1855; and Delaware Historical Society, 1864. For the AJHS, there were internal divisions: Should all branches of Judaism be represented; should non-Jews be allowed to join? There were issues of recent and older Jewish immigrants and their traditions. “They did not want a historical society that reflected traditions and tenets irrelevant in their lives and called attention to what they themselves perceived as their own ‘otherness’” (Kaplan 2000:142). Archivists, whether dealing with institutional or personal papers, must realise that their work is inherently subjective, just as the creators who amassed the collections. “The archival record doesn’t just happen; it is created by individuals and organizations, and used, in turn, to support their values and missions, all of which comprises a process that is certainly not politically and culturally neutral” (Kaplan 2000:147).

Elsner and Cardinal (1994) identify Noah as the first collector, albeit in the extreme, collecting two of every species in order to save the world: “he is one who places his vocation in the service of a higher cause, and who suffers the pathology of completeness at all costs” (Elsner & Cardinal 1994:1). They assert, in more modern times, people either collected “tasteful” things or, perhaps more accurately, only tasteful people collected. They hold that people who collect to “...parody orthodox connoisseurship, to challenge the expectations of social behaviour, even to construct a maverick anti-system” are also valid collectors (Elsner & Cardinal 1994:3). They further ask if collecting as a phenomenon can be really understood if only limited to “the public art collections, the museums, the sacred stations of the Grand Tour” (Elsner & Cardinal 1994:4).

Pearce (1995) defines a collection as “...a group of objects, brought together with intention and sharing a common identity of some kind, which is regarded by its owner as, in some sense, special or set apart” (Pearce 1995:159). She writes of collecting as a social construct, as a way to revere individuals: “their barrows, relics and surviving possessions must be honoured with all the emotional force which surrounds the remains of the mighty dead and which, in due course, will produce historical writing and chronological distinctions once it is transmuted into the new understanding of the modernist rationale” (Pearce 1995:151). Collections are not an end all to themselves; Pearce (1995) looks ahead to the users of collections who will reinterpret them.

Filene (2012) looks at collectors outside of the traditional museum walls. These genealogists, heritage tourism workers, collectors, scrapbookers, artists (to name a few) are what he calls “outsider history-makers.” Freed from professional training and indoctrination: “For them, the past is not remote and dead but a comfortable companion” (Filene 2012:12). These are people using and creating histories. Referring to genealogists, Filene (2012) posits: “For the researcher, genealogy reinforces the idea that you yourself are making history and will leave traces behind for future generations to mull” (Filene 2012:22). He exhorts museum professionals to bring these “outsiders” into their institutions, by inviting them to share their stories (either written or oral) with the museum. He wants museums to tap into the “passion” of the outsiders for their past. “We public historians are well positioned to recognize the personal passions that animate

outsider histories and to use them to open up broader historical understandings” (Filene 2012:33).

2.9 Review Summary

The germ, which sparked this thesis topic, was a desire to locate travel-related archives. What was thought to be a simple task proved not to be so. A search of the archival literature (as described above) did not contain any direct application to this initial conundrum. What, however, it did provide was a clear history of the problem of archival access in general (both not enough results from a search and too many irrelevant results). The literature shows that many archival innovations were thought to solve either of those two dilemmas. But they too were deficient.

Travel archives are not alone in this confusion. There are other genre archives which could receive a broader audience if they are perhaps described (and accessed) better. Family history archives are a logical candidate, given the popularity of genealogy (Duff & Johnson 2003; Yakel & Torres 2007). The next four chapters this thesis will look at how travel archives are currently described and propose remedies for any deficiencies.

The lack of travel archival studies could be because either the general public (or more saliently researchers) are not aware of travel archives as an untapped research source. It could be, as Hackman (2009) reflects in 1984, an overall lack of “documentation strategies” in general. He proposed back then that SAA’s [Society of American Archivists] Task Force on Archives and Society “... develop specific recommendations for programs whereby the archival profession can better gain the attention, cooperation and support of key sectors, such as business, labor, and arts and culture, in developing effective continuing documentation strategies for records in these areas” (Hackman 2009:453).

It could also be that there have always been travel archives in collections, but simply no archivist defined them in that manner (a correctable situation). Yakel’s (2006) term “archival pentimento” refers to an archivist revisiting original order, “... when collections are rearranged in an attempt to re-present the creator’s original order” (Yakel 2006:157). The memoirist Lillian Hellman (1980) writes about *pentimento* as a way of reevaluating the past: “Old paint on canvas, as it ages, sometimes becomes transparent. When that happens it is possible...to see the original lines: a tree will show through a woman’s dress, a child makes way for a dog, a large boat is no longer on an open sea. That is called pentimento because the painter ‘repented,’ changed his mind. Perhaps it would be as well to say that the old conception, replaced by a later choice, is a way of seeing and then seeing again” (Hellman 1980:309). But this “pentimenting” may also be used for redefining collections to reflect their travel richness.

This problem of archival access may be because travel archives could be viewed as just so much ephemeral stuff. Lowenthal (2006) refers to this phenomenon as “the chaos of accumulation.” “Heritage accumulates by its very nature: stockpiling is the *raison d’être* of stewardship. We

amass out of habit and then contend that keeping stuff is good for us and for posterity” (Lowenthal 2006:195). However, a well constructed travel archive is more than just a box of random museum brochures and gewgaws. Done right, it could be a reflection of who we are as a society.

2.10 Conclusion

Since the beginning of recorded history, archivists have faced the problem of access to collections. With a small collection, the problem was minimal and needed simply the good memory (and solid tenure) of an archivist for access. The archivist was the medium between the researcher and the material. Often that proved insufficient and ancient information professionals began to write things down. Lists of titles were found among clay tablets at the Near Eastern site of Nippur, dating to 2000 BCE (Casson 2001:4). However once a collection became larger, even that was of little use.

“A catalogue, even so primitive a type as the one embodied in the Nippur tablets...was a notable step toward systematizing a collection. Two further steps were improved cataloguing and the adding of identifying notes to tablets” (Casson 2001:4). These identifying notes appeared with tables at the (now Turkish) site of Hattusas, around the thirteen century BCE.

Jumping ahead millennia, the problems were still there. Arathymou (2009) writes: “Archival institutions have been characterized as the arks of knowledge...Before the development of computer technologies, archival institutions had to cope with the immense amount of information they had to record and classify and also create finding aids so as to help users find what they needed...” (Arathymou 2009:71). Computers made this process easier and the internet even more so. “As far as it concerns archival description, the archival community had finally the chance to transform it, make it more flexible and represent it on new format, other than paper” (Arathymou 2009:72). However, “The adoption of new technologies by the archival community did not bring the end of traditional methods for archival works. Archival material is very complex and various stages of data processing are needed so as to make it available to public” (Arathymou 2009:76).

Greene and Meissner (2005) created a shift in the archival world, especially in the United States, with their ground-breaking article on streamlined processing known as More Product, Less Process [MPLP]. They noted how a MARC record may be sufficient, in lieu of a finding aid, for a collection (Greene & Meissner 2005:217). Yet they lamented, at that time, that “...barely half of us make our descriptive work accessible through OPACs or Web-mounted documents. In both our proclivity for item-processing and our avoidance of on-line cataloging, we evince a dismaying lack of concern for user access to our holdings” (Greene & Meissner 2005:229-230).

Subject access is a continued and essential value to archival access. From notes in clay tablets to accumulated lists to modern methods of standardization, subject access is not out-dated and should not be abandoned. This thesis will review and analyse archival access via subject access,

be they be in subject tracings in a standard card catalogue or subject tags for MARC records or subject listings for an encoded finding aid posted on a national bibliographic utility.

In the Research Methodology portion of the thesis, Chapter 3, the researcher sets out its research approach, method, data collection instruments and data analysis. He outlines the study's population and sampling. The researcher restates the study's ethical principles.

A combination of quantitative and qualitative measures is used in gathering data. While looking broadly for travel archives on global databases will help outline the extent of the material out there (quantitative), only by examining individual finding aids (qualitative) does one fully comprehend the extent of individual access and begin to see a pattern for any remedies.

People's travel collections basically serve as a memory aid, to help them write travelogues, novels, scientific reports when they return home. They may also just have been a way to document a voyage or journey for future generations. Or it could just be for their own enjoyment while on this earth. Irrespective of the motivation, they often end up in repositories. This study is intended to be applied research, in that it is "intended to address issues that have immediate relevance to current practices, procedures and policies" (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:43). While institutional policies may not be gravely affected, the recommendations for better accessing travel archives will be practical and doable and should have a positive effect on archival practices and procedures.

Chapter 3: Research Methodology

3.1 Introduction

Gilliland-Swetland (2000) holds that doctoral archival students “... should be able to formulate their own way of looking at the world of archives and archival issues, and obtain a set of leadership skills, research tools, and a vocabulary to query, understand, and advance the profession and the discipline” (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:259). The aim of this study is to explore, using travel archives as a case study, how archivists can better use metadata in describing genre archives. This project is significant in that it suggests remedies for improving access to travel-related archival collections. Researchers attempting to access this type of archive are often hindered by insufficient (or inefficient) metadata. They frequently overlook collections because a processing archivist may not have described a collection in a way which would have benefitted their research.

This study investigates the current state of access to travel archives using both qualitative and quantitative methods. In investigating the research problem qualitatively, it examines how archivists service, and researchers use, these collections. In looking at the problem quantitatively, it analyses how many of the established Library of Congress subject headings [see Section 1.2.1], relating to travel, are applied to the existing metadata.

3.2 Research Approach

In surveying what has been written on subject access to archives [see Section 2.2.2], the literature is plentiful from the 1980s, 1990s, and the following early 2000s. But there is a drop in discussion of this subject after that period. It is as if archivists have simply moved on to other topics. But the problem with subject access has not. Previous studies on subject access have often utilized quantitative research methods, while some have used only qualitative. Both methods are applicable to this thesis. Rudestam and Newton (2007) outline eight elements of quantitative methodology, including: number-based data expression, controlled research situations, prediction and explanations, researcher-controlled situations and statistical analysis (Rudestam & Newton 2007:38). Alternatively, they list eight elements of qualitative methodology which parallel quantitative, including: word-based data expression, naturally research situations, description and exploration, researcher participation and text analysis (Rudestam & Newton 2007:38).

This study’s research approach utilizes a combination of quantitative and qualitative measures in gathering data, also known as mixed methods research. Taking a cue from Rudestam and Newton’s (2007) differentiation of quantitative and qualitative methodology, listed above, elements of both will be used in this thesis. While subject access is, according to its own elementary definition, expressed in words (qualitative), it is also the number of subject terms which one may surmise has a positive effect on access (quantitative). Another example of this thesis’ mixed methods is the control of the context of the study and focus on a limited number of

variables (using Library of Congress Subject Headings and conducting research on internationally accessible databases (WorldCat and ArchiveGrid). This quantitative approach is countered by the study of individual repository subject access (often found on hand-written cards prior to typing, databases, and standardized subject vocabulary), which according to Rudestram and Newton (2007) “is intent on understanding phenomena in their naturally occurring context with all of its inherent complexity” (Rudestram & Newton 2007:37).

Like Duff and Johnson (2003), who used mixed methods in trying to determine how genealogists identified relevant archival materials, and Yakel and Torres (2007), who looked at the information seeking habits of genealogists, this mixed methods research methodology is a solid approach for this thesis. Cresswell (2003) outlines four criteria for choosing a mixed methods research strategy: implementation (concurrent, or either qualitative or quantitative first), priority (equal, or either qualitative or quantitative having priority), integration (at collection, analysis, interpretation or some combination), and theoretical perspective (explicit or implicit) (Cresswell 2003:211).

This study addresses Cresswell’s (2003) four criteria. For instance, quantitative and qualitative data may be collected, by researchers, one purposeful segment at a time (termed sequentially) or at the same time (termed concurrently) (Cresswell 2003:211). This study will collect data sequentially. This study’s analysis of existing subject metadata application, based on MARC records and finding aids (quantitative) is not predicated on interviews with archivists and researchers who use travel archives (qualitative). In other words, both of these methods (studying how archivists have applied subject headings to metadata and how researchers use the metadata) can be performed simultaneously.

“A second factor that goes into the choice of a strategy is whether greater priority or weight is given to the quantitative or the qualitative approach, especially the use of quantitative data and analysis” (Cresswell 2003:212). While looking broadly for travel archives on global databases will help outline the extent of the material out there (quantitative), only by examining how individuals use the collections (qualitative) does one fully comprehend the extent of individual access and begin to see a pattern for any remedies.

Cresswell (2003) holds that integration of quantitative and qualitative data could occur at any number of segments in the research process (data collection, data analysis, interpretation, etc. (Cresswell 2003:212). For this study integration occurs during the analysis and interpretation phases.

The theoretical perspective is the final factor for consideration: implicit or explicit. Cresswell (2003) holds that while all designs have implicit theories, mixed methods research can make an explicit theory a guiding framework. Such a framework operates irrespective of the other three elements of mixed method research -- implementation, priority, and integration (Cresswell

2003:213). Cresswell defines this perspective as focusing on gender, race/ethnicity, lifestyle, or class (Cresswell 2003:211). This study does not use an explicit overall theoretical perspective.

Mixed methods research, formerly called “triangulation,” is also recommended by Gorman and Clayton (2005), holding that limiting an investigation to a particular investigative approach does not necessarily yield the best results (Gorman & Clayton 2005:12). They cite two main reasons: The first reason is that when multiple methods are used, the researcher can observe different aspects of the same research questions, creating a wider study (Gorman & Clayton 2005:12). This first reasoning allows for cross-validation of information.

Their second reason why Gorman and Clayton (2005) recommend mixed methods is that by using different paradigms, the researcher can compensate for inherent weaknesses in each approach (Gorman & Clayton 2005:13). In other words, the researcher is able to use the best of both approaches, providing “macro- and micro-level perspectives” on their topic, with Gorman and Clayton (2005) equating macro-level perspective with qualitative and micro-level perspective with quantitative (Gorman & Clayton 2005:13).

Neuman (1997) speaks of replication and triangulation as two aspects of heterogeneous observation. Replication reinforces validity and replication increases confidence in initial findings (Neuman 1997:150). Researcher error is also reduced when replication results in the same findings. Neuman (1997) defines triangulation as using different types of measures or collection techniques on the same variable (Neuman 1997:151). Receiving identical results from various indicators implies validity and ensures confidence in the results. Leedy and Ormrod (2005) reinforce this result of triangulation, but in a more restrained manner: “Multiple sources of data are collected with the hope that they will all converge to support a particular hypothesis or theory” (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:99).

Some of the reasons why Rudestam and Newton (2007) advocate a mixed methods approach is that it “combines the rigor and precision of experimental, quasi-experimental, or correlational designs and quantitative data with the depth understanding of qualitative methods and data” (Rudestam & Newton 2007:51).

This study uses both quantitative and qualitative research methods, observing subject access to travel archives. The quantitative research method is accomplished by examining subject metadata found in MARC records and finding aids on international bibliographic utilities, namely WorldCat (OCLC 2014) and ArchiveGrid (ArchiveGrid 2014). These are compared against established travel terms devised by the Library of Congress [LOC]: *Travel*, *Travel writing*, *Travelers’ writings*, *Travel journalism*, *Voyages and Travels* and *Tourism* (plus all of their narrower terms).

In the United States, the Library of Congress has developed a name authorities system to facilitate access to metadata (Library of Congress authorities 2014). The LOC subject heading *Travel* contains many nuances, encompassing many narrower terms, including these intuitive

ones: *Adventure travel, Air travel, Automobile travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Business travel, Independent travel, International travel, Motorcycle touring, Ocean travel and Railroad travel*. [For the full list, see Section 3.4.1.]

The term *Travel writing* is used mainly for narratives and memoirs. Collections of works by travel writers have the heading *Travelers' writings*. This may also be further described by adding a nationality, like: *Travelers' writings, Canadian*. Works on journalism, focusing on travel, have the subject heading *Travel journalism*.

Voyages and travels, as a subject heading encompasses many narrower terms, including these popular ones: *Air travel, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Literary journeys, Mountaineering expeditions, Ocean travel, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Quests (expeditions), Railroad travel, Scientific expeditions, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Space flights, Voyages around the world and Voyages to the Pacific coast*. *Voyages and travels'* see-also references are: *Adventure and adventurers, Travel and Travelers*. [For the full list, see Section 3.4.1.]

Like *Voyages and travels*, *Tourism* as a subject heading has no broader terms but many narrower ones, including these more self-evident ones: *Architecture and tourism, Cruise lines, Culture and tourism, Ecotourism, Garden tours, Heritage tourism, Medical tourism, Music and tourism, Package tours, Sightseeing business, Space tourism, Sports and tourism and Wine tourism*. *Tourism's* see-also references are: *National tourism organizations and Travel*. [For the full list, see Section 3.4.1.]

The qualitative method of the study focuses on understanding use of travel archives by both archivists and researchers. The literature on understanding researcher use, to better provide access, is solid. Krause and Yakel (2007) describe a new type of finding aid which incorporates social interaction by users. Duff and Johnson (2002) look primarily at use by historians. In 2003 they study the information seeking behavior of genealogists (Duff & Johnson 2003). Cole (2000) conducted a study of name pattern recognition among doctoral history students. Miles and Bergstrom (2009) try to determine if there is an optimal number of subject labels to aid researchers in accessing collections.

Investigating research use involves site visits to repositories in the Philadelphia area which hold substantial travel-related archives: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

3.3 Research Method/Design

A combination of quantitative and qualitative measures is used in gathering data. This mixed methods research methodology is a solid approach to this research topic. Cresswell (2003) outlines four criteria for choosing a mixed methods research strategy: implementation, priority,

integration, and theoretical perspective. “Implementation means either that the researchers collect both the quantitative and qualitative data in phases (sequentially) or that they gather it at the same time (concurrently)” (Cresswell 2003:211). This project will collect data sequentially.

Using travel archives as a case study, this thesis focuses in particular on travel archives located at four institutions in the American city of Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. [For a fuller explanation of the choice of mixed-methods research, see Section 1.7.]

3.3.1 Survey

A survey is a research method. Gilliland-Swetland (2000) describes written or oral surveys as a way to produce “systematic, representative, qualitative, and quantifiable data” based on responses by members of a targeted population set (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:267). Leedy and Ormrod (2005) add that the ultimate goal of a survey is to sample a portion of a larger population, calling this approach a “descriptive survey or normative survey” (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:183).

Neuman (1997) echoes that “surveys give the researcher a picture of what many people think or report doing” (Neuman 1997:31). Cresswell (2003) defines survey as “cross-sectional and longitudinal studies using questionnaires or structured interviews” (Cresswell 2003:14). This project uses a cross-sectional survey, with data collected at one point of time, not over a long period of time (longitudinal). This thesis will use a form of bibliographic analysis as it surveys MARC records and finding aids.

The first exercise is an exploratory survey on how travel archives are described in MARC [Machine Readable Cataloguing] records. Are they described as exploration, expedition, travel accounts, or perhaps not even as travel at all?

The next step, also an exploratory survey, is to examine finding aids. While some of the same questions for looking at MARC records would apply, the researcher also looks at how complete the finding aid is: Does it have an abstract, background note, scope & content note, overview of arrangement, series descriptions, bibliography, administrative information, and an inventory? Are there subject tracings? In what forms do the finding aid exist: paper, EAD [Encoded Archival Description], DACS [Describing Archives: A Content Standard], etc. Some repositories may only have access to collections on-site via catalogue cards. Some of these are surveyed as well.

3.3.2 Case Study

This study is intended to be applied research, in that it is “intended to address issues that have immediate relevance to current practices, procedures and policies” (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:43).

While institutional policies may not be gravely affected, the recommendations for better accessing travel archives will be practical and doable and should have a positive effect on archival practices and procedures. However, Gilliland-Swetland (2000) encourages archival doctoral students “to learn how to apply research skills not only with a view to *improving* the professional environment (applied research), but also to *proving* the premises upon which it has developed (theoretical research)” [italics hers] (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:260).

Using travel archives as a case study, this study focuses in particular on travel archives located at four institutions in the American city of Philadelphia. Rudestam and Newton (2007) hold that case studies are generally associated with qualitative designs, with a goal of obtaining a multi-level understanding of the case (Rudestam & Newton 2007:50). Using a mixed methods approach allows this aspect of qualitative design (i.e. a case study) to be an integral part of this research. Paris (1988) advocates, and welcomes, the case study model for library research: “The detailed observations that case studies provide are especially useful in documenting phenomena occurring over a period of time or whose implications are complex” (Paris 1988:138). Library and archival sciences are often seen as ripe for quantitative research. Yet researchers such as McNitt (1989), Strong (2000), Duff and Johnson (2003), Perrone (2006), Krause and Yakel (2007) and Southwell (2012) use aspects of qualitative measure in their research with genre collections.

This study, one may admit, is not a typical case study. Neuman (1997) defines a case study as “individuals, groups, organizations, movements, events, or geographic units” (Neuman 1997:29). Travel archives really do not fit neatly into any of those categories, although movement may be the closest one. It does, however, qualify for his second observation on case studies: “The data are usually more detailed, varied, and extensive” (Neuman 1997:29). Case studies help the researcher connect from the micro to macro level (Neuman 1997:30), or in this thesis, from travel to genre archives.

Gorman and Clayton (2005) define a variety of case studies. One of these is multi-site and comparative case studies: “Generally a case study focuses on a single subject or single group of subjects, a single setting or a single depository of data. But it is also possible to have research in the case study tradition that comprises a multi-case or comparative study in the form of a single case study supplemented with selective data from other cases ... that are compared and contrasted” (Gorman & Clayton 2005:51). This research is looking at travel archives on three levels (international, regional and local), from three modes of access (MARC records, finding aids and on-site archival), and at four institutions (focusing on exploratory, scientific, historic, and missionary travel).

Cresswell (2003) defines a case study as one in “which a researcher explores in depth a program, an event, an activity, a process, or one or more individuals ... using a variety of data collection procedures over a sustained period of time” (Cresswell 2003:15). This thesis uses travel archives

as a case study for refining metadata for genre archives. Travel archives are a subset of genre archives. Remedies formulated for travel archives should also be applicable for genre archives.

The manner in which travel archives are used by researchers is ascertained by selected interviews and questionnaires of archivists who have significant travel-related archives at their repositories. Users of travel archives are also queried. Philadelphia is rich with archives representing travel: immigration, societal rites-of-passage, archaeological expeditions, foreign mission activity, etc.

This research is intended to be a case study of travel-related material. Gilliland-Swetland (2000:267) defines a case study as: “In-depth study of an individual situation, institution, or process in order to understand it in complex detail, and sometimes, to compare against other cases.” This study of travel archives (and their issues with access) produces results that are applicable to other genre archives. However, focusing on only one genre ensures that the project is attainable.

Data collection focuses on one point in time, but the data spans beyond that point. For example, the research will look at MARC records and finding aids that are accessible as of 2014, but some of those electronic records and finding aids may have been added to the system years or decades earlier.

While looking broadly for travel archives on global databases will help outline the extent of the material out there (quantitative), only by examining how individuals use the collections (qualitative) does one fully comprehend the extent of individual access and begin to see a pattern for any remedies. This thesis studies both archivists and researchers at four archival repositories (the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, the Presbyterian Historical Society, and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania). Each was chosen for its wealth of travel-related archival collections.

Archivists should have a working knowledge of their collections and, more importantly, the access points they provide to the researchers of their collections: card catalogues, MARC records and finding aids. Archivists should also know, if even anecdotally, how frequently collections in general (and travel collections in particular) are used by researchers. Archivists, for this study, have referred names of such users to this researcher to be candidates for survey instruments.

3.4 Data Collection Methods

The data collection methods include bibliometric analysis, interviews and questionnaires.

3.4.1 Bibliometric Analysis

According to the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development [OECD], bibliometrics is defined as the statistical analysis of books, articles or other publications (OECD 2014). This thesis looks at MARC records and archival finding aids as forms of publication (since they are published on international databases such as OCLC’s WorldCat and ArchiveGrid,

respectively). MARC records and archival finding aids are two of the most useful modes of access to metadata about archival holdings for both archivists and researchers. This thesis endeavours to quantify how many MARC records for travel archives use standardized Library of Congress Subject Headings indicating travel. It likewise seeks to survey finding aids using this same criteria.

First, using bibliometric analysis, the research begins by surveying MARC records of travel archival collections at publicly accessible institutions, described in English. For analysing these records, the premier component is searching the OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] WorldCat database, for travel archives or travel-related collections. OCLC is an international cataloguing database with: 25,900 participating libraries, archives and museums from 170 countries and territories, 2 billion + holdings, and new records being added every few seconds (OCLC 2014). WorldCat's records are routinely downloaded into ArchiveGrid and may be searched from either database. To get only WorldCat MARC records in a search on ArchiveGrid, one needs to include this qualifier in the search terms: `type:amc`.

The next component of bibliometric analysis was to examine finding aids for travel archives on ArchiveGrid. ArchiveGrid is an excellent tool to research how travel archives are described in finding aids. According to its website: "ArchiveGrid is a collection of over two million archival material descriptions, including MARC records from WorldCat and finding aids harvested from the web... ArchiveGrid provides access to detailed archival collection descriptions such as documents, personal papers, family histories, and other archival materials held by thousands of libraries, museums, historical societies, and archives" (ArchiveGrid 2014). The University of South Africa is a contributing institution, as are three of the four local repositories examined in this study: American Philosophical Society, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. [The University of Pennsylvania Rare Book and Manuscript Library is a contributor, but not the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology.] ArchiveGrid has EAD, HTML, and PDF finding aid types. To get them all, one needs to include this qualifier in the search terms: `(type:ead OR type:html OR type:pdf)`.

In both the WorldCat and ArchiveGrid searches a controlled vocabulary is used for the initial harvest of metadata describing travel archives. The project uses Library of Congress [LOC] subject headings as the taxonomy.

In the United States, the Library of Congress [LOC] has developed a name authorities system to facilitate access to metadata (Library of Congress authorities 2014). The LOC subject heading *Travel*, for instance, contains 25 narrower terms: *Adventure travel*, *Air travel*, *Astrology and travel*, *Automobile travel*, *Bicycle touring*, *Bus travel*, *Business travel*, *Caravans*, *Games for travelers*, *Homecoming*, *Independent travel*, *International travel*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage—packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Ocean travel*, *Pets and travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Signs and symbols for travelers*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Travel restrictions*, *Travelers' aid societies*, *Workers' travel programs* and *Youth travel programs*.

Voyages and travels, as a subject heading, has 20 narrower terms: *Aeronautics - flights*, *Air travel*, *Buccaneers*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Ocean travel*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Railroad travel*, *Scientific expeditions*, *Seafaring life*, *Shipwrecks*, *Space flights*, *Travel delays*, *Voyages around the world* and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*. The subject heading *Tourism* encompasses 29 narrower terms: *Architecture and tourism*, *Cruise lines*, *Culture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Dark tourism*, *Ecotourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Garden tours*, *Geotourism*, *Heritage tourism*, *Holistic tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Indian tourism*, *Lake tourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Outfitting industry*, *Package tours*, *River tourism*, *Royal tourism*, *Rural tourism*, *Sex tourism*, *Sightseeing business*, *Space tourism*, *Sports and tourism*, *Sustainable tourism*, *Volunteer tourism*, *Wine tourism* and *Women in tourism*.

The LOC set-up is similar for the subject heading *Archives*. *Archives* has 26 narrower terms: *Anthropological archives*, *Archival institutes and workshops*, *Archival materials*, *Archival resources*, *Art archives*, *Audio-visual archives*, *Broadcasting archives*, *Church archives*, *Court archives*, *Dance archives*, *Family archives*, *Film archives*, *Folklore archives*, *Genealogical libraries*, *Historical libraries*, *Jewish archives*, *Medical archives*, *Municipal archives*, *Museum archives*, *Newspaper archives*, *Performing arts archives*, *Personal archives*, *Scientific archives*, *Sound archives*, *Temple records and registers* and *Web archives*. The see-also terms are: *Cartularies*, *Charters*, *Diplomatics* and *Public records*.

An initial search for known travel collections on WorldCat, for instance, outlined the scope of the access dilemma. The OCLC record for the Graham Greene papers contains no subject tracings for *Travel*, only a mention of travel in a 351-tag organisation and arrangement notes (OCLC 2014). The Boston College finding aid for the Graham Greene collection does not mention travel in its subject listings (Boston College 2013). For the OCLC record for the Meriwether Lewis journals, there are no direct subject tracings for *Travel*, only subdivisions for the Louisiana Purchase [another name for the new American Louisiana Territory] and the United States for *Discovery and exploration* and a subdivision for the West (U.S.) for *Description and travel*. There is mention of travel in the 520-tag contents note (OCLC 2014). The APS' finding aid for the Meriwether Lewis journals on the American Philosophical Society's website does list travel as a subject heading (American Philosophical Society 2001).

Likewise for the OCLC record for the Bartram family papers: There are no direct subject tracings for *Travel*, only subdivisions for the American states of Georgia and Florida for *Description and travel* (OCLC 2014). For the Atherton Blight papers, OCLC lists *Description and travel* subdivisions for several of the geographic locations mentioned in his diaries, plus a travel note in the 520-tag contents note (OCLC 2014).

WorldCat and ArchiveGrid are global databases. To refine the research, the second step is to search a smaller, regional American version of ArchiveGrid called the PACSCL Finding Aids

database. PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] consists of 36 members in the Greater Philadelphia area. The “site provides access to finding aids for manuscript and archival collections held by its members, a group of 36 libraries and archives, whose collections offer primary resources on national, regional, and local history; the natural and social sciences; world history; literature; religion; art and architecture; business and industry; and the performing arts. It also hosts finding aids for smaller institutions in the region prepared through the Historical Society of Pennsylvania's Hidden Collections Initiative for Pennsylvania Small Archival Repositories” (PACSCL 2014). The American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Rare Book and Manuscript Library (but not the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology), Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania are all founding members of PACSCL. The same controlled vocabulary used for WorldCat and ArchiveGrid is used on this smaller data set.

After searching using controlled vocabulary, WorldCat and ArchiveGrid are searched for known travel archives, documenting how they are currently described. This is accomplished dualistically. The first method is by identifying writers prominent in “historic travel writing”: generally focused on pilgrimages, exploration, adventure and leisure (Arnold 2000). A second method is looking at “modern” travel writing: generally focused on personal papers of travel writers, notes and papers of explorers, or diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business, leisure or relocation.

This is not a traditional bibliometric analysis study. White and McCain (as cited in Sandstrom 1994:422) define bibliometrics as “the quantitative study of literatures as they are reflected in bibliographies.” Sandstrom, writing about scholars’ optimal foraging approach to information seeking, holds that these bibliometric techniques have “the potential to redirect research effort and debate away from speculation concerning scholars’ motivation to a level of inquiry where variable are quantifiable” (Sandstrom 1994:422). Wiberley (2003) uses bibliometric analysis to document types of scholarship in the humanities based on sources used in 54 monographs: descriptive bibliography, catalogues raisonnés, critical editing, literary history, art history, literary criticism, art criticism, literary theory and art theory (Wiberley 2003:150-151). This research project does not analyse bibliographic citations, but rather metadata about travel archives: MARC records, finding aids, catalogue cards etc.

3.4.2 Interviews

For the third step in the research design process, initial interviews with archivists, along with an interview schedule, is conducted to ascertain how archivists provide access to travel-related collections and how they interact with users. The archival literature, on understanding researcher use to provide better access, is solid. Krause and Yakel (2007) describe a new type of finding aid which incorporates social interaction by users. Duff and Johnson (2002) look primarily at use by historians. In 2003 they study the information seeking behavior of genealogists (Duff & Johnson 2003). Cole (2000) conducted a study of name pattern recognition among doctoral

history students. Miles and Bergstrom (2009) try to determine if there is an optimal number of subject labels to aid researchers in accessing collections. Southwell (2002) examines user access patterns at the Western History Collections [WHC] at the University of Oklahoma. Like Duff and Johnson (2003) before them, Yakel and Torres (2007) look at the information seeking habits of genealogists.

Interview schedules are questions read by a researcher (who also records the answers) to a respondent (Neuman 1997:231). Gorman and Clayton (2005) list five advantages to interviewing: immediacy, mutual exploration, investigation of causation, personal contact and speed (Gorman & Clayton 2005:125). Rudestam and Newton (2007) assert that it is “possible to mix research hypotheses of a confirmatory nature with general questions of an exploratory nature, structured interviews and scales that are quantitative with open-ended interviews and observations that are qualitative, and methods of analysis that draw on both traditions to expand the meaningfulness of the findings” (Rudestam & Newton 2007:51-52).

Cresswell (2003) describes interviews as “unstructured and generally open-ended questions that are few in number” (Cresswell 2003:188). Leedy & Ormrod (2005) characterise interviews as either structured or semi-structured. This study uses a semi-structured interview process, relying on a standard set of questions but allowing for tailored individual questions, based on the types of collections held at the four targeted institutions (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:184). This researcher believes that archivists generally know their collections the best (how they are best accessed and how they are ultimately used by researchers). Interviewing them provides the researcher additional insight into the collections.

There are advantages to interviews over questionnaires. For example, face-to-face interviews have the highest response rates (Neuman 1997:253) while questionnaires often have a low return rate (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:185). Gorman and Clayton (2005) list five advantages to interviewing: immediacy, mutual exploration, investigation of causation, personal contact and speed (Gorman & Clayton 2005:125).

3.4.3 Questionnaires

A follow-up survey instrument (questionnaire) with users of travel archives is conducted when applicable. Questionnaires are survey instruments both read and recorded by the respondent (Neuman 1997:231). This study surveys researchers at four archival repositories (the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, the Presbyterian Historical Society, and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania). Each repository was chosen for its wealth of travel-related archival collections. Archivists know, if even anecdotally, how frequently collections in general (and travel collections in particular) are used by researchers. Archivists from these four institutions, for this survey, have referred names of such users to this researcher to be candidates for questionnaires.

These surveys include questions using Likert-type scales as well as open-ended questions for assessing modes of improved access. The questionnaires are a combination of checklist and rating scale. The checklist is a “list of behaviors, characteristics, or other entities” that one investigates, while a rating scale is “more useful when a behavior, attitude, or other phenomenon of interest needs to be evaluated on a continuum” (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:185). The primary continuum in this study is the efficiency and effectiveness of subject access to travel collections. Developed by Likert in the 1930s, these scales are also known as Likert, or Likert-type, scales.

There are disadvantages of questionnaires as compared to interviews. Face-to-face interviews have the highest response rates (Neuman 1997:253) while questionnaires often have a low return rate (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:185). Even with these potential low return rates, questionnaires are necessary due to the fact that researchers of archival collections of a specific genre or topic are unlikely to be on site when a thesis study is happening. This phenomenon is particularly true for independent, special collections repositories. These are not affiliated with universities or government agencies, and therefore do not have a resident clientele. They arrive for a specific purpose, do their research, and then leave.

3.5 Data Analysis

Neuman (1997) defines data analysis as “a search for patterns in data — recurrent behaviours, objects, or a body of knowledge” (Neuman 1997:426). Gorman and Clayton (2005) outline three aspects of qualitative data analysis: data reduction, data display and conclusion drawing/verification (Gorman & Clayton 2005:205). For data reduction, one must condense “volumes of data into quantifiable analytical units; data are manipulated and reconfigured in an attempt to discover patterns and connections not previously apparent” (Gorman & Clayton 2005:205). The three main units for this study are: MARC records, finding aids, and user interviews.

In examining MARC records, attention is paid to the MARC subject tracings: 600-tag (personal name), 610-tag (corporate name), 650-tag (subject); 651-tag (geographical), 655-tag (genre/form) etc. — looking for indication of travel-related access terms. Records with explicit 6xx fields with the terms *Travel* and *Description and travel*, etc. as subfields are more helpful than those with more opaque terms.

For examining finding aids, completeness of description (based on abstract, background note, scope & content note, overview of arrangement, series descriptions, bibliography, administrative information, and inventory) is the consideration.

Interviews are conducted (seeking detailed information on collections scope and use) with archivists and users, to ascertain how researchers use travel-related collections. Review of all data is concurrent with its gathering and used to formulate recommendations for improved access.

Cresswell (2003) encourages examining multiple levels for data analysis. The study at hand looks at three different levels. The largest level examines MARC records on two international databases: OCLC and ArchiveGrid. The medium level looks at the finding aids on a regional level, in this instance the finding aids which are part of the PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] finding aids project. The smallest level consists of site visits (in order to also look at any manual card access points) of four local repositories with travel archives.

Neuman (1997) lists five methods of data analysis: successive approximation, illustrative, analytic comparison, domain, and ideal types (Neuman 1997:426). Successive approximation involves cycling through steps /repeated iterations, towards a final analysis. In the illustrative method, empirical evidence is used to “anchor” a theory. Analytic comparison uses the “method of agreement and method of difference.” A domain is “the basic unit in a cultural setting.” Domains have three parts: cover term, semantic relationship, and included terms. Ideal types are models showing social relationships or processes (Neuman 1997:427-432). This study leans toward the illustrative method. The researcher believes that in studying how travel archives are currently described, plus how researchers use the material, a theory about better ways to provide access emerges.

Leedy and Ormrod (2005) list four levels of data analysis, from the raw data to the final report: 1) organization of the data, 2) perusal of the data, 3) classification of the data into categories or themes and 4) synthesis of the data. They represent this process as an upward spiral (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:151). This study follows their model of data analysis.

As part of data analysis, Rudestam and Newton (2007) discuss internal and external validity and reliability. “[A]ll research carries the responsibility of convincing oneself and one’s audience that the findings are based on critical investigation” (Rudestam & Newton 2007:112). They define internal validity as “the validity of a causal inference”; external validity as “the generalizability of the findings”; and reliability as “the replication of the study under similar circumstances” (Rudestam & Newton 2007:113). Rudestam and Newton (2007) do allow that it “may not be necessary to use the traditional terms reliability, internal validity, and external validity” in qualitative research (Rudestam & Newton 2007:112). But, following the methods outlined in this chapter, this study aims to establish internal and external validity, as well as reliability.

One measure of internal validity is determining if the results of the data collected on WorldCat, ArchiveGrid, the PACSCL finding aids site, and card catalogues for the site visits mirror each other. In the initial sample, mentioned above comparing WorldCat and finding aids access points, the (paltry) results are similar. Likewise, seeing if the findings are generalisable (external validity) can also be measured by consulting another repository with travel archives, seeing how their access points compare to the controlled groups.

Replication by other researchers should not be an issue. All of the databases (WorldCat, ArchiveGrid and PACSCL) are publically available for research. Each of the four targeted repositories is open to the public. Another researcher should be able to replicate the searching performed on these data sets.

3.6 Data Population Sets

People's travel collections basically serve as a memory aid, to help them write travelogues, novels, scientific reports when they return home. They may also just have been a way to document a voyage or journey for future generations. Or it could just be for their enjoyment while on this earth. Irrespective of the motivations, the collections often end up in repositories. These collections are part of the population sets, as represented by MARC records and finding aids. This study focuses on paper-based travel archives, described in English, world-wide. These travel archives also must be at publicly accessible institutions. The focus of the thesis is on researcher access. If a collection is not available for public research, the point is moot.

The overall method moves from larger to smaller quantitative data sets of populations. The largest set consists of world-wide data on union databases, consisting of MARC records and online finding aids which document travel collections. These are represented by OCLC (MARC records) and ArchiveGrid (finding aids) [see Section 3.7]. A smaller search is then conducted on regional finding aids which may not be represented on ArchiveGrid (from PACSCL) [see Section 3.6].

The smallest data set involves site visits to repositories in the Philadelphia area which hold substantial travel-related archives: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.3.3].

There are two qualitative data sets of populations: the views and opinions of archivists and users of travel collections. Both of these populations are represented by samples from the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, the Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.7].

Archivists should have a working knowledge of their collections and, more importantly, the access points they provide to the researchers of their collections: card catalogues, MARC records and finding aids. Archivists should also know, if even anecdotally, how frequently collections in general (and travel collections in particular) are used by researchers. Archivists, for this study, have referred names of such users to this researcher to be candidates for survey instruments.

3.7 Sampling

There are three quantitative sampling components to study [see Section 3.4.1]: MARC records on OCLC, finding aids on ArchiveGrid and PACSCL and manual access points at four noted repositories with substantial travel archives (American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania). The first quantitative sample, MARC records, is gleaned from the OCLC database WorldCat. OCLC is an international cooperative database based in Dublin, Ohio, representing 23,000 libraries, archives and museums in 170 countries (OCLC 2014).] [WorldCat MARC records are regularly imported into ArchiveGrid where one can do a unified search or searches via MARC and finding aids (ArchiveGrid 2014).]

The second quantitative sample, finding aids, is gleaned from the ArchiveGrid and PACSCL. ArchiveGrid has thousands of contributing members and is an excellent tool to research how travel archives are described. According to its website: “ArchiveGrid is a collection of over two million archival material descriptions, including MARC records from WorldCat and finding aids harvested from the web... ArchiveGrid provides access to detailed archival collection descriptions such as documents, personal papers, family histories, and other archival materials held by thousands of libraries, museums, historical societies, and archives” (ArchiveGrid 2014). The PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] Finding Aids union database (PACSCL finding aids 2014) consists of 36 members in the Greater Philadelphia area representing more than 4,000,000 rare books, 260,000 linear feet of manuscripts and archival materials and 9,000,000 photographs (PACSCL 2014).

The third quantitative sampling component, examining manual access points at four noted repositories with substantial travel archives (American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania), is a purposive sample, drawn due to their significant holdings.

Rudestam and Newton (2007) hold that quantitative studies generally rely on random or representative sampling, which allows the researcher to generalize findings to the larger population. The qualitative researcher is more apt to elect purposive or theoretical sampling to increase the scope or range of data exposed ... [a] phenomenological study usually involves identifying and locating participants who have experienced or are experiencing the phenomenon that is being explored” (Rudestam & Newton 2007: 106). These four archival repositories (the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, the Presbyterian Historical Society, and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania) were chosen for their wealth of travel-related archival collections.

The choice of these institutions is a deliberate sample. Leedy and Ormrod (2005) state that qualitative researchers “are intentionally nonrandom in their selection of data sources”; they are

purposeful (Leedy & Ormrod 2005:145). Neuman (1997) further describes purposive sampling as a good choice when: “It uses the judgment of an expert in selecting cases or it selects cases with a specific purpose in mind” (Neuman 1997:206). Neuman (1997) lists three situations when purposive sampling is appropriate: 1) when trying to select unique and informative cases, 2) when trying to reach a specialized population and 3) when trying to identify a particular type of case for in-depth investigation (Neuman 1997:206). Gorman and Clayton (2005) distinguish between purposive and convenience sampling. While the four targeted repositories are all Philadelphia-based, they were not chosen by convenience. Their collections are representative of various types of travel archives.

The American Philosophical Society [APS] is the oldest learned society in the United States, founded by Benjamin Franklin in 1743. It has archives of early scientific expeditions (American Philosophical Society 2014). The University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology [Penn Museum] was founded on the heels of the first American World’s Fair, the 1876 Centennial Exhibition held in Philadelphia. The Penn Museum sponsored archaeological and anthropological expeditions throughout the world (University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology 2014). The Presbyterian Historical Society [PHS] is the national archive for the Presbyterian Church USA. PHS was actively involved in foreign missions (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014a). The Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] was founded in 1824 and is one of the oldest historical societies in the United States; it is home to some 600,000 printed items and more than 21 million manuscript and graphic items. Its unparalleled collections encompass more than 350 years of America’s history—from its 17th-century origins to the contributions of its most recent immigrants (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014a).

There are two qualitative sampling components to study: interviews [see Section 3.4.2] with archivists at the four targeted institutions (American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania) and questionnaires [see Section 3.4.3] to users of these collections.

3.8 Ethical Considerations and Ethical Principles

The research project follows Unisa’s Policy on Research Ethics (Unisa 2007) [see Section 1.1.12]. WorldCat, ArchiveGrid, and PACSCL are publically-available databases. There are no ethical issues connected with researching and analysing data found in these sources. Archivists who participate in the researcher use-survey provide informed consent. They had a choice of participating and may end their participation (and withdraw their consent) at any time. Their responses are accurately summarised or, if quoted, credited. The archivists’ identities are not revealed. No names, or other linking identification, of actual end-users are gleaned.

3.9 Conclusion

This chapter begins with the rather lofty words of Gilliland-Swetland (2000), who holds that doctoral archival students “... should be able to formulate their own way of looking at the world of archives and archival issues, and obtain a set of leadership skills, research tools, and a vocabulary to query, understand, and advance the profession and the discipline” (Gilliland-Swetland 2000:259). This thesis is precisely about that concept. It does what has not been done previously. It shines a light on travel and travel writing as disciplines. It establishes travel archives as a unique subset of something called genre archives. It uses bibliometric analysis not in terms of citation research, but rather looking at metadata in archival representation (MARC records, finding aids, catalogue cards).

In Chapter 4 (Presentation of Data), the thesis describes and interprets the results of the research described in the sections above.

Chapter 4: Presentation of Data

4.1 Introduction

In the previous three chapters the researcher outlined the research problem, purpose and objectives, a survey of the professional literature related to the study, and the methodology used for the research undertaken for this thesis. Chapter Four presents and analyses the research results gleaned from the research.

Archival travel collections often end up in repositories. These collections are part of the population sets, as represented by MARC records and finding aids. This study focuses on paper-based travel archives, described in English, world-wide. These travel archives also had to be at publicly accessible institutions.

First, using a form of bibliometric analysis, the research began by surveying MARC records of travel archives at publicly accessible institutions, described in English, from OCLC's WorldCat (OCLC 2014). OCLC is an international cataloguing database with: 25,900 participating libraries, archives and museums from 170 countries and territories, 2 billion + holdings, and new records being added every few seconds (OCLC 2014). The next component of bibliometric analysis was to examine travel-related finding aids on ArchiveGrid (ArchiveGrid 2014). ArchiveGrid is an excellent tool to research how travel archives are described in finding aids. [See Section 3.4.1 for greater detail.]

To refine the research, the second step was to search a smaller, regional American version of ArchiveGrid called the PACSCL Finding Aids database. PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries] consists of 36 members in the Greater Philadelphia area (PACSCL 2014). For the third step, initial interviews with archivists during site visits of the targeted repositories, were followed up by a one-on-one, administered interview schedule of selected staff.

The overall method moves from larger to smaller quantitative data sets of populations. The largest set consists of world-wide data on union databases, consisting of MARC records and online finding aids which document travel collections. These are represented by OCLC (MARC records) and ArchiveGrid (finding aids) [see Section 3.7]. A smaller search was then conducted on regional finding aids which may not be represented on ArchiveGrid (from PACSCL) [see Section 3.7].

The smallest data set involves site visits to repositories in the Philadelphia area which hold substantial travel-related archives: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.3.3].

There are two qualitative data sets of populations: the views and opinions of archivists and users of travel collections. Both of these populations are represented by samples from the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, the Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.7].

4.2 Online Computer Library Center [OCLC] (MARC Records)

The first quantitative sample, MARC records, is gleaned from the OCLC database WorldCat. OCLC is an international cooperative database based in Dublin, Ohio, representing 23,000 libraries, archives and museums in 170 countries (OCLC 2014).] The researcher searched WorldCat (WorldCat 2014a-c) using established Library of Congress subject headings related to travel and travel writing.

4.2.1 Library of Congress Subject Headings [LCSH]

Applying subject access points is still a gold standard in manuscript processing (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003 and Mengel, Smerz & Grippe 2014). General terms (as well as more specific ones, when warranted by archival content) not only hold value but are crucial for access. Yet it is not an easy endeavour. Subject access is “...time consuming and tediously exacting” (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:28). The number of terms may vary based on the size and composition of the archival collection. The Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries [PACSCL], for example, recommends between five and ten “names, subjects and genres combined” (Mengel, Smerz & Grippe 2014:27). But not all archives follow this golden standard about adding subject headings. For instance, a newly minted finding aid from the Moravian Archives for their collection of missionary travel journals (McCullough 2014) contains no subject terms and only a name index at the end of the document.

In the United States, the Library of Congress [LOC] has developed a name authorities system to facilitate access to metadata (Library of Congress authorities 2014). This study looks specifically for established travel terms devised by the Library of Congress: *Travel*, *Travel writing*, *Travelers’ writings*, *Travel journalism*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism* (plus all of their narrower and associated terms).

The LOC subject heading *Travel* contains many nuances, encompassing many narrower terms: *Adventure travel*, *Air travel*, *Astrology and travel*, *Automobile travel*, *Bicycle touring*, *Bus travel*, *Business travel*, *Caravans*, *Games for travelers*, *Homecoming*, *Independent travel*, *International travel*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage—packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Ocean travel*, *Pets and travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Signs and symbols for travelers*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Travel restrictions*, *Travelers’ aid societies*, *Workers’ travel programs* and *Youth travel programs*.

Most of the above *Travel* terms are self-explanatory, but some do require definition, namely: *Travel* (used for the art of travel), *Adventure travel* (travel to remote and dangerous places), *Independent travel* (travel where arrangements are booked by an individual, not by a tour operator — for that *Package tours* is used), *Interstellar travel* (travel to the stars, not manned space flights — for that *Space flights* is used) and *Travel restrictions* (restriction on travel by aliens or other groups of people).

The term *Travel writing* is used mainly for narratives and memoirs. Collections of works by travel writers have the heading *Travelers' writings*. This may also be further described by adding a nationality, like: *Travelers' writings, Canadian*. Works on journalism, focusing on travel, have the subject heading *Travel journalism*.

Voyages and travels, as a subject heading encompasses many narrower terms: *Aeronautics - flights*, *Air travel*, *Buccaneers*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Ocean travel*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Railroad travel*, *Scientific expeditions*, *Seafaring life*, *Shipwrecks*, *Space flights*, *Travel delays*, *Voyages around the world* and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*. *Voyages and travels'* see-also references are: *Adventure and adventurers*, *Travel* and *Travelers*.

Most of the above *Voyages and travel* terms are self-explanatory, but some do require definition, namely: *Aeronautics – flights* (*Aerial exploration*, used as a subheading after names of countries, cities, etc., has a similar connotation), *Buccaneers* (primarily 17th attacks on Spanish ships in the Caribbean), *Discoveries in geography* (*Discovery and exploration*, used as a subheading after names of countries, cities, etc., has a similar connotation), *Grand tours (education)* (extended tours of Europe by upper class British youth), *Literary journeys* (travel to places associated with authors), *Overland journeys to the Pacific* (crossing North America to the Pacific coast under pioneer conditions), *Seafaring life* (*Sea life*, as a subdivision of the names of individual navies, has a similar connotation), *Space flights* (events and experiences of manned space travel, compare to the *Travel* narrower term, *Interstellar travel*, listed above) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (sea travels from the eastern United States to the Pacific coast via Cape Horn or the Panama Canal). The related term, *Travelers*, is used for people who take trips or journeys.

Like *Voyages and travels*, *Tourism* as a subject heading has no broader terms but many narrower ones: *Architecture and tourism*, *Cruise lines*, *Culture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Dark tourism*, *Ecotourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Garden tours*, *Geotourism*, *Heritage tourism*, *Holistic tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Indian tourism*, *Lake tourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Outfitting industry*, *Package tours*, *River tourism*, *Royal tourism*, *Rural tourism*, *Sex tourism*, *Sightseeing business*, *Space tourism*, *Sports and tourism*, *Sustainable tourism*, *Volunteer tourism*, *Wine tourism* and *Women in tourism*. *Tourism's* see-also references are: *National tourism organizations* and *Travel*.

Most of the above *Tourism* terms are self-explanatory, but some do require definition, namely: *Dark tourism* (tourism to the sites of tragic places), *Heritage tourism* (tourism to places of historic or cultural interest), *Indian tourism* (tourism on American Indian reservations), *Package tours* (travel organized through a travel agent or operator, compare to the *Travel* narrower term, *Independent travel*, listed above), *Sex tourism* (tourism to places where sex industry workers are readily available) and *Volunteer tourism* (tourism to places where the traveller also performs volunteer work).

4.2.2 Searching Strategy

According to OCLC (Gabel, personal e-mail, 7 November 2014), there are three principle ways to perform a subject search on WorldCat using the proprietary software *OCLC Connexion* (WorldCat 2014a-c). A basic “subject” search (su:) will look for that term anywhere in the field, in either a heading or a subfield. For example “su:travel” would find a geographic heading (a 651-tag) with *Description and travel* as a subheading: “651 0 Pretoria (South Africa) \$v Description and travel” or the subject heading (a 650-tag) *Adventure travel*: “650 0 Adventure travel.” It would, of course, also find the primary subject heading of *Travel*: “650 0 Travel.”

A “subject whole phrase” search (suw=) would find terms that start a whole field and that may include multiple subfields. For example, such a search using the term *Travel* would yield a subject heading (a 650-tag): “650 0 Travel.” “Subject phrase” searches (su=) would look for that term at the start a subfield and for that which is contained within the same subfield. For example “su=travel,” may retrieve the name authority (a 600-tag) for traveller and travel writer Chester Woodward with the subheading *Travel*: “600 10 Woodward, Chester, \$d 1876-1940 \$x Travel.”

Following the delimiters listed in Section 1.8 of this thesis, this study focuses on paper-based travel archives, described in English, world-wide. Therefore, in the OCLC search the researcher observed the following settings with each search term: collections in English only (la:eng), not in microform (mf:nmf), archival material only (mt:mix) and paper-based (xmt:url).

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over four research sessions in 2014 and 2015 on the WorldCat site (WorldCat 2014a-c and 2015).

4.2.3 Initial WorldCat Search of LCSH Travel Terms

Using the strategy in Section 4.2.2, it is perhaps of no surprise that the LCSH term *Travel* (with 11,080) has the highest number of (suw=) hits, followed by *Voyages and travels* (6474) and *Tourism* (2228) [see Tables 1-3]. For *Travel*’s narrower terms, again looking at the Subject Whole Phrase search (suw=), *Ocean travel* (446) and *Railroad travel* (121) are the only two that reach over 100 hits, although *Air travel* (92) and *Automobile travel* (80) come close. The related term, *Travelers’ writings* also is near the 100-mark with 79 hits [see Table 1]. The following narrower or related *Travel* terms had no (suw=) hits: *Astrology and travel*, *Interstellar travel* and

Travel journalism. The following terms only two hits: *Games for travelers*, *Independent travel* and *Motorcycle touring*. Not surprisingly, the following only had one hit: *Pets and travel*, *Signs and symbols for travelers* and *Teenage travel programs*.

Table 1: Hits on LCSH *Travel*, *Travel Writing*, *Travelers' Writings* and *Travel Journalism* Terms (WorldCat 2014a)

Term	Subject (su:)	Subject Whole Phrase (suw=)	Subject Phrase (su=)
<i>Travel</i>	33,775	11,080	13,068
<i>Narrower terms</i>			
<i>Adventure travel</i>	62	17	22
<i>Air travel</i>	187	92	49
<i>Astrology and travel</i>	6	0	0
<i>Automobile travel</i>	192	80	166
<i>Bicycle touring</i>	65	33	65
<i>Bus travel</i>	67	26	45
<i>Business travel</i>	525	35	54
<i>Caravans</i>	12	7	9
<i>Games for travelers</i>	6	2	4
<i>Homecoming</i>	59	17	53
<i>Independent travel</i>	52	2	3
<i>International travel</i>	327	20	3
<i>International travel regulations</i>	7	7	7
<i>Interstellar travel</i>	54	17	54
<i>Luggage—packing</i>	1	0	0
<i>Motorcycle touring</i>	2	2	2
<i>Ocean travel</i>	3902	446	563
<i>Pets and travel</i>	11	1	1
<i>Railroad travel</i>	555	121	253
<i>Signs and symbols for travelers</i>	1	1	1
<i>Teenage travel programs</i>	2	1	1
<i>Travel restrictions</i>	13	5	12
<i>Travelers' aid societies</i>	35	25	31
<i>Workers' travel programs</i>	10	6	6
<i>Youth travel programs</i>	9	3	3
<i>Associated terms</i>			
<i>Travel writing</i>	87	39	45
<i>Travelers' writings</i>	290	79	88
<i>Travel journalism</i>	123	0	1
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	6162	966	1407

For the narrower terms associated with *Voyages and travels* [see Table 2], there are many more with (suw=) hits over 100, namely: *Seafaring life* (2730), *Overland journeys to the Pacific*

(1928), *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (618), *Ocean travel* (446), *Shipwrecks* (428), *Discoveries in geography* (291), *Voyages around the world* (100) and *Air travel* (92). The related term *Travelers* had a respectable 236 hits. Three terms, *Grand tours (education)*, *Quests (expeditions)* and *Travel delays* had no hits. The next least popular term was *Papal visits*, with six.

Table 2: Hits on LCSH *Voyages and Travels* Terms (WorldCat 2014a)

Term	Subject (su:)	Subject Whole Phrase (suw=)	Subject Phrase (su=)
<i>Voyages and travels</i>	7543	6474	7538
<i>Narrower terms</i>			
<i>Aeronautics—flights</i>	96	43	0
<i>Air travel</i>	187	92	49
<i>Buccaneers</i>	19	11	14
<i>Discoveries in geography</i>	289	291	289
<i>Grand tours (education)</i>	64	0	64
<i>Literary journeys</i>	13	7	1
<i>Mountaineering expeditions</i>	26	11	24
<i>Ocean travel</i>	3902	446	563
<i>Overland journeys to the Pacific</i>	2274	1928	2260
<i>Papal visits</i>	15	6	14
<i>Pilgrims and pilgrimages</i>	17	74	4
<i>Quests (expeditions)</i>	51	0	10
<i>Railroad travel</i>	555	121	253
<i>Scientific expeditions</i>	521	52	511
<i>Seafaring life</i>	2920	2730	2906
<i>Shipwrecks</i>	3075	428	2994
<i>Space flights</i>	14	8	9
<i>Travel delays</i>	1	0	0
<i>Voyages around the world</i>	120	100	120
<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i>	687	618	662
<i>Related terms</i>			
<i>Adventure and adventures</i>	46	74	44
<i>Travel</i>	33,775	11,080	13,068
<i>Travelers</i>	2051	236	453
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	14,846	6966	10,747

The primary term *Tourism* [see Table 3] had the least amount of (suw=) hits for its narrower terms. The highest one was only 56 (*Culture and tourism*). The following terms had no (suw=) hits: *Customs administration and tourism*, *Dark tourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Holistic tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Lake tourism*, *River tourism*, *Royal tourism*, and *Women in tourism*. The related term, *National tourism organizations*, also had no (suw=) hits.

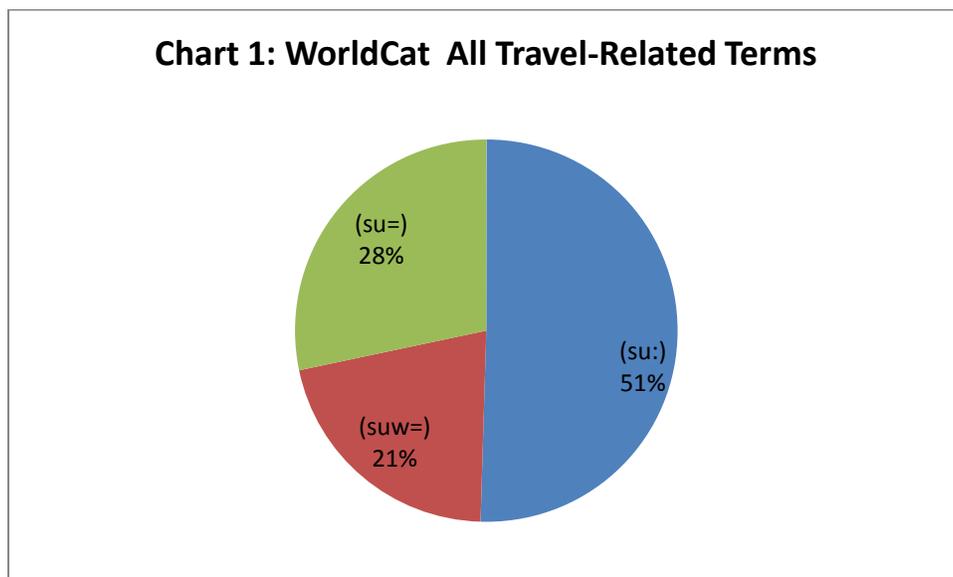
Table 3: Hits on LCSH *Tourism* Terms (WorldCat 2014a)

Term	Subject (su:)	Subject Whole Phrase (suw=)	Subject Phrase (su=)
<i>Tourism</i>	4850	2228	4149
<i>Narrower terms</i>			
<i>Architecture and tourism</i>	58	9	12
<i>Cruise lines</i>	28	14	22
<i>Culture and tourism</i>	16	56	92
<i>Customs administration and tourism</i>	4	0	1
<i>Dark tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Ecotourism</i>	15	4	15
<i>Forest canopy tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Garden tours</i>	32	25	30
<i>Geotourism</i>	3	2	3
<i>Heritage tourism</i>	21	4	12
<i>Holistic tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Holocaust memorial tours</i>	0	0	0
<i>Indian tourism</i>	51	2	3
<i>Lake tourism</i>	89	0	0
<i>Medical tourism</i>	29	5	10
<i>Music and tourism</i>	55	4	8
<i>Outfitting industry</i>	11	2	11
<i>Package tours</i>	24	13	24
<i>River tourism</i>	84	0	0
<i>Royal tourism</i>	14	0	0
<i>Rural tourism</i>	81	7	8
<i>Sex tourism</i>	44	22	30
<i>Sightseeing business</i>	6	3	6
<i>Space tourism</i>	15	6	6
<i>Sports and tourism</i>	89	28	43
<i>Sustainable tourism</i>	10	15	27
<i>Volunteer tourism</i>	12	4	10
<i>Wine tourism</i>	24	2	3
<i>Women in tourism</i>	94	0	1
<i>Related terms</i>			
<i>National tourism organizations</i>	3	0	0
<i>Travel</i>	33,775	11,080	13,068
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	909	227	377

The conclusion for this primary round of searching is that manuscript cataloguers are keeping with the big three terms (*Travel, Voyages and travels* and *Tourism*). A surprising exception to this finding is *Seafaring life*, which even exceeded *Tourism* in (suw=) hits (2730 vs. 2228).

Overland journeys to the Pacific, with 1928 (suw=) hits, also needs to be recognized. *Seafaring life* most likely reflects travel between Great Britain, since one of the delimiters is collections in English only (la:eng), and the Americas, travel between Great Britain and its overseas colonial possessions, and the maritime industry (such as whaling). *Overland journeys to the Pacific* reflects American expansion from the Atlantic coast to its Pacific (including the famous Oregon and Santa Fé trails -- taking travellers to what are now the northwestern and southwestern parts of the United States), the migration of Mormons to the West to escape religious persecution and gold prospectors moving to California in search of fortune.

Below is a chart for the basic “subject” search (su:), “subject whole phrase” search (suw=) and “subject phrase” search (su=) for all travel-related terms.



4.2.4 Secondary WorldCat Search of LCSH Travel Terms

The results from Tables 1-3 were very high. One way to further examine their relevance is to see how many genre sub-terms are also present -- paired with the terms *Travel*, *Travel Writing*, *Travelers’ Writings*, *Travel Journalism*, *Voyages and Travels* and *Tourism* (and their narrower and related terms). The genre sub-terms tested, usually found paired with a 600- (individual or family) or 650- (subject) tag, are: \$v *Archives* or \$v *Diaries*. The “su=[term]” subject search is the broadest of the index searches, as it picks up topical, geographic, name, and form/genre terms. For example, “\$v *Diaries*” is a form/genre subdivision (*Diaries* can also be a general subdivision (\$x) when it is a topic not an actual form), but it is not a term used in a 655-tag (genre/form). Therefore, a “su=*Archives*” search will look for *Archives* as both a genre subfield (\$v *Archives*) and as a primary genre/form (655 *Archives*) tag. Library of Congress uses *Journals* in a 655 -- although according to OCLC (Gabel, personal e-mails, 1 and 2 December 2014) that may change and *Diaries* may too end up as a 655 term. [The Library of Congress has since instituted this change (Gabel, personal e-mail, 3 March 2016).]

As with the initial search [Section 4.2.3], the researcher observed the following settings with each search term: collections in English only (la:eng), not in microform (mf:nmf), archival material only (mt:mix) and paper-based (xmt:url).

In Table 4, the numbers drop severely when the researcher combined the Subject Whole Term (suw=) with the Subject Phrase (su=) *Archives* or Subject Phrase (su=) *Diaries*. Besides the primary travel term *Travel* (with 141 hits), only its narrower term *Ocean travel* (with 25) had any significant response when combined with *Archives*. The pairing up with the term *Diaries* provided better results for *Travel* (with 1873 hits) and its narrower terms *Ocean travel* (155) and *Railroad travel* (48). *Automobile travel* also had a fair number of hits (19) and *Travel*'s related term, *Travelers' writings*, had 24 hits.

There are, of course, more items classified with the genre/form sub-term *Diaries* than *Archives*. And this was not only for those paired the primary term *Travel*, but also for *Ocean travel* and *Railroad travel*. These large numbers indicate that these diaries were kept at the time of travel and not something that was reconstructed at a later time. Cramped travelling spaces, as on a ship or train, only avail themselves to something small to record one's thoughts and experiences. A diary is a near-perfect instrument for this environment and form of documentation. They avail themselves to something small to record one's thoughts and experiences.

Table 4: Hits on LCSH *Travel*, *Travel Writing*, *Travelers' Writings* and *Travel Journalism* Terms Combined with *Archives* or *Diaries* in a Subfield (WorldCat 2014b)

Term	Subject Whole Phrase (suw=) [term](numbers from Table 1)	Combined with Subject Phrase (su=) <i>Archives</i>	Combined with Subject Phrase (su=) <i>Diaries</i>
<i>Travel</i>	11,080	141	1873
Narrower terms			
<i>Adventure travel</i>	22	0	0
<i>Air travel</i>	92	1	2
<i>Astrology and travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Automobile travel</i>	80	3	19
<i>Bicycle touring</i>	33	0	2
<i>Bus travel</i>	26	1	3
<i>Business travel</i>	35	0	3
<i>Caravans</i>	7	0	0
<i>Games for travelers</i>	2	0	0
<i>Homecoming</i>	17	0	0
<i>Independent travel</i>	2	0	0
<i>International travel</i>	20	2	3
<i>International travel regulations</i>	7	0	0
<i>Interstellar travel</i>	17	0	0
<i>Luggage—packing</i>	0	0	0

<i>Motorcycle touring</i>	2	0	0
<i>Ocean travel</i>	446	25	155
<i>Pets and travel</i>	1	0	0
<i>Railroad travel</i>	121	5	48
<i>Signs and symbols for travelers</i>	1	0	0
<i>Teenage travel programs</i>	1	0	0
<i>Travel restrictions</i>	5	0	0
<i>Travelers' aid societies</i>	25	0	0
<i>Workers' travel programs</i>	6	0	0
<i>Youth travel programs</i>	3	0	0
<i>Associated terms</i>			
<i>Travel writing</i>	39	5	12
<i>Travelers' writings</i>	79	3	24
<i>Travel journalism</i>	0	0	0
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	966	37	235

In Table 5, the numbers again drop severely when the researcher combined the Subject Whole Term (suw=) with the Subject Phrase (su=) *Archives* or Subject Phrase (su=) *Diaries*. Besides the primary travel term *Voyages and travels* (with 35 hits), only its narrower terms *Discoveries in geography* (with 42), *Ocean travel* (25), *Overland journeys to the Pacific* (67) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (48) had any significant response when combined with *Archives*. The related term *Travel* had 141 hits. The pairing up with the term *Diaries* provided better results for *Voyages and Travels* (with 660 hits) and its narrower terms *Discoveries in geography* (65), *Ocean travel* (155), *Overland journeys to the Pacific* (306), *Railroad travel* (48), *Scientific expeditions* (33), *Seafaring life* (91), *Shipwrecks* (24), *Voyages around the world* (52) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (175). *Voyages and Travels'* related terms, *Travel* and *Travelers*, had 1873 and 151 hits, respectively.

There are, again, more items classified with the genre/form sub-term *Diaries* than *Archives*. And this was not only for those paired the primary term *Voyages and Travels*, but also for *Discoveries in geography*, *Ocean travel*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Railroad travel*, *Voyages around the world* and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*. These large numbers also indicate that these diaries were kept at the time of travel and not something that was reconstructed at a later time. Cramped travelling spaces, as on a ship (*Ocean travel*, *Voyages around the world*, and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*), train (*Overland journeys to the Pacific* and *Railroad travel*) or covered wagon (*Overland journeys to the Pacific*), only avail themselves to something small to record one's thoughts and experiences.

Table 5: Hits on LCSH *Voyages and Travels* Terms Combined with *Archives* or *Diaries* in a Subfield (WorldCat 2014b)

Term	Subject Whole Phrase (suw=) [term](numbers from Table 2)	Combined with Subject Phrase (su=) <i>Archives</i>	Combined with Subject Phrase (su=) <i>Diaries</i>
<i>Voyages and travels</i>	6474	35	660
Narrower terms			
<i>Aeronautics—flights</i>	43	9	1
<i>Air travel</i>	92	1	2
<i>Buccaneers</i>	11	0	0
<i>Discoveries in geography</i>	291	42	65
<i>Grand tours (education)</i>	0	0	0
<i>Literary journeys</i>	7	0	1
<i>Mountaineering expeditions</i>	11	0	0
<i>Ocean travel</i>	446	25	155
<i>Overland journeys to the Pacific</i>	1928	67	306
<i>Papal visits</i>	6	0	0
<i>Pilgrims and pilgrimages</i>	74	0	0
<i>Quests (expeditions)</i>	0	0	0
<i>Railroad travel</i>	121	5	48
<i>Scientific expeditions</i>	52	14	33
<i>Seafaring life</i>	2730	15	91
<i>Shipwrecks</i>	428	4	24
<i>Space flights</i>	8	0	0
<i>Travel delays</i>	0	0	0
<i>Voyages around the world</i>	100	7	52
<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i>	618	48	175
Related terms			
<i>Adventure and adventures</i>	74	0	1
<i>Travel</i>	11,080	141	1873
<i>Travelers</i>	236	4	151
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	6966	237	953

In Table 6, the numbers again drop severely when the researcher combined the Subject Whole Term (suw=) with the Subject Phrase (su=) *Archives* or Subject Phrase (su=) *Diaries*. The primary travel term *Tourism* had only 16 hits when combined with *Archives*. Only its narrower term *Cruise lines* had any hits (2) when paired with *Archives*. Only its related term *Travel* fared better with 141 hits. The pairing up with the term *Diaries* provided even less results for *Tourism* (with only 14 hits). Its narrower terms *Cruise lines*, *Culture and tourism* and *Package tours* each had one hit. When paired with *Archives*, *Tourism*'s related term, *Travel*, had 1873 hits.

There were no significant differences between *Archives* or *Diaries* as genre/form sub-terms when paired with *Tourism* and its narrower terms.

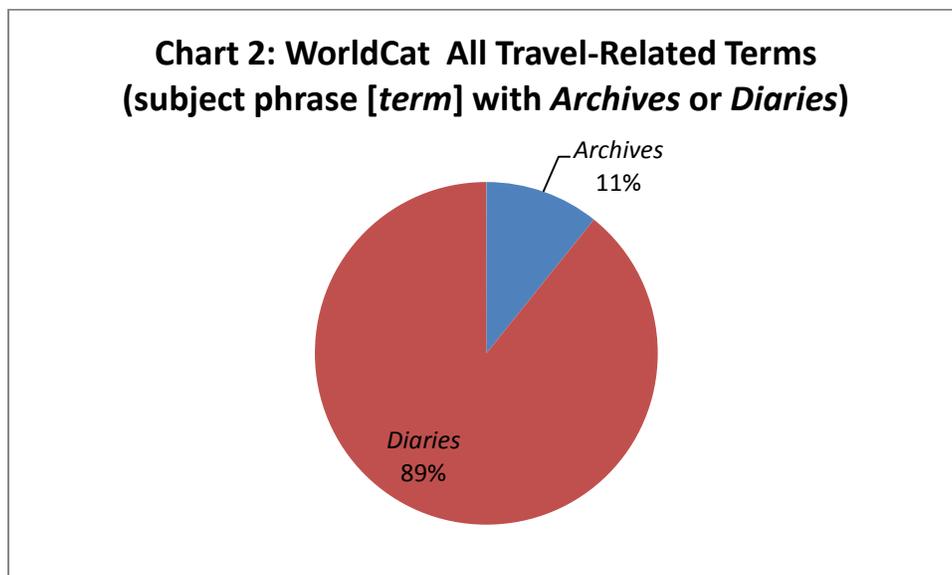
Table 6: Hits on LCSH *Tourism* Terms Combined with *Archives* or *Diaries* in a Subfield
(WorldCat 2014b)

Term	Subject Whole Phrase (suw=) [term](numbers from Table 3)	Combined with Subject Phrase (su=) <i>Archives</i>	Combined with Subject Phrase (su=) <i>Diaries</i>
<i>Tourism</i>	2228	16	14
Narrower terms			
<i>Architecture and tourism</i>	9	0	0
<i>Cruise lines</i>	14	2	1
<i>Culture and tourism</i>	56	0	1
<i>Customs administration and tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Dark tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Ecotourism</i>	4	0	0
<i>Forest canopy tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Garden tours</i>	25	0	0
<i>Geotourism</i>	2	0	0
<i>Heritage tourism</i>	4	0	0
<i>Holistic tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Holocaust memorial tours</i>	0	0	0
<i>Indian tourism</i>	2	0	0
<i>Lake tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Medical tourism</i>	5	0	0
<i>Music and tourism</i>	4	0	0
<i>Outfitting industry</i>	2	0	0
<i>Package tours</i>	13	0	1
<i>River tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Royal tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Rural tourism</i>	7	0	0
<i>Sex tourism</i>	22	0	0
<i>Sightseeing business</i>	3	0	0
<i>Space tourism</i>	6	0	0
<i>Sports and tourism</i>	28	0	0
<i>Sustainable tourism</i>	15	0	0
<i>Volunteer tourism</i>	4	0	0
<i>Wine tourism</i>	2	0	0
<i>Women in tourism</i>	0	0	0
Related terms			
<i>National tourism organizations</i>	0	0	0
<i>Travel</i>	11,080	141	1873
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	227	2	3

The conclusion for this secondary round of searching is that manuscript cataloguers are still keeping with the big two terms (*Travel* and *Voyages and travels*) when paring up with the genre/form terms *Archives* and *Diaries*—with *Diaries* being used more significantly than *Archives*. [Under *Tourism* there was basically no difference between *Diaries* and *Archives* when paired.]

Another conclusion is the overwhelming use of *Diaries* as opposed to *Archives* as a genre/form sub-term (\$v) when paired with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* and their sub- and associated/related terms. This is most likely due to these diaries being kept at the time of travel and not something that was reconstructed at a later time. Travel involving cramped spaces on ships (*Ocean travel*, *Voyages around the world*, and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*), trains (*Overland journeys to the Pacific* and *Railroad travel*) or covered wagons (*Overland journeys to the Pacific*), only lend themselves to something portable to record one’s thoughts and experiences.

Below is a chart representing the proportion of “subject phrase” travel-related terms when combined with the genre terms *Archives* or *Diaries*.



4.2.5 Tertiary WorldCat Search of LCSH Travel Terms

The figures in Tables 1-6 above do not, perhaps, really give a clear picture of the state of subject access to travel collections. The researcher performed a tertiary search on the results from Tables 1-3 combined with a looking only for the travel term paired with the genre/form tag (655) *Archives* or with the genre/form tag (655) *Journals*. This required pairing the travel term “suw=[term]” with *Archives* or *Journals* as a genre/form phrase “ge=[term],” but excluding that same term in a subfield, “hl:[term].” For example, one would see *Archives* as a 655 but not as a

subfield “\$v *Archives*.” Since *Journals* is not a standard genre subfield (\$v), this added exclusion did not apply (Gabel, personal e-mail, 9 December 2014).

As with the initial search [Section 4.2.3], the researcher observed the following settings with each search term: collections in English only (la:eng), not in microform (mf:nmf), archival material only (mt:mix) and paper-based (xmt:url).

In running *Archives* against *Travel* (and its narrower terms), *Travel writing*, *Travelers’ writings* and *Travel journalism* the results are remarkably different. Only one term, *Travel*, had any genre/form pairing -- with five hits (WorldCat 2014c).

Running *Archives* against *Voyages and travels* and its narrower terms, the results are only slightly better. Only two of them (*Voyages and travels* with two and *Overland journeys to the Pacific* also with two) had any hits (WorldCat 2014c). The *Tourism* grouping of terms had the paltriest results, with only one hit when paired with *Archives* (WorldCat 2014c), and that was for the primary term, *Tourism*, itself.

In running *Journals* against *Travel* (and its narrower terms), *Travel writing*, *Travelers’ writings* and *Travel journalism* the results are slightly better than for *Archives*. One term, *Travel*, had the most genre/form pairings -- with 62 hits. *Travel’s* narrower terms did better than their paired *Archives* counterparts with: *Automobile travel* (1), *International travel* (1), *Ocean travel* (10) and *Railroad travel* (1). The related term, *Travelers’ writings*, also had one hit (WorldCat 2014c).

Running *Journals* against *Voyages and travels* and its narrower terms, the results were remarkably better than with *Archives*. Only two of them (*Voyages and travels* with 25 and *Overland journeys to the Pacific* also with 27) had any hits over 20 (WorldCat 2014c). Its narrower terms, with hits, included: *Discoveries in geography* (1), *Ocean travel* (10), *Railroad travel* (1), *Seafaring life* (1) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (12) (WorldCat 2014c). The *Tourism* grouping of terms had the paltriest results, with no hits when paired with *Journals* (WorldCat 2014c).

In conclusion, these results indicate the lack of the use by archivists of *Archives* (or *Journals*) as a genre/form (655-tag) when combined with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* (and their narrower or associated/related terms).

4.2.6 Fourth WorldCat Search of LCSH Travel Terms

In Sections 4.2.4 and 4.2.5 the researcher looked at LCSH travel terms paired with specific LCSH genre terms. Another way to look at the problem is to see how many LCSH travel terms are paired with other LCSH travel terms. The primary travel terms of *Travel*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism* all had too many hits in WorldCat and could not be viewed individually without introducing new search limits.] The researcher then looked at narrower terms having a minimum of 100 Subject Whole Phrase (suw=) hits in Tables 1-3. He then sampled the first ten

listings and the last ten listings of each of those groups (WorldCat 2014c). Under *Travel* terms they were: *Ocean travel* and *Railroad travel*. Under *Voyages and travels* the terms were: *Discoveries in geography*, *Ocean travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Shipwrecks*, *Voyages around the world* and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*. [Note that *Overland journeys to the Pacific* and *Seafaring life* also had too many hits on WorldCat and could not be viewed without introducing new search limits.] There were no narrower terms under *Tourism* which met the 100-hit threshold.

The most popular paired LCSH terms from the samples were *Voyages and travels* and *Travel*. The next popular terms were *Voyages around the world*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific* and *Voyages to the Pacific coast*. The next popular terms were *Automobile travel*, *Seafaring life*, *Tourism* and *Scientific expeditions*. Of course, the largest result of this sampling was actually no paired travel terms at all.

One can conclude, from this test, that the use of multiple travel terms, in MARC records, is currently not heavily significant.

Table 7: Hits on Selected LCSH Travel Terms Occurring with Other Terms in the Same Record (WorldCat 2014c)

Narrower or related travel terms with >100 hits (sample size=20)	<i>Ocean travel</i>	<i>Railroad travel</i>	<i>Discoveries in geography</i>	<i>Shipwrecks</i>	<i>Voyages around the world</i>	<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i>	<i>Travelers</i>
Other travel terms appearing in the sampled records (with frequency noted)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (10)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (1)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (3)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (3)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (5)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (2)	<i>Voyages and travels</i> (5)
	<i>Travel</i> (3)	<i>Travel</i> (8)	<i>Travel</i> (4)	<i>Travel</i> (1)	<i>Travel</i> (5)	<i>Travel</i> (5)	<i>Travel</i> (13)
	<i>Shipwrecks</i> (1)	<i>Automobile travel</i> (1)	<i>Voyages around the world</i> (1)	<i>Seafaring life</i> (3)	<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i> (2)	<i>Voyages around the world</i> (1)	<i>Tourism</i> (1)
	<i>Seafaring life</i> (2)	<i>Tourism</i> (1)	<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i> (1)	<i>Ocean travel</i> (1)	<i>Ocean travel</i> (5)	<i>Ocean travel</i> (1)	<i>Ocean travel</i> (1)
	<i>Travelers</i> (1)	<i>Air travel</i> (1)	<i>Overland journeys to the Pacific</i> (2)	[no other travel terms] (16)	<i>Scientific expeditions</i> (2)	<i>Overland journeys to the Pacific</i> (1)	<i>Travelers' writings</i> (1)
	<i>Automobile travel</i> (1)	<i>Ocean travel</i> (1)	<i>Scientific expeditions</i> (1)		<i>Railroad travel</i> (1)	<i>Discoveries in geography</i> (1)	[no other travel terms](1)

	<i>Voyages around the world</i> (1)	<i>Overland journeys to the Pacific</i> (1)	[no other travel terms] (13)		[no other travel terms] (7)	[no other travel terms] (13)	
	<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i> (1)	[no other travel terms] (8)					
	[no other travel terms] (5)						

4.2.7 Description and travel as a Subfield in WorldCat

As mentioned in Section 4.2.2, a basic “subject” search (su:) will look for that term anywhere in the field, in either a heading or a subfield. For example “su:travel” would find a geographic heading (a 651-tag) with *Description and travel* as a subheading: “651 0 Pretoria (South Africa) \$v Description and travel” or the subject heading (a 650-tag) *Adventure travel*: “650 0 Adventure travel.” It would, of course, also find the primary subject heading of *Travel*: “650 0 Travel” (Gabel, personal e-mail, 7 November 2014). In order to just look at the occurrence of the travel subject term *Description and travel*, one needs to do a separate LCSH phrase search (hl=“description and travel”) (Gabel, personal e-mail, 21 January 2015). In performing this type of search, and factoring in the following settings (collections in English only (la:eng), not in microform (mf:nmf), archival material only (mt:mix) and paper-based (xmt:url)), one finds 28,771 records in WorldCat (WorldCat 2015).

4.2.8 Summary of WorldCat Searches

The conclusion from these rounds of searching is that manuscript cataloguers are keeping with the big three terms (*Travel*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism*). A surprising exception to this finding is *Voyages and travels*’ narrower term *Seafaring life*, which even exceeded *Tourism* in hits. *Voyages and travels*’ narrower term *Overland journeys to the Pacific* also had significant hits.

A second conclusion for these rounds of searching is that manuscript cataloguers are still keeping with the big two terms (*Travel* and *Voyages and travels*) when paring up with the genre/form terms *Archives* and *Diaries*—with *Diaries* being used more significantly than *Archives*. Under *Tourism* there was basically no difference between *Diaries* and *Archives* when paired.

Another conclusion is the overwhelming use of *Diaries* as opposed to *Archives* as a genre/form sub-term when paired with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* and their sub- and associated/related terms. This is most likely due to these diaries being kept at the time of travel and not something that was reconstructed at a later time. Travel involving cramped spaces on ships, trains or covered wagons easily lent themselves to something portable to record one’s thoughts and experiences.

These rounds of searches also indicate the lack of the use by archivists of *Archives* (or *Journals*) as a genre/form (655-tag) when combined with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* (and their narrower or associated/related terms). One can conclude, from this test, that the use of multiple travel terms, in MARC records, is currently not heavily significant.

However, when testing for the subject subfield *Description and travel*, that number (28,771) far out paces any of the single primary travel-related terms (for example *Travel* with 11,080 similar hits).

4.3 ArchiveGrid (Finding Aids)

The goals of ArchiveGrid are high: “ArchiveGrid includes over four million records describing archival materials, bringing together information about historical documents, personal papers, family histories, and more. With over 1,000 different archival institutions represented, ArchiveGrid helps researchers looking for primary source materials held in archives, libraries, museums and historical societies” (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015). But searching ArchiveGrid, for the purposes of this thesis, required some extra dexterity. In order to locate subject terms for archival finding aids, the researcher needed to construct a precise string commanded, namely: (type:ead OR type:html OR type:pdf) AND topic: “[*travel term*]” (Washburn, personal e-mail, 22 January 2015; Eckert, personal e-mails, 19 and 20 March 2014). For example, if one searched for *Travel* as a keyword and not as a topic ((type:ead OR type:html OR type:pdf) AND “[*travel term*]”), one retrieves 19,619 hits. But limiting the term *Travel* to a topic/subject search, that number drops to 551. This topical string needed to be repeated for the 80 travel-related terms (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

Even though ArchiveGrid is part of the OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] bibliographic empire (and includes the archival MARC records from WorldCat), it does stand alone as a database and can be—as mentioned above—searched for finding aids only.

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over one research session in 2015 on the ArchiveGrid site (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

4.3.1 The Search for Primary Travel Terms

Searching ArchiveGrid for *Travel* and its narrower and associated terms, only the following have hits over 50: *Travel* (551), *Ocean travel* (144) and *Railroad travel* (99). *Voyages and travels* (and its narrower and related terms) fares much better: *Voyages and travels* (131), *Ocean travel* (144), *Overland Journeys to the Pacific* (180), *Railroad travel* (99), *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (63), *Travel* (551) and *Travelers* (85) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

Tourism (and its related and narrower terms), however, did not fare that well overall: *Tourism* (83) and *Travel* (551) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

4.3.2 The Search for Subfield Travel Terms

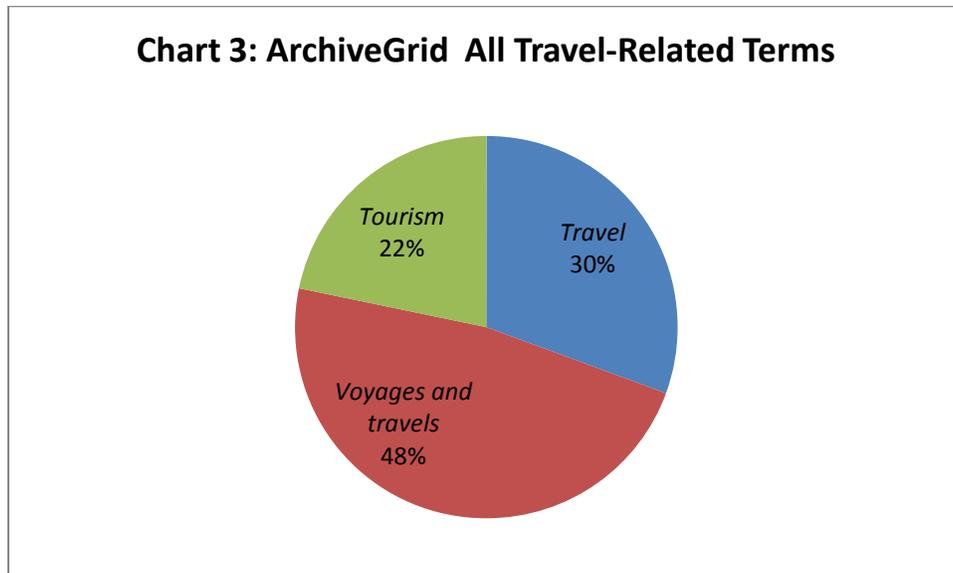
Because of the limitations of the ArchiveGrid search, a search for the term *Travel* brings up both the primary term *Travel* and the “travel” portion of the subfield *Description and travel*. Looking just at *Description and travel*, (type:ead OR type:html OR type:pdf) AND topic:“description and travel,” one gets 97 hits. Doing a similar search for the subfield *Journeys* (which is used as a subfield with a personal name) one gets 218 hits (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

4.3.3 Summary of ArchiveGrid Searches

Compared to the WorldCat search on *Description and travel* [Section 4.2.7], with 28,771 hits, ArchiveGrid’s 97 hits seem almost not worth mentioning. But what this is really telling us is that manuscript processors are not using subfields, when creating finding aids, in the same way that manuscript librarians have done when creating MARC records in WorldCat. When sometimes, at repositories, a prevalent [see Sections 4.4.7 and 4.7.6] use of the word “travel” is found as part of *Description and travel*, this could be problematic in the future for access.

As with other tests of the three primary categories of travel-related terms, *Tourism* (and its brethren) borders on the non-existent (with only 83 hits). The terms representing standard modes of travel, overland and over-water, still resulted in the highest hits: *Ocean travel* (144), *Railroad travel* (99), *Voyages and travels* (131), *Overland Journeys to the Pacific* (180) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (63) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

Below is a chart representing *Travel* (and narrower and associated terms), *Voyages and travels* (and narrower and related terms) and *Tourism* (and narrower and related terms) as a percentage of ArchiveGrid searches.



4.4 Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries [PACSCL] (Finding Aids)

Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries [PACSCL] is a consortium of 36 member libraries and archives in the Philadelphia metropolitan area (in the American states of Pennsylvania and Delaware). It came together in 1985 as a cooperative of 16 libraries, fostering joint exhibits and cooperating on projects such as cataloguing. Between 2009 and 2014, PACSCL received two grants through the Council for Library and Information Resources [CLIR]’s Cataloging Hidden Special Collections and Archives Program. These monies were for cooperative archival processing initiatives, locally known as the PACSCL Hidden Collections Processing Project. One product of the first grant was the PACSCL Finding Aids Site, an online database where finding aids from the project are published and where PASCL members are welcome to contribute additional finding aids for their collections. (The Historical Society of Pennsylvania, while a PASC SL member, does not contribute its other finding aids to the site due to formatting issues.) The site is hosted and administered by the University of Pennsylvania -- a private university, founded by Benjamin Franklin, also located in Philadelphia (PACSCL 2014; Caust-Ellenbogen, personal e-mail, 22 January 2015).

Its mission is to provide access to finding aids for archival collections held by its 36 members, representing “...primary resources on national, regional, and local history; the natural and social sciences; world history; literature; religion; art and architecture; business and industry; and the performing arts” (PACSCL finding aids 2015a). It also hosts finding aids for 110 smaller institutions in the region prepared through the Historical Society of Pennsylvania's Hidden Collections Initiative for Pennsylvania Small Archival Repositories. That project is a long name for a privately funded endeavour to identify archival holdings in the 5-county Philadelphia metro area in repositories that are publicly accessible but do not have a full-time archivist employed.

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over two research sessions in 2015 on the PACSCL site (PACSCL finding aids 2015a-b).

4.4.1 PACSCL Online Finding Aids Database

The database is a bit rough around the edges and in need of a good clean-up. The database is not even complete. For instance, the Historical Society of Pennsylvania has contributed only six finding aids to the database, but clearly has more than that available on its own website (PACSCL finding aids 2015a and Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014b). But it is the access to these 110 smaller institutions which is its greatest asset. For example, here one can find the 46-linear foot William Edgar Geil papers of the Doylestown Historical Society (a small organization located in the Bucks County, just north of Philadelphia). According to the online record: “Often referred to as ‘America's Forgotten Explorer,’ William Edgar Geil (1865-1925) was an evangelical missionary and international explorer from Doylestown, Bucks County, Pennsylvania who was most likely the first individual to travel the entire Great Wall of China (in

1908)” (PACSCL finding aids 2015a). Another hidden travel collection is the travel scrapbook of Philadelphians Cecilia and Margaret Sewell. Their scrapbook documents travels from 1934-1938 to England, Scotland, France, Germany, Switzerland and Hungary (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

The PACSCL database is searchable by free-text and can be narrowed by the following standard categories: repository, subject/topic, names, form/genre, date, creator, subject/person, subject/corporate name, subject/place and institution (which is actually the same as the first narrowing field “repository”). At the time of the test the researcher found 2767 finding aids available. In looking at the subject/topic terms, the following had matches for *Travel* and its narrower and associated terms: *Travel* (26), *International travel* (2), *Travel writing* [under the term *Travel writers*] (1) and *Travelers’ writings* (1) (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

For *Voyages and travels* and its related and narrower terms there was *Voyages and travels* (2), *Travelers* (1), *Aeronautics* (5), *Scientific expeditions* (4), *Shipwrecks* (1) and *Space flights* (1). Surprisingly *Tourism* and one of its narrower terms each made a showing: *Tourism* (2) and *Heritage tourism* (2) (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

It was not possible, given the ungainliness of the database, to easily run these terms against form/genre terms. There were many form/genre terms; the ones that somewhat fitted into the parallels of *Archives*, *Diaries* or *Journals* [see Sections 4.1.4 and 4.1.5] were *Diaries* (71), *Field notes* (31), *Journals (accounts)* (2), *Memoirs* (7), *Memorabilia* (25), *Notebooks* (23), *Personal papers* (55), *Research notes* (24) and *Scrapbooks* (90). If one, then, takes the initial result of *Travel* (with its 26 hits) and compares it against these classified form/genre terms, one gets: *Diaries* (8), *Notebooks* (3) and *Scrapbooks* (1) (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

When the researcher repeated this exercise with the other matched subject terms he found: *International travel* [no form/genre matches], *Travel writing* [no matches], *Travelers’ writings* [no matches], *Voyages and travels* [no matches], *Aeronautics* [no matches], *Scientific expeditions* [*Diaries* (1), *Field notes* (1) and *Research notes* (1)], *Shipwrecks* [no matches], *Space flights* [no matches], *Tourism* [no matches] and *Heritage tourism* [no matches] (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

There was not, therefore, a high correlation between established travel subject terms and form/genre terms representing archives, diaries or journals.

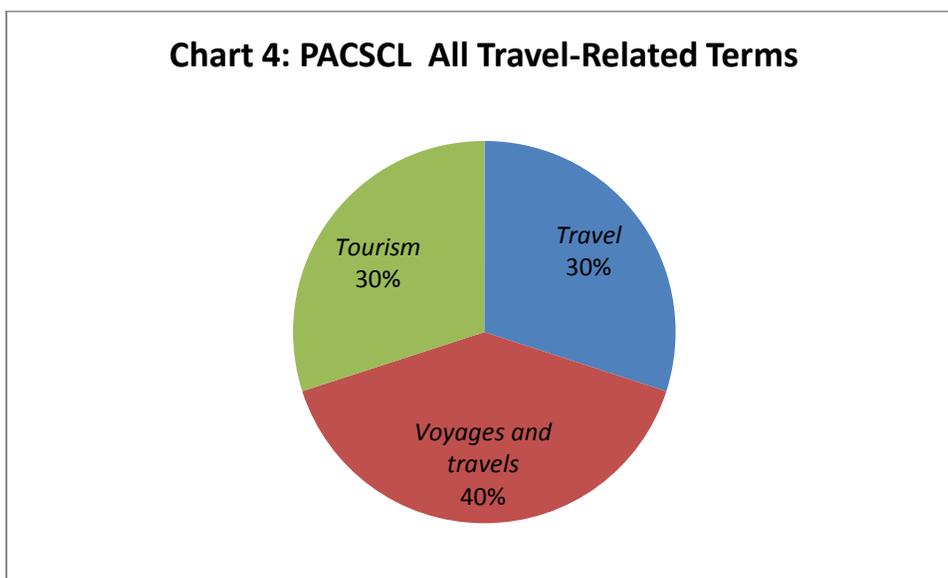
As for the subfield *Description and travel*, there is some quirkiness in the database. When searching *Description and travel* as an exact phrase, there is one hit (the Sydney Hunt Collection at Haverford College). However, when doing a subject search, there are two collections listed under *Description and travel* (which is not a primary terms according to LCSH), neither of which is the Sydney Hunt Collection (PACSCL finding aids 2015b).

4.4.2 Summary of PACSCL Finding Aids Searches

The lack of *Description and travel* hits in the PACSCL database mirrors the arid results from ArchiveGrid [see Section 4.3.2]. Like ArchiveGrid, what this may be telling archivists is that processors are not using subfields, when creating finding aids, in the same way librarians have done when creating MARC records in WorldCat. When sometimes, at repositories, a prevalent [see Sections 4.5.7 and 4.7.6] use of the word “travel” is found as part of *Description and travel*, this could be problematic in the future for access to travel-related collections.

But the main issue with PACSCL is perhaps its own rough edges (archivally speaking). Granted, PACSCL is basically a volunteer organization with only a part-time director. Maintaining a robust finding aids database may be an onerous task (and this is partly why the University of Pennsylvania has helped take over this endeavour), but given the aspirations, and its outreach to non-PACSCL repositories, a better effort is warranted.

Below is a chart representing *Travel* (and narrower and associated terms), *Voyages and travels* (and narrower and related terms) and *Tourism* (and narrower and related terms) as a percentage of PACSCL searches.



4.5 The American Philosophical Society [APS]

The very name of the American Philosophical Society [APS] is a bit strange to most Americans. It congers people sitting around waxing philosophically. The “philosophy” in the APS’ name refers rightly to “natural philosophy and scientific and practical knowledge.” Founded in 1743, by 1797 a committee was set up, headed by none other than (future U.S. president) Thomas Jefferson to collect information on the “antiquities of North America.” Under this edict, the first actively solicited manuscripts received by the APS were travel archives — two meteorological journals of General Wilkinson “... at Detroit [in the current U.S. state of Michigan] and on a

voyage to Michilemacanac on the Lakes...” (Catlett 1987:xii). Yet “antiquities of North America” is a bit broad, and in 1824 the Historical Society of Pennsylvania came on the scene to collect local and regional history. Still, “This was no hostile rival of the APS...” (Catlett 1987:xiii) [see Section 4.8]. The APS’ collections lean heavily to those of scientists and explorers.

According to APS staff (Greifenstein, personal interview, 22 December 2014; Goodman, personal interview, 22 December 2014; Lutz, personal interview, 22 December 2014), there are six primary access points to the collections of the American Philosophical Society: the pre-1969 manuscript card catalogue [Section 4.5.1], the post-1969 manuscript card catalogue [Section 4.5.2], a reference book titled *Subject Collections* [Section 4.5.3], the *New Guide to the Collections in the Library of the APS* [Section 4.5.4], *American Scientific Exploration 1803-1860* [Section 4.5.5] and their online catalogue [Section 4.5.6]. There is, actually, another access tool, *Accounts of European Science, Technology, and Medicine Written by American Travelers Abroad: 1735-1860, in the Collections of the American Philosophical Society* (Stapleton 1985), but since there is no index in the volume, it was not included in this study.

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over two site visits in 2014 and 2015 at the American Philosophical Society (22 and 24 December 2014). Additionally, the researcher conducted two database session visits for the APS (American Philosophical Society 2014b and 2015).

As for the construction of finding aids, the American Philosophical Society has developed its own manual, after it had created a joint one with the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012). The finding aid components consist of: abstract, biographical note, scope and content note, provenance, processing information, genre, geographic names, personal names, subjects. For subjects, they offer this caveat “You should not and cannot note all terms, names, and headings in a collection” (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012:25). But when you do, terms should be constructed according to the rules of DACS [*Describing Archives: A Content Standard*] (Society of American Archivists 2013), using Library of Congress Subject Headings.

And, interestingly, when addressing geographic names, one of their examples covers travel: “Primary geographic areas covered by the collection should be included here. Examples include ... Arctic regions – Discovery and exploration – American.” As for genre, their manual states that types of material included in the collection should be listed (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012:24).

4.5.1 *Catalog of Mss in the APS Library*

In 1970 one of the two card catalogues at the American Philosophical Society (the pre-1969 one) came out as a published ten-volume set under the title *Catalog of the Manuscripts in the American Philosophical Society Library, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania* (American Philosophical

Society 1970), published by Greenwood. This set eliminated the need for researchers to use the actual cards (since they were reproduced, reduced and inserted into the book-set). They could now use the (relatively) more convenient hard-cover set. That is exactly what this researcher did.

Even though the physical cards of this pre-1969 manuscript card catalogue and its successor post-1969 manuscript card catalogue [see Section 4.5.2] were digitized in 2009-2011, through a (U.S.) National Endowment for the Humanities-funded project, not all of the subject cards were converted into EAD records — as had the personal name cards. Therefore, it was necessary to check these cards (both pre- and post-1969) for the LCSH travel terms.

This first catalogue had virtually no hits in any of the subject terms. For instance, for the primary term *Travel* there was one card (plus another one with the local subject term *Travels in Spanish America*). There were zero narrower or associated terms for *Travel* (American Philosophical Society 1970).

Voyages and travels yielded a slightly better result overall. While there were no related hits for *Voyages and travels*, *Voyages and travels* as a primary term has two cards. As for narrower terms, *Scientific expeditions*, not surprisingly (given the APS' scientific and exploration focus) had three hits. *Tourism*, and its related and narrower terms, had no hits (American Philosophical Society 1970).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the manuscript catalogue. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.5.2 The APS 1969-1984 Manuscript Card Catalogue

Even though the physical cards of this post-1969 manuscript card catalogue and its predecessor pre-1969 manuscript card catalogue [see Section 4.5.1] were digitized in 2009-2011, through a (U.S.) National Endowment for the Humanities-funded project, not all of the subject cards were converted into EAD records — as had the personal name cards. Therefore, it was necessary to check these cards (both pre- and post-1969) for the LCSH travel terms (American Philosophical Society 2014a).

Like the pre-1969 manuscript card catalogue, APS' post-1969 manuscript card catalogue was sparse at best, travel-wise. There were two cards under *Travel* (as well as two cards under the local heading *Travel and exploration* and seven cards under the non-standard primary heading of *Travel and description*). While there were no cards under *Railroad travel* there was one card for the local heading *Railroad journal*. There were no other cards for narrower or related *Travel* terms (American Philosophical Society 2014a).

Voyages and travels, and its related terms, had no cards. However, one of its narrower terms did have some hits: *Pilgrims and pilgrimages* (4). There were no cards for *Tourism* or its narrower and related terms (American Philosophical Society 2014a).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the manuscript card catalogue. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.5.3 Subject Collections

Subject Collections does not list at a collection level (and is not APS specific), but rather indicates which special libraries in the United States and Canada (based on surveys) hold collections based on LCSH subject terms -- with adaptations (Ash 1993). Therefore, the results are really binary (either there is a listing for the APS or there is not). There were no hits for *Travel* and its related and narrower terms (Ash 1993). Since this access point deviated from the other, more traditional ones, its results were not carried forward into the statistics tabulations.

Likewise, *Voyages and travels* and its related terms had no hits. But one term, *Discovery and exploration* (a variant of the LCSH *Discoveries in geography*) did list the APS. There were no matches for *Tourism* or its narrower and related terms (Ash 1993).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the guide. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.5.4 New Guide to the Collections of the Library of the APS

The *New Guide to the Collections of the Library of the American Philosophical Society* (Catlett 1987) updates the earlier one compiled by Whitfield Bell and Murphy Smith, *Guide to the Archives and Manuscript Collections of the American Philosophical Society* (Bell & Smith 1966). Compared to the findings for the two card catalogues [Sections 4.5.1 & 4.5.2], the *New Guide's* index is brimming over with helpfulness. For example, under the term *Travel* there are two references along with 199 references the non-primary term *Travel and description*. But there are no other references for *Travel's* related or narrower terms (Catlett 1987).

While there are no references for *Voyages and travels* and its related terms, *Discovery and exploration* (a variant of the LCSH *Discoveries in geography*) has one reference. There were no other references for *Voyages and travels's* narrower terms. Additionally, there were no references for *Tourism* and its narrower and related terms (Catlett 1987).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the guide. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.5.5 American Scientific Exploration 1803-1860

American Scientific Exploration 1803-1860: Manuscripts in Four Philadelphia Libraries (Stanton 1991) references the holdings of not only the American Philosophical Society [APS],

but also the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] and the Library Company of Philadelphia [LCP]. [It may be interesting to note that both the APS and LCP were both founded by the American inventor and statesman Dr. Benjamin Franklin (in 1743 and 1731 respectively). The Academy came into existence in 1812 (and is now part of Philadelphia's Drexel University) and HSP was founded twelve years after that in 1824.]

There were no APS citations under *Travel* or its associated and narrower terms. And while *Voyages and travels* had no references (nor did its related terms), there were 38 references to *Pacific railroad surveys:1853* which corresponds roughly to the LCSH term *Overland journeys to the Pacific*. Additionally, there were no references for *Tourism* and its narrower and related terms (Stanton 1991).

One reason that there were so few travel-related terms listed is that the very name of the text, *American Scientific Exploration*, implies that there is travel (of some sort) going on. One may rightly assume that a user would understand that this catalogue represents archives dealing with travel.

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the text—although given that the volume focused on American scientific exploration, one may assume the collections were primarily, if not exclusively, in English. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.5.6 APS Online Catalogue

The online catalogue of the American Philosophical Society had, by far, the best results for subject access to travel archives. Staff export EAD archival records from Archivists' Toolkit directly into their online catalogue (Koha), they are not converted into MARC first (Ziegler, email to Lutz, 22 December 2014). Out of 1737 archival records represented in the online catalogue (under the format "manuscript collection"), there were 39 hits under the primary term *Travel*. *Travel's* narrower terms, however, did not fare as well. While there were no hits under *Independent travel* there were 28 hits under the possible similar local heading of *Travel—invitations, arrangements* and *International travel* had 31 hits. *Travel's* related term, *Travel writing*, had a respectable 69 hits (though it was under their local heading *Travel narratives and journals*) (American Philosophical Society 2014b).

Voyages and travels had 26 hits, but its related terms had none. *Voyages and travels's* narrower terms were sparse at best: *Discoveries in geography* (7), *Pilgrims and pilgrimages* (1), *Quests (expeditions)* (2) and *Scientific expeditions* (9). *Tourism*, and its related and narrower terms, had no hits (American Philosophical Society 2014b).

To be consistent with the delimiters imposed on the manuscript card and published catalogues [Sections 4.5.1 through 4.5.5] the researcher did not separate out the non-English material represented in the online catalogue. However, he enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.5.7 APS Subject Access Summary

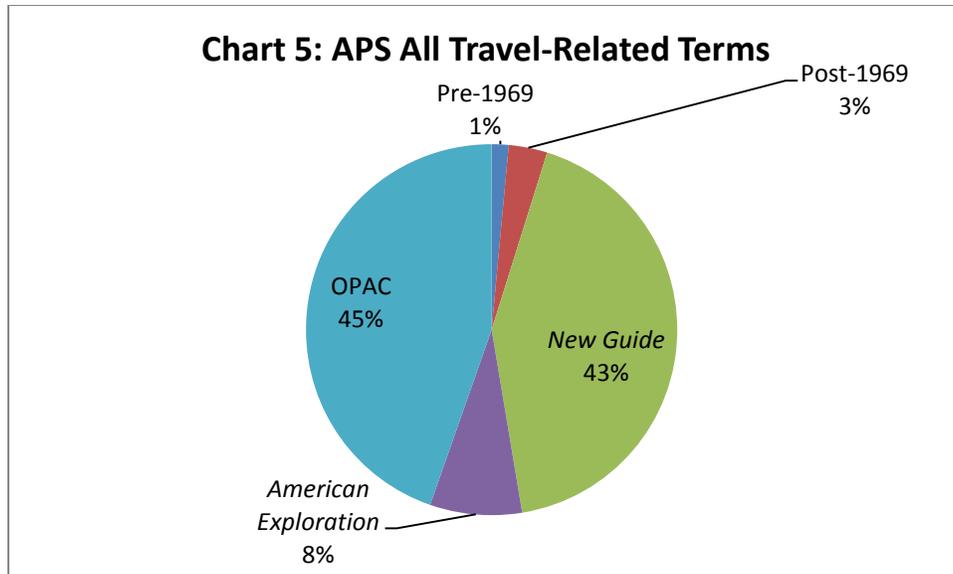
Of the six tools investigated for archival subject access at the American Philosophical Society [APS], only the online catalogue [Section 4.5.6] and the *New Guide to the Collections* [Section 4.5.4] revealed any substantial travel terms subject access. But even with these two tools, the largest hits were for non-standard equivalents. For example, the *New Guide* had 199 hits for a non-primary LCSH term *Travel and description* (which normally appears only as a subfield). Additionally, in lieu of the standard term *Travel writing*, the online catalogue had a hefty 69-hit result for the non-standard *Travel narratives and journals*.

Yet for an archive with so many papers of early exploration and scientific investigation, there are proportionally few uses of travel-related LCSH terms. Take for example a collection found in APS' online catalogue, the Alfred Irving Hallowell Papers (Mss Coll. #19). Even though Hallowell, a professor of anthropology at the University of Pennsylvania, travelled heavily in Canada studying their aboriginal peoples (and even administering them Rorschach Tests), there are no travel-related subject terms in either the MARC record or the linked finding aid (American Philosophical Society 2014b).

Another example is the two manuscript diaries of engineer James Brindley (1745-1820) (Mss Coll. #3). Brindley kept these diaries while building canals in the Mid-Atlantic region of the United States (mainly Delaware, Maryland and Pennsylvania). However, there are no subject references to *Travel* (American Philosophical Society 2014b).

A positive aspect of the APS' online catalogue is that it is a frequent user of the subfield *Description and travel* after a geographic designation, such as "Canada—Description and travel." For instance, there are 132 hits when one searches for the subfield *Description and travel* (American Philosophical Society 2015).

Below is a chart of the various APS access points (save *Subject Collections*), reflecting all of the travel-related terms. [For a more detailed breakdown, see Appendix B, Charts B1-B4.]



4.6 The University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives

The University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology [Penn Museum] was founded in 1887, sending its first scientists off on expedition to Iraq in 1888. The archives were founded in 1979 and opened in 1981 (Pezzati 2002, Ruwell 1984 and Madeira 1964). There are two main public access points to the Penn Museum archives. The first is *A Guide to the University Museum Archives of the University of Pennsylvania*, published in 1984. But the main access point, not counting the archival staff, is the Museum's 113 finding aids which are part of the University's finding aid database (Pezzati, personal interview, 16 January 2015). To use the database, one needs to go to the general University of Pennsylvania finding aids site and then limit the search by choosing the Penn Museum. There one can further sort by subjects (and other access points).

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over one site visit in 2015 at the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives (16 January 2015). Additionally, the researcher conducted one database session visit for the Penn Museum (University of Pennsylvania 2015).

The Penn Museum has developed an archival processing guide (Penn Museum 2009). The finding aid should consist of the following parts: biography, collection scope and content note, additional descriptive data, detailed box and folder list and controlled access terms. The controlled access terms include general and genre. The general are those which "describe what is in the collection including geographic places, well-known people, importation events, and general subjects. Any topic that a researcher might be interested in and that the collection would provide valuable information about should be listed" (Penn Museum 2009:17). For genre terms they use the *Getty Art & Architecture Thesaurus* (Getty Research Institute 2011).

4.6.1 A Guide to the University Museum Archives

The index to the *Guide to the University Museum Archives*, while loaded with potential, is primarily a name and location index and used none of the 80 travel-related terms (Ruwell 1984). It did, however, provide useful information about the archives.

4.6.2 University Museum Finding Aids

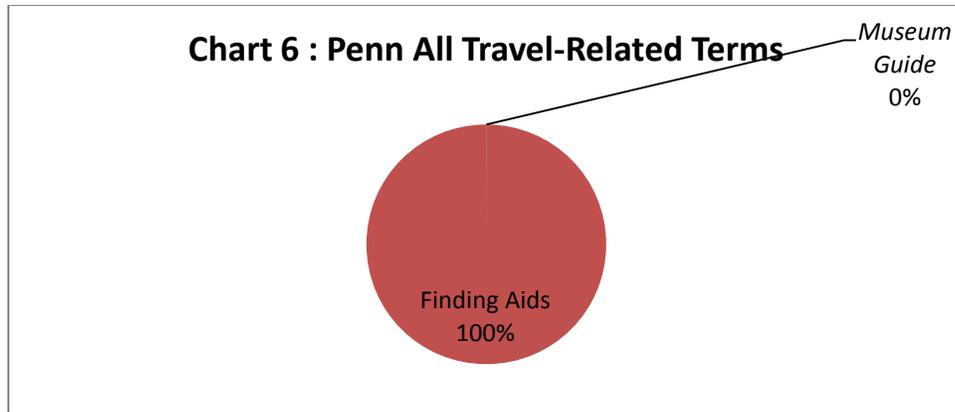
The University Museum finding aids (on the University of Pennsylvania finding aids website) did provide better subject access. The database also provided a list of available search terms. While none of the travel-related terms were used, there was one near match. There were 21 hits under *Archaeological expeditions*, which is close enough to the standard term *Scientific expeditions* for the purposes of this thesis.

In looking for a genre/form, there were five categories which roughly match the subfield genre terms of *Diaries*, *Journals* or *Archives*: these being *Correspondence*, *Diaries*, *Field notes*, *Scrapbooks* and *Travelogs*. Looking back at the 21 hits for *Archaeological expeditions*, 16 of those cross listed under *Correspondence* and 14 under *Field notes* (University of Pennsylvania 2015).

4.6.3 Penn Museum Subject Access Summary

Given the vast amount of archives the Penn Museum has, and its lack of use of any of the standardized travel-related subject terms, it is not surprising that the best way to access these collections would be to query one of the archival staff. It is not that the Penn Museum does not have any material that documents travel — the very nature of scientific expeditions implies some sort of travel—it is just that, like the Presbyterian Historical Society [see Section 4.6] they do not view their collections as being travel collections. In the case of the Museum, they are viewed as scientific. According to their curator: “... our records are described according to the primary needs and uses of the institution. In the archives we do, in fact, know that our records are more than excavation notes, but we have yet to describe them fully to the public. That will happen in the next wave of processing, as we refine our finding aids” (Pezzati, personal e-mail, 23 January 2015). Indeed, there is so many travel documentation in the collections that the curator even created a lecture about it: “No Armchair Archaeologists Allowed: Travails of Travel on Early Penn Museum Expeditions” (Pezzati 2009).

Below is a chart of the two Penn access points, reflecting all of the travel-related terms. [For a more detailed breakdown, see Appendix B, Chart B5.]



4.7 The Presbyterian Historical Society [PHS]

Philadelphia was the birthplace (1706) of American Presbyterianism and no place documents this phenomenon better than the Presbyterian Historical Society [PHS]. PHS is the official repository for the records of the Presbyterian Church (U.S.A) [PC(USA)]. The Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.) is the result of a merger of two of the larger Presbyterian denominations in the United States in 1983: the United Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A [UPCUSA] and the Presbyterian Church in the U.S. [PCUS]. The United Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A. was itself a merger, in 1958, between the United Presbyterian Church of North America and the Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A. [PCUSA]. These were basically the Northern Presbyterians (many of the splits happening before, during or after the time of the American Civil War [1861-1865]) (Heuser 1988:89).

The Presbyterian Church, U.S. [PCUS] (which joined with the United Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A. in 1983 to form the Presbyterian Church (U.S.A) [PC(USA)]) split off directly from the Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A. in 1861. During the American Civil War, since it was heavily a Southern church, it was known as the Presbyterian Church in the Confederate States of America [PCCSA] (Heuser 1988:89). As confusing as all of these mergers, breaks-away, similar denominational names, and beliefs may be, there are two truths which need to be remembered. Both the PCUS and the UPCUSA had their own missionaries and (especially useful for the purposes of this thesis) kept their own archives. The PCUS archives were in Montreat, North Carolina and remained there until well after the union with the UPCUSA -- when it merged with the PC(USA) archives in Philadelphia to become a regional office of the Presbyterian Historical Society [PHS] (Benedetto 1990). The Montreat office of the PHS was officially closed to the public, as an archive, in 2006. It is still, however, operating as a museum.

The PCUS had foreign missions in China, Brazil, Mexico, Japan, the Congo, Korea, Cuba, Italy, Colombia and Greece (Benedetto 1990:23) and domestic missions among African Americans, American Indians and Mexican Americans (Benedetto 1990:31). The United Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A. [UPCUSA] [and now just PC(USA)] also had foreign missions, primarily in West Africa (Liberia, Spanish [Equatorial] Guinea, Gabon, Cameroon), Asia (China, India,

Japan, Chosen [Korea], the Philippines, Siam [Thailand]), Latin America (Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Guatemala, Mexico, Venezuela) and the Middle East (Persia [Iran], Mesopotamia [Iraq], Syria/Lebanon). These records were always at Philadelphia in the Presbyterian Historical Society, founded in 1852 (Heuser 1988:xv).

According to PHS staff (Jacobson, personal interview, 23 December 2014; Barr, personal interview, 23 December 2014), there are five primary public access points to the manuscript collections of the Presbyterian Historical Society [PHS]: the card catalogue [Section 4.7.1], CALVIN (online catalogue) [Section 4.7.2], their online *Guides to Archival Collections* [Section 4.7.3], the *Guide to the Manuscript Collections of the Presbyterian Church, U.S.* [Section 4.7.4] and the *Guide to Foreign Missionary Manuscripts in the Presbyterian Historical Society* [Section 4.7.5].

PHS archival staff review descriptions of archives and only add a travel-related subject term, and in this case almost exclusively the geographical subfield *Description and travel*, when a particular travel narrative is significantly highlighted in the summary. For instance, even though the Thailand-based Wells papers indicate in the 520 field that there are photos and writings which document their travel to the Presbyterian mission station in the Yunnan province of China, only Thailand received a *Description and travel* subfield as a subject entry (Brock & Barr, personal interview, 20 January 2015).

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over two site visits in 2014 and 2015 at the Presbyterian Historical Society (23 December 2014 and 20 January 2015). The researcher also conducted two database session visits for the PHS (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014c and 2015a-b).

The Presbyterian Historical Society does not have a processing manual (Brock, telephone interview, 25 March 2015). But they do have archival standards and presented, as an example, the finding aid for the Wells Papers (Brock 2010). The sections for a typical PHS finding aid include: description summary, biographical note/administrative history, collection overview, organization and arrangement, related material, administrative information, preferred citation, catalog headings and collection inventory. Under catalog headings there are fields for personal name subject, corporate subject, topical subject, geographic subject, genre-form and personal added name. For the Wells papers travel information is listed under “Thailand Description and travel” (Brock 2010:19). In the collection overview section, there is the following note: “The photograph albums series primarily documents the Wellses’ April 1930 journey to Baptist missions ... in eastern Burma; their April 1931 journey to the Presbyterian mission station...in the Yunnan Province ... ; their 1931 travels through the Middle East, Europe, and Britain en route to New York” (Brock 2010:13). There is lots of travel going on here, but not a lot of subject access to it in the finding aid.

4.7.1 PHS Card Catalogue

The card catalogue of the Presbyterian Historical Society is a combination of manuscript and published materials references. It was surprising, therefore, that of the 80 possible travel-related terms available, only three had any hits: *Voyages and travels* (4) and its narrower terms of *Overland journeys to the Pacific* (1) and *Pilgrims and pilgrimages* [simply under *Pilgrims*] (3) (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b).

There were no hits under *Travel* and its related and narrower terms. Likewise *Tourism* and its related and narrower terms rendered no cards (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the card catalogue. However, since these were American missionaries, it is most likely that these archives would be in English. The researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.7.2 PHS Online Catalogue (CALVIN)

The online catalogue, named CALVIN after John Calvin, the French theologian and pastor of the Protestant Reformation, proved somewhat better than the card catalogue. *Travel* revealed 11 hits, but none of its narrower or associated terms had any. This was surprising in that there was a pool of 500 manuscript or archival collections listed in CALVIN (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014c). [Staff at PHS always represents CALVIN in all capital letters, without italics.]

Voyages and travels (and its narrower and related terms) and *Tourism* (with its narrower and related terms) had no hits (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014c).

To be consistent with the delimiters imposed on the card and published catalogues [Sections 4.7.1, 4.7.4 and 4.7.5] the researcher did not separate out the non-English material represented in the online catalogue. However, since these were American missionaries, it is most likely that these archives would be in English. He enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.7.3 PHS Guides to Archival Collections

With a possible pool of 300 archival collections, the online *Guides to Archival Collections*, which represents PHS' finding aids, yielded only slightly better results than CALVIN: *Travel* (35 hits), *Travel's* narrower term *Air travel* (1) and *Voyages and travels'* related term *Travelers* (1) (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014d).

To be consistent with the delimiters imposed on the card and published catalogues [Sections 4.7.1, 4.7.4 and 4.7.5] the researcher did not separate out the non-English material represented in the online catalogue. However, since these were American missionaries, it is most likely that these archives would be in English. He enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.7.4 *Guide to the Manuscript Collections of the Presbyterian Church, U.S.*

The *Guide to the Manuscript Collections of the PCUS* (the old Southern church) only indexed under one term, *Voyages and travels*, with 19 collections (Benedetto 1990).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the guide — although given that the volume focused on American (whether Confederate or Union) missionaries, one may assume the collections were primarily, if not exclusively, in English. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.7.5 *Guide to Foreign Missionary Manuscripts in the PHS*

The *Guide to Foreign Missionary Manuscripts in the Presbyterian Historical Society* (the old Northern church) had none of the 80 possible LCSH travel terms indexed (Heuser 1988).

One reason that there were so few travel related-terms listed is that the very name of the text, *Guide to Foreign Missionary Manuscripts*, implies that there is travel (of some sort) going on. One may rightly assume that a user would understand that this catalogue represents archives dealing with travel.

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the guide — although given that the volume focused on American missionaries, one may assume the collections were primarily, if not exclusively, in English. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.7.6 PHS Subject Access Summary

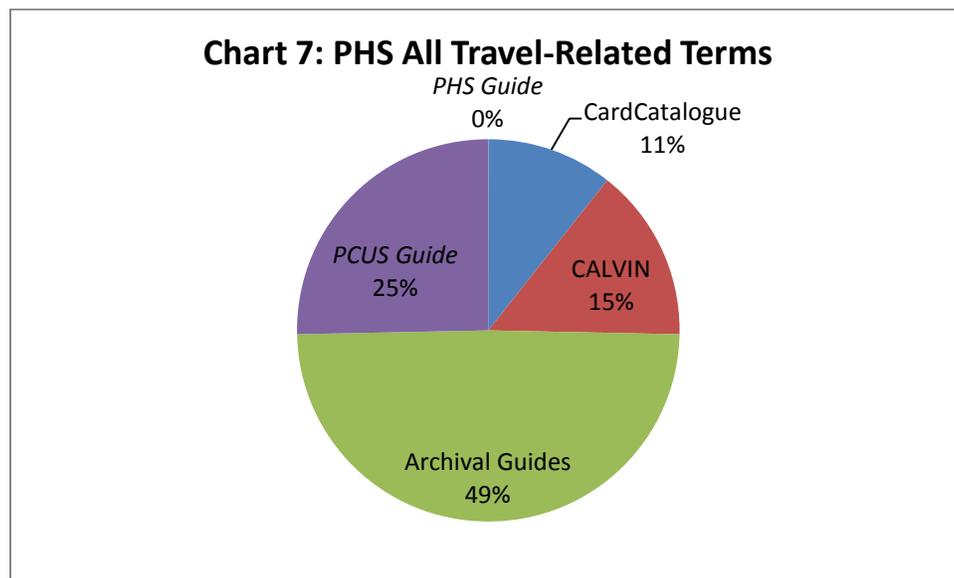
With hundreds of collections by eager and earnest Presbyterians heading into the great (or semi-) unknown to spread the gospel, there is a paucity of records categorised with travel-related subject access. These were missionaries, after all, not local curates. These people packed up, sailed, and trekked into obscure places and (important for this thesis) they wrote about it. But their archivists, perhaps rightly, are quick to counter that defining these records as travel is counter to the mission of the PHS. The missionaries' main focuses were medical, educational and evangelical, not travel (even though they had to travel to these far-flung locales), therefore the primary subject access would not reflect travel. Rather, it is through staff mediation that someone searching for travel would be made aware that basically all of the foreign missionary archives are travel-related, whether or not they have travel-related subject access (Brock & Barr, personal interview, 20 January 2015).

For instance, in the online *Guides to Archival Collections*, which represents PHS' finding aids, one finds the Adolphus Clemens Good Papers (PHS' Record Group 169). They document Good's journeys in the Congo and Gabon from 1882-1896. Yet none of the catalogue headings even mention *Travel* (or its 79 other possible variations). The same can be said for the Frank Owen Emerson Papers (PHS' Record Group 200). Emerson missioned in the Cameroon and his

papers cover 1906-1952, yet there are no travel-related subject headings (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014c). However, when one keyword searches the *Guide*, using “*Description and travel*,” there are seven matches (Presbyterian Historical Society 2015b).

The same sort of situation exists in their CALVIN online catalogue. The Gwen Crawley papers (Record no. 74465) documents her work in Thailand, India, Nepal, Egypt, Korea, Guatemala, Philippines, Ghana, Haiti, Australia and Zaire. Yet there are no travel-related subject access terms -- even though there is a general note (a 500-tag) describing some of these items as “travel logs” (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b). However, when one looks at the subfield *Description and travel*, in CALVIN, there are eleven hits (Presbyterian Historical Society 2015a).

Below is a chart of the various PHS access points, reflecting all of the travel-related terms. [For a more detailed breakdown, see Appendix B, Charts B6-B9.]



4.8 The Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP]

The Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] was founded in 1824 and is one of the oldest independent historical societies in the United States; it is home to some 600,000 printed items and more than 21 million manuscript and graphic items. Its unparalleled collections encompass more than 350 years of America’s history — from its 17th-century origins to the contributions of its most recent immigrants (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014a). It includes manuscripts accumulated not only from its own collecting endeavours, but also that of the Genealogical Society of Pennsylvania, which has historical ties to HSP, and the Balch Institute for Ethnic Studies, which merged with HSP in 2002 (Arnold 2013 and Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2010b). Historians Hampton L. Carson (Carson 1940) and Sally Foreman Griffith (Griffith 2001) wrote the seminal histories of the Historical Society. Carson’s (1940) covers HSP’s pre-

1824 history to 1929. Griffith (2001) picks up where Carson (1940) left off and takes the reader up to the 21st century.

HSP was founded on 2 December 1824 by seven men, all from historic Philadelphia families: Roberts Vaux, Stephen Duncan, Thomas I. Wharton, William Rawle, Jr., Dr. Benjamin H. Coates, Dr. Caspar Wistar II and George Washington Smith. HSP is the 7th oldest of such historical societies. Some of the founders were, back then, considered quite young to be establishing an historical society: Roberts Vaux (38), Stephen Duncan (37), Thomas I. Wharton (33), William Rawle Jr. (32), Dr. Benjamin H. Coates (25), Dr. Caspar Wistar II (24) and George Washington Smith (24). It was 50 years after the establishment of the First Continental Congress in Philadelphia (the first predecessor of the United States Congress). It was also the year the Marquis de Lafayette (a French hero of the American Revolution) toured the United States, including a week in Philadelphia, at the invitation of both the U.S. Congress and President James Monroe. There was, in modern terms, an historical buzz in the air — and Philadelphia (and these seven men in particular) wanted part of it (Carson 1940).

From its collecting inception in 1824 until 1992 the Society was a museum, library and archives, documenting mostly, but not exclusively, the families who created and sustained not only Philadelphia and the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, but also the United States as a whole. Later, documenting other families, some not really known for anything except coming to this nation for a better life, became a collecting priority. But in 1992 the Society made the controversial decision to “moth-ball” the museum in order to concentrate on being a library and archives. They eventually deaccessioned the art and artifact collection, transferring most of it to what is now known as the Philadelphia History Museum. HSP unified the library and archives departments in 1997, creating a single point of physical access via its Reading Room (Griffith 2001).

Archivists at HSP add subject headings when creating a finding aid using Archivists’ Toolkit. This record is then exported in MARC format into the online catalogue *Discover*. Therefore, whatever subject access in the finding aid also becomes a subject access in the MARC record. Staff use Library of Congress Subject Headings, although that has not always been the case. In thinking about applying subject headings, or determining which terms to incorporate, they often consider if there is enough of that topic in the collection to give the researcher something useful to access (Lyons & Hutto, personal interview, 29 January 2015).

HSP has three main intellectual access points to their manuscript collections: card catalogue [Section 4.8.1], the OPAC [Section 4.8.2] and published guide [Section 4.8.3] (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2011 and 2014d). The researcher examined the HSP manuscript card catalogue, its online catalogue *Discover* and its *Guide to Manuscripts* searching for the established LCSH terms.

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH terms over two site visits in 2014 and 2015 at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (1 November 2014 and 29 January 2015). The researcher also conducted two database session visits for the HSP (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014b and 2015).

The Historical Society of Pennsylvania uses an archival processing manual, namely the joint one developed by HSP and APS in 2003 (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003), *CatMan*. The elements of the finding aid are: front matter (institutional identification, collection title, collection number, date range, extent, date of finding aid, copyright statement and institutional contact), abstract, language of material, background note, scope and content, arrangement, series description, digital archival objects, related materials, bibliography, separation report, access restrictions, user restrictions, acquisition information, custodial history, accruals, other finding aids, alternative format available, preferred citation, appraisal, processing information, other descriptive data, control access terms and detailed container listing (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:58-67). The control access terms include: subject terms, personal and corporate names and genre terms (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:66-67).

4.8.1 HSP Manuscript Card Catalogue (PC1)

The manuscript card catalogue of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (also known as PC1—Public Catalogue 1) is a static, “dictionary” catalogue. It is static in that it has not been added to in years. It is dictionary in that subject, author and title cards are interfiled. This catalogue, unlike HSP’s online catalogue (*Discover*), indexes at the item nearly one million manuscript resources that were processed from the late 1800s to the 1970s, when HSP switched from item-level processing to collection-level. Collection-level cards were still added into the early 2000s. There are over 600,000 cards in PC1, of which two-thirds are hand-written (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014c). The researcher searched for the established LCSH terms. This was at times difficult due to the fact that the catalogue was established prior to formalised subject terms. Under the term *Travel*, for instance, there was a see-also reference card for *Roads and Travel notes*. There were 85 cards under *Roads* and 19 under *Travel notes* plus there was one card for *Traveling from Philadelphia* and one for *Travel in Ohio*. While there was not a card for *Air travel*, there was one card for *Air voyage, first*. Likewise, no cards under *Interstellar travel* but one card for *Interplanetary voyages* (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014c).

Even though *Ocean travel* had two cards, there was an additional card for *Adventures at sea*. While *Travel writing* resulted in no cards, there was one card under *Travel accounts*. Similarly, while no cards were under Travelers’ writings, there was one under *Travelers’ accounts*. *Voyages and travels* (with eight cards) had a lot of variants with cards of their own: *Travel by steam* (1), *Voyage* (7), *Voyage from Philadelphia* (1), *Voyage to South Sea* (1), *Adventures at sea* (1), *Sea journal* (2) and *Sea voyages* (2). *Sea journal* also suggested looking under *Log books*.

These parallel terms have been incorporated into the statistics with brackets (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014c). [See Tables 8, 9 and 10.]

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the manuscript card catalogue. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.8.2 HSP Online Catalogue (*Discover*)

HSP's online catalogue (called *Discover*) is based on open-source software and is populated by MARC records from HSP's cataloguing module Voyager (a commercial product by ExLibris) for books, pamphlets and serials and MARC records derived from Archivists' Toolkit for manuscripts and graphics. *Discover*, therefore, contains information about HSP's printed materials (books, pamphlets and serials) and manuscript collections, prints, watercolors, realia, maps and microforms. *Discover* contains over 285,000 MARC records, of which over 8000 are categorized as manuscript records (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014b). The researcher searched for each term, enclosed within quotation marks, using the drop-down search limiter of "subject" and then limited the search further to hits listed as "manuscript" in the format breakdown on the search results screen (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014b). [See Tables 8, 9 and 10.]

To be consistent with the delimiters imposed on the manuscript card catalogue (PC1) the researcher did not separate out the non-English material represented in the online catalogue. However, he enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.8.3 HSP *Guide to Manuscripts*

Begun in 1977, HSP finally published its third *Guide to the Manuscript Collections* in 1991. It provides an index to 2170 manuscript collections at the Society. It is, of course, grossly out-of-date. Even in 1991 the Society referred to it as a "...relic of another era," but added that the "...Society is in the business of preserving the tangible evidence of history..." (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b:[i]). The index in the back of the book contains both topical and name subject access terms, conforming to Library of Congress Subject Headings and Anglo-American Cataloging Rules [AACR2] personal and corporate name headings. The index refers only back to the collection numbers, not how many times a term appears on pages. As one can clearly discern, there are very few references to LCSH travel terms in the *Guide*, save *Voyages and travels*, which at 96 hits (comparatively) appears robust (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b). [See Tables 8, 9 and 10.]

The results from the following table indicate HSP's online catalogue, *Discover*, as the one with the most use, certainly, of the term *Travel* (plus its narrower term *Ocean travel* and associated terms *Travel writing* and *Travelers' writings*) (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b).

It was not feasible to separate out the non-English material represented in the manuscript guide. However, the researcher enforced all of the other delimiters.

4.8.4 HSP Subject Access Summary

Tables 8, 9 and 10 compare and contrast the results of the frequency of travel terminology subject access to archival collections at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

Table 8: Hits on LCSH *Travel, Travel Writing, Travelers' Writings* and *Travel Journalism Terms* at HSP (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014c, 2014b and 1991b)

Term	PC1	Discover	Guide to Mss
<i>Travel</i>	16 [+106]	214	2
<i>Narrower terms</i>			
<i>Adventure travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Air travel</i>	[1]	0	0
<i>Astrology and travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Automobile travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Bicycle touring</i>	0	0	0
<i>Bus travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Business travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Caravans</i>	0	0	0
<i>Games for travelers</i>	0	0	0
<i>Homecoming</i>	0	0	0
<i>Independent travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>International travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>International travel regulations</i>	0	0	0
<i>Interstellar travel</i>	[1]	0	0
<i>Luggage—packing</i>	0	0	0
<i>Motorcycle touring</i>	0	0	0
<i>Ocean travel</i>	2 [+1]	18	4
<i>Pets and travel</i>	0	0	0
<i>Railroad travel</i>	1	1	0
<i>Signs and symbols for travelers</i>	0	0	0
<i>Teenage travel programs</i>	0	0	0
<i>Travel restrictions</i>	0	0	0
<i>Travelers' aid societies</i>	0	0	0
<i>Workers' travel programs</i>	0	0	0
<i>Youth travel programs</i>	0	0	0
<i>Associated terms</i>			
<i>Travel writing</i>	[1]	10	0
<i>Travelers' writings</i>	[1]	10	0
<i>Travel journalism</i>	0	0	0
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	3 [+3]	19	4

The results from the following table indicate mixed results. HSP's online catalogue, *Discover*, show the most use of the narrower term *Ocean travel* (plus *Voyages and travels*' related terms *Travel* and *Travelers*), but not for the primary term itself. The strongest use of that term is found in HSP's *Guide to Manuscripts*.

Table 9: Hits on LCSH *Voyages and Travels* Terms at HSP (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014c, 2014b and 1991b)

Term	PC1	<i>Discover</i>	<i>Guide to Mss</i>
<i>Voyages and travels</i>	8 [+15]	12	96
<i>Narrower terms</i>			
<i>Aeronautics—flights</i>	0	0	0
<i>Air travel</i>	[1]	0	0
<i>Buccaneers</i>	0	0	0
<i>Discoveries in geography</i>	0	0	0
<i>Grand tours (education)</i>	0	0	0
<i>Literary journeys</i>	0	0	0
<i>Mountaineering expeditions</i>	0	0	0
<i>Ocean travel</i>	2 [+1]	18	4
<i>Overland journeys to the Pacific</i>	1	0	1
<i>Papal visits</i>	0	0	0
<i>Pilgrims and pilgrimages</i>	0	0	0
<i>Quests (expeditions)</i>	0	3	0
<i>Railroad travel</i>	1	1	0
<i>Scientific expeditions</i>	0	0	0
<i>Seafaring life</i>	0	0	0
<i>Shipwrecks</i>	3	4	3
<i>Space flights</i>	0	0	0
<i>Travel delays</i>	0	0	0
<i>Voyages around the world</i>	0	1	0
<i>Voyages to the Pacific coast</i>	0	0	0
<i>Related terms</i>			
<i>Adventure and adventures</i>	2	0	0
<i>Travel</i>	16 [+106]	214	2
<i>Travelers</i>	0	214	0
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	9	27	8

The results from the following table indicate that HSP's online catalogue, *Discover*, is only slightly better using the term *Tourism*. All of the narrower terms showed no results in the card catalogue (PC1), online catalogue (*Discover*), or catalogue (*Guide to Manuscripts*).

Table 10: Hits on LCSH *Tourism* Terms at HSP (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014c, 2014b and 1991b)

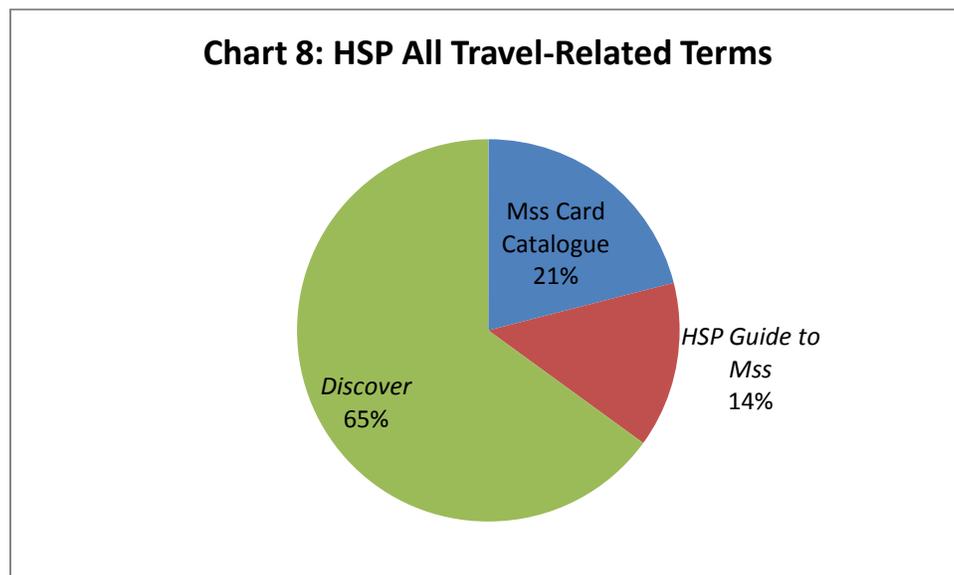
Term	PC1	<i>Discover</i>	<i>Guide to Mss</i>
<i>Tourism</i>	0	5	0
Narrower terms			
<i>Architecture and tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Cruise lines</i>	0	0	0
<i>Culture and tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Customs administration and tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Dark tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Ecotourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Forest canopy tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Garden tours</i>	0	0	0
<i>Geotourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Heritage tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Holistic tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Holocaust memorial tours</i>	0	0	0
<i>Indian tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Lake tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Medical tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Music and tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Outfitting industry</i>	0	0	0
<i>Package tours</i>	0	0	0
<i>River tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Royal tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Rural tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Sex tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Sightseeing business</i>	0	0	0
<i>Space tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Sports and tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Sustainable tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Volunteer tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Wine tourism</i>	0	0	0
<i>Women in tourism</i>	0	0	0
Related terms			
<i>National tourism organizations</i>	0	0	0
<i>Travel</i>	16 [+106]	214	2
Subtotal for Narrower Terms	0	0	0

The conclusion for the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, in using LCSH, is not all that surprising. Only the two access tools, *Discover* (online catalogue) and the *Guide to Manuscripts* (catalogue) deliberately conformed to LCSH. PC1 (card catalogue) was heavily populated with

subject cards derived prior to standardized Library of Congress subject headings. The card catalogue (PC1) did best with the broadest travel term, *Travel*, and then second best with *Voyages and travels*. But even these two accomplishments need qualifiers. Under the term *Travel*, for instance, there was a see-also reference card for *Roads and Travel notes* which the researcher counted as well. *Voyages and travels* had a lot of local variants with locally derived cards of their own: *Travel by steam*, *Voyage*, *Voyage from Philadelphia*, *Voyage to South Sea*, *Adventures at sea*, *Sea journal* and *Sea voyages*.

However, HSP's *Discover* catalogue does fare better with the subfield *Description and travel*. In doing a search on that exact subject phrase, 159 manuscript records were revealed (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2015).

Below is a chart of the various HSP access points, reflecting all of the travel-related terms. [For a more detailed breakdown, see Appendix B, Charts B10-B13.]



4.9 Institutional Archivists

The researcher devised an interview schedule [see Appendix A] for archival staff at the four designated repositories: the American Philosophical Society, the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. These four repositories hold material representing four distinct types of travel: the American Philosophical Society (geographic exploration), the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology (scientific expedition), Presbyterian Historical Society (foreign missionary) and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (leisure and emigration). There are, of course, overlaps. The American Philosophical Society also contains scientific expedition collections. The Historical Society of Pennsylvania also contains exploration collections. But, generally, these categories hold.

4.9.1 The Interview Schedule

The Interview Schedule [see Appendix A] resulted from a combination of the researcher's literature review, personal research and site visits and background discussions with archival staff at the four targeted institutions (the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania). The researcher chose two representatives each from the four repositories to take the survey. The Interview Schedule refers to the practices at each repository, not for the archival field in general.

In performing the background discussions (which often included repository staff not given the Schedule [see Section 5.2.4]), it was clear that archival staff held a different view of "travel archives" than the researcher. Therefore Question #1 was "What do you consider are travel-related collections?" It was also evident that since, from the initial background discussions, most did not consider their holdings as necessarily travel, that they would not think of anyone using them to research travel. Hence the second question: "Have you had researchers using your facility looking specifically for travel-related material?"

Both Questions #1 and #2 potentially caused archivists to rethink how people used their collections and were very specific to the topic of this thesis. The third question (What would be the best way for a travel researcher to access your pertinent collections?) really could be answered the same way for any topic in the repository. In thinking about access points during the site visits, the researcher viewed them as tangible: a) card catalogues, b) online catalogues/databases and c) printed guides, something to run your fingertips through or on. When he reached his fourth site (the Penn Museum) there was a dearth of usable, tangible access points. When he asked the head archivist how people found anything in the repository, the response was basically: "They just ask me" (Pezzati, personal interview, 16 January 2015). That response did motivate the researcher to view archivists as access points, hence the fourth choice for the question: d) staff.

Greene and Meissner's (Greene & Meissner 2005) ground-shifting piece on archival processing "More Product, Less Process" [MPLP] changed the way many archivists approached unprocessed collections. The fourth question asks archivists: What is the effect of MPLP on subject access in general?

Question #5 investigates when the travel aspect of a collection rises to merit some sort of subject access, be it as a primary (650) term or in a subfield (such as a geographical term's *Description and travel*): What level of a collection's description warrants travel-related subject access? (i.e. Was it a particular occurrence, like the presence of a travel journal or scrapbook or was it the general sense of the collection?)

Questions #6 and #7 address subject and genre terms and their placement. Are they in primary fields or subfields? Question #8 further looks at subject and genre fields by asking if there is an

optimal number (or a minimal or maximum number) for each: a) personal name, b) institutional name, c) topic, d) geographical and e) genre.

Question #9 traces its origins back to the researcher's background interview with the archivist at the Penn Museum. Given the meagerness of access points to the archives, the researcher asked the archivist how people find anything in the archives. His response was "They just ask me" (Pezzati, personal interview, 16 January 2015). In Brown's (2015) research on residual radioactivity effects in Russian women, she compared their bodies to actual archives: "Bodies, it turns out, do not give up their secrets as easily as sequestered archives. The bodies of the women I talked to were archives after a fashion..." (Brown 2015:66). They were archives incorporated, literally. For this thesis, the researcher is not looking at an archivist as an archive, but rather as just one among many reference tools available. If archivists are to be viewed as access points, then should not the exercise that the researcher used for all of the site-visits (taking the 80 LCSH terms and checking them again card and online catalogues and printed guides) also be used on the archivists themselves? The answer was yes and the researcher presented each term to the archivists with four possible responses: a) There are items in our collections relating to this term, b) There are not items in our collections relating to this term, c) I do not know if there are items in our collections relating to this term and d) I am not familiar with this specific term.

The researcher conducted face-to-face or telephone interviews (using interview schedules) [see Appendix A] in 2015 with archival staff at APS (via telephone on 6 and 27 February), Penn (via telephone on 17 February), PHS (via telephone on 6 and 19 February) and HSP (conducted face-to-face on 20 and 24 February 2015). The researcher selected the archivists from among the staff interviewed during the repository site visits [see Section 5.2.4]. The responses to the interview schedule were anonymous [see Appendix C].

4.9.2 Summary of the Interviews

The researcher selected two archivists from each of the four targeted institutions (APS, Penn, PHS and HSP). In some cases, this represented 100% of the professional archival staff of that repository: for Penn and HSP that number constituted 100%; for APS and PHS that represented around 30%. They consisted of five males (63%) and three females (37%). Eighty-eight percent (7) held a master's degree as the highest level of formal education; twelve percent (1) had a bachelor's degree as the highest level of formal education. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results.]

For Question #1 (What do you consider are travel-related collections?) the responses were often fairly typical, in line with the collecting scopes of their institutions and their repositories' visions. The primary impression was that travel was a type of leisure activity. They used words like "more touristy" and for the "sake of tourism as opposed to travel for a purpose." In this same vein, one archivist (whose archive was, according to this researcher and this thesis, bursting with collections which were travel-related), his repository "doesn't have any."

The other five archivists were a bit more generous with their definitions. Words like "a lot could be considered travel" and "a broad topic" came to the front. Two others named specific genres, such as diaries/journals, photo albums and ephemera. Another named three specific collections which came to mind (dealing with foreign and domestic travel), which consisted of a photo album, travel journal and papers, respectively. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results for Question #1.]

For Question #2 (Have you had researchers using your facility looking specifically for travel-related material?) five archivists replied with a yes (qualified or not) while three said no (or a version of that: "can't recall any"). There was some general agreement that while researchers may not be asking for travel-related collections, the collections they were looking at did involve travel. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results for Question #2.]

Question #3 is a bit more straight-forward: What would be the best way for a travel researcher to access your pertinent collections? While the author of this thesis had four possible responses ready to suggest (Card catalogues, Online catalogues/databases, Printed guides and Staff) he did not offer them but encouraged archivists to say the first thing that came to their mind. Seven of them (88%) said Online catalogues/databases while only one (12%) said Staff.

Seven of the archivists also offered up second (or third or fourth) suggestions for access to their collections. Three archivists recommended the Card catalogues as a close second (with one of these archivists further ranking Staff and Printed guides as third and fourth, respectively).

Two of the archivists recommended Staff as a second choice. One archivist suggested Printed guides as a second choice. The one archivist who listed Staff as number one listed Online catalogues/databases as a close second. [See Appendix D for the full Questionnaire results for Question #3.]

The fourth question (What is the effect of More Product, Less Process on subject access in general?) had mixed results. Most of the repositories either did not use MPLP or only used modified versions of it. All but three archivists said that MPLP could have a negative effect on subject access (and even one of the hold-outs, though he agreed that it *could* happen, said the positive effects perhaps outweighed the negative: "It is possible that using MPLP would yield fewer subject terms, but then again they might have gotten more collections processed and therefore there are more subject terms in general"). Another archivist said that even though they used MPLP for a special-funded project, their finding aids were really robust. Yet another archivist said that when they use MPLP they compensate by "upping" their accession process to "do more careful looking in the front end so they have more information going into processing." Of the more negative comments about MPLP were "Not a big fan of MPLP" and "I struggle with MPLP." [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results for Question #4.]

Question #5 (What level of a collection's description warrants travel-related subject access?) was harder for the respondents to pin down. Some archivists looked for mention in the Collections

Scope as to whether subject access was warranted. In using MARC records, another repository based its 6XX tags on the 545 or 520 notes. While others chimed in that there would have to be something significant mentioned at the "collection level" of description, one said they would add subject access if there was something "rich at the folder level."

Others stated that if there was a significant item (such as a diary or journal of a trip), it would be highlighted. Others acknowledged that there is a "low level," in that all of their collections (in this case scientific expeditions) deal with travel due to their very nature. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results for Question #5.]

Question #6 (If you do use travel-related subject access terms, are the primary fields or are they located in subfields?) was rather elementary. Thirty-seven percent (3) of the respondents said Primary; 38% (3) reported Subfields; 25% (2) chose both Primary and Subfields. [See Appendix D for the full Questionnaire results for Question #6.]

The seventh question (Do you use genre/form terms ... ?) garnered near universality: 88% (7) yes; 12% (1) no. Of those that used genre/form terms, they were evenly split between Primary, Subfields or Both. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.]

The eighth question (How many subject access points do you usually provide for a collection?) was near impossible to answer. While 100% responded that they used Personal name (600-tag), Institutional name (610-tag), Topic (650-tag) and Geographical (651-tag) for subject tracings, only 88% used Genre (655-tag). The general sentiment was "It depends on the collection" and "As many as it needs." When pressed, one archivist noted that Personal, Institutional and Geographical might together garner 10-15 subject tracings. Another archivist (who deals with scientific collections and their myriad of correspondents) suggested less than 40-50 subject tracings for Personal and Institutional combined and less than 10 subject tracings for Geographical. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results for Question #8.]

Question #9 (The list of 80 travel-related terms) was interesting. Treating an archivist as a human card catalogue was both professionally enlightening and challenging. They all took the terms (and this exercise) with great aplomb but often doubted their own responses, even with the broad choices of: Yes, there is something that fits that term in our collations; No, there is not; I don't know if there is or is not; I don't even know what that term means. [See Appendix D for the full Questionnaire results for Question #9.]

The following terms had 100% (8 archivists) Yes results: *Travel, Business travel, International travel, Ocean travel, Voyages and travels, Voyages to the Pacific coast and Adventure and adventurers.* [See Table 11.]

The following terms had 88% (7 archivists) Yes results: *Travel writing, Aeronautics--flights, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Quests (expeditions), Scientific expeditions,*

Voyages around the world, Travelers, Culture and tourism, Heritage tourism and Indian tourism. [See Table 11.]

The following terms had 75% (6 archivists) Yes results: *Adventure travel, Automobile travel, Independent travel, Railroad travel, Travel restrictions, Travelers' writings, Shipwrecks, Tourism, Architecture and tourism and Cruise lines.* [See Table 11.]

Table 11: Top Yes Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
100%	<i>Travel, Business travel, International travel, Ocean travel</i>	<i>Voyages and travels, Ocean travel, Voyages to the Pacific Coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travel</i>	<i>Travel</i>
88%	<i>Travel writing</i>	<i>Aeronautics—flights, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Quests (expeditions), Scientific expeditions, Voyages around the world, Travelers</i>	<i>Culture and tourism, Heritage tourism, Indian tourism</i>
75%	<i>Adventure travel, Automobile travel, Independent travel, Railroad travel, Travel restrictions, Travelers' writings</i>	<i>Railroad travel, Shipwrecks</i>	<i>Tourism, Architecture and tourism, Cruise lines</i>

The following terms had 63% (5 archivists) Yes results: *Seafaring life, Travel delays and Garden tours.* [See Table 12.]

The following terms had 50% (4 archivists) Yes results: *Air travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Homecoming, International travel regulations, Luggage--packing, Teenage travel programs, Travel journalism, Mountaineering expeditions, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Package tours and Sightseeing business.* [See Table 12.]

The following terms had 38% (3 archivists) Yes results: *Motorcycle touring, Pets and travel, Buccaneers, Literary journeys, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Papal visits, Space flights, Music and tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism, Sports and tourism and Women in tourism.* [See Table 12.]

Table 12: Middle Yes Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
63%		<i>Seafaring life, Travel delays</i>	<i>Garden tours</i>
50%	<i>Air travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Homecoming, International travel regulations, Luggage—packing, Teenage travel programs, Travel journalism</i>	<i>Air travel, Mountaineering expeditions, Pilgrims and pilgrimages</i>	<i>Package tours, Sightseeing business</i>
38%	<i>Motorcycle touring, Pets and travel</i>	<i>Buccaneers, Literary journeys, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Papal visits, Space flights</i>	<i>Music and tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism, Sports and tourism, Women in tourism</i>

The following terms had 25% (2 archivists) Yes results: *Caravans, Travelers' aid societies, Workers' travel programs, Youth travel programs, Geotourism, Lake tourism, River tourism* and *Wine tourism*. [See Table 13.]

The following terms had 12% (1 archivist) Yes results: *Interstellar travel, Customs administration and tourism, Ecotourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Sex tourism, Volunteer tourism* and *National tourism organizations*. [See Table 13.]

The following terms had 0% (0 archivists) Yes results: *Astrology and travel, Games for travelers, Signs and symbols for travelers, Dark tourism, Forest canopy tourism, Holistic tourism, Space tourism* and *Sustainable tourism*. [See Table 13.]

Table 13: Low Yes Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
25%	<i>Caravans, Travelers' aid societies, Workers' travel programs, Youth travel programs</i>		<i>Geotourism, Lake tourism, River tourism, Wine tourism</i>
12%	<i>Interstellar travel</i>		<i>Customs administration and tourism, Ecotourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Sex tourism, Volunteer tourism, National tourism organizations</i>
0%	<i>Astrology and travel, Games for travelers, Signs and symbols for travelers</i>		<i>Dark tourism, Forest canopy tourism, Holistic tourism, Space tourism, Sustainable tourism</i>

The following terms had 75% (6 archivists) No results: *Forest canopy tourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Space tourism and Sustainable tourism*. [See Table 14.]

The following terms had 63% (5 archivists) No results: *Interstellar travel, Customs administration and tourism, Holistic tourism, Lake tourism, Sex tourism, Sports and tourism, Volunteer tourism, Wine tourism and National tourism organizations*. [See Table 14.]

The following terms had 50% (4 archivists) No results: *Games for travelers, Papal visits, Geotourism, Medical tourism, Music and tourism, Outfitting industry, River tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism and Women in tourism*. [See Table 14.]

Table 14: Highest No Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
75%			<i>Forest canopy tourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Space tourism, Sustainable tourism</i>
63%	<i>Interstellar travel</i>		<i>Customs administration and tourism, Holistic tourism, Lake tourism, Sex tourism, Sports and tourism, Volunteer tourism, Wine tourism, National tourism organizations</i>
50%	<i>Games for travelers</i>	<i>Papal visits</i>	<i>Geotourism, Medical tourism, Music and tourism, Outfitting industry River tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism, Women in tourism</i>

The following terms had 38% (3 archivists) No results: *Astrology and travel, Motorcycle touring, Pets and travel, Teenage travel programs, Travel journalism, Buccaneers, Literary journeys, Mountaineering expeditions, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Space flights, Ecotourism, Garden tours, Package tours and Sightseeing business.* [See Table 15.]

The following terms had 25% (2 archivists) No results: *Adventure travel, Air travel, Caravans, International travel regulations, Luggage--packing, Youth travel programs, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Travel delays, Tourism and Cruise lines.* [See Table 15.]

The following terms had 12% (1 archivist) No results: *Automobile travel, Bicycle tourism, Bus travel, Homecoming, Signs and symbols for travelers, Workers' travel programs, Travel writing, Travelers' writings, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Quests (expeditions), Travelers, Dark tourism, Heritage tourism and Indian tourism.* [See Table 15.]

The following terms had 0% (0 archivists) No results: *Travel, Business travel, Independent travel, International travel, Ocean travel, Railroad travel, Travel restrictions, Travelers' aid societies, Voyages and travels, Aeronautics--flights, Scientific expeditions, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers, Architecture and tourism and Culture and tourism.* [See Table 15.] There were not any 100% or 88% No results.

Table 15: Lowest No Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	<i>Travel Grouping</i>	<i>Voyages and travels Grouping</i>	<i>Tourism Grouping</i>
38%	<i>Astrology and travel, Motorcycle touring, Pets and travel, Teenage travel programs, Travel journalism</i>	<i>Buccaneers, Literary Journeys, Mountaineering expeditions, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Space flights</i>	<i>Ecotourism, Garden tours, Package tours, Sightseeing business</i>
25%	<i>Adventure travel, Air travel, Caravans, International travel regulations, Luggage—packing, Youth travel programs</i>	<i>Air travel, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Travel delays</i>	<i>Tourism, Cruise lines</i>
12%	<i>Automobile travel, Bicycle tourism, Bus travel, Homecoming, Signs and symbols for travelers, Workers' travel programs, Travel writing, Travelers' writings</i>	<i>Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Quests (expeditions), Travelers</i>	<i>Dark tourism, Heritage tourism, Indian tourism</i>
0%	<i>Travel, Business travel, Independent travel, International travel, Ocean travel, Railroad travel, Travel restrictions, Travelers' aid societies</i>	<i>Voyages and travels, Aeronautics—flights, Ocean travel, Railroad travel, Scientific expeditions, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travel</i>	<i>Architecture and tourism, Culture and tourism, Travel</i>

The following term had 75% (6 archivists) Don't Know results: *Travelers' aid societies.* [See Table 16.]

The following terms had 63% (5 archivists) Don't Know results: *Astrology and travel* and *Signs and symbols for travelers*. [See Table 16.]

The following terms had 50% (4 archivists) Don't Know results: *Games for travelers*, *Workers' travel programs*, *Youth travel programs* and *Ecotourism*. [See Table 16.]

The following terms had 38% (3 archivists) Don't Know results: *Bicycle touring*, *Bus travel* and *Caravans*. [See Table 16.]

Table 16: Highest Don't Know Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
75%	<i>Travelers' aid societies</i>		
63%	<i>Astrology and travel, Signs and symbols for travelers</i>		
50%	<i>Games for travelers, Workers' travel programs, Youth travel programs</i>		<i>Ecotourism</i>
38%	<i>Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Caravans</i>		

The following terms had 25% (2 archivists) Don't Know results: *Air travel*, *Homecoming*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage--packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Pets and travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Travel restrictions*, *Buccaneers*, *Literary journeys*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Space flights*, *Architecture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Outfitting industry*, *River tourism*, *Sex tourism*, *Space tourism*, *Sustainable tourism* and *National tourism organizations*. [See Table 17.]

The following terms had 12% (1 archivist) Don't Know results: *Automobile travel*, *Independent travel*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Travel journalism*, *Aeronautics--flights*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Papal visits*, *Scientific expeditions*, *Seafaring life*, *Travel delays*, *Voyages around the world*, *Culture and tourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Geotourism*, *Holistic tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Lake tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Package tours*, *Rural tourism*, *Sightseeing business*, *Volunteer tourism* and *Wine tourism*. [See Table 17.]

The following terms had 0% (0 archivists) Don't Know results: *Travel*, *Adventure travel*, *Business travel*, *International travel*, *Ocean travel*, *Travel writing*, *Travelers' writings*, *Voyages and travels*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Quests (expeditions)*,

Shipwrecks, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travelers, Tourism, Cruise lines, Dark tourism, Garden tours, Heritage tourism, Indian tourism, Royal tourism, Sports and tourism and Women in tourism. [See Table 17.] There were not any 100% or 88% Don't Know results.

Table 17: Lowest Don't Know Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	<i>Travel Grouping</i>	<i>Voyages and travels Grouping</i>	<i>Tourism Grouping</i>
25%	<i>Air travel, Homecoming, International travel regulations, Interstellar travel, Luggage—packing, Motorcycle touring, Pets and travel, Railroad travel, Travel restrictions</i>	<i>Air travel, Buccaneers, Literary journeys, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Railroad travel, Space flights</i>	<i>Architecture and tourism, Customs administration and tourism, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, River tourism, Sex tourism, Space tourism, Sustainable tourism, National tourism organizations</i>
12%	<i>Automobile travel, Independent travel, Teenage travel programs, Travel journalism</i>	<i>Aeronautics—flights, Mountaineering expeditions, Papal visits, Scientific expeditions, Seafaring life, Travel delays, Voyages around the world</i>	<i>Culture and tourism, Forest canopy tourism, Geotourism, Holistic tourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Lake tourism, Music and tourism, Package tours, Rural tourism, Sightseeing business, Volunteer tourism, Wine tourism</i>
0%	<i>Travel, Adventure travel, Business travel, International travel, Ocean travel, Travel writing, Travelers' writings</i>	<i>Voyages and travels, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education) Ocean travel, Quests (expeditions), Shipwrecks, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travel, Travelers</i>	<i>Tourism, Cruise lines, Dark tourism, Garden tours, Heritage tourism, Indian tourism, Royal tourism, Sports and tourism, Women in tourism, Travel</i>

In the curiosity category, the following term was Unfamiliar by 88% (7 archivists) of the respondents: *Dark tourism*. [*Dark tourism* is visiting sites with some sort of macabre or sinister

history or connotation.] The following terms were Unfamiliar by 25% (2 archivists) of the respondents: *Signs and symbols for travelers* and *Holistic tourism*. [See Table 18.]

The following terms were Unfamiliar by 12% (1 archivist) of the respondents: *Caravans*, *Homecoming*, *Independent travel*, *Workers' travel programs*, *Travelers' writings*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Geotourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Outfitting industry*, *Royal tourism*, *Volunteer tourism* and *Women in tourism*. [See Table 18.]

Table 18: Highest Unfamiliar Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
88%			<i>Dark tourism</i>
25%	<i>Signs and symbols for travelers</i>		<i>Holistic tourism</i>
12%	<i>Caravans, Homecoming, Independent travel, Workers' travel programs, Travelers' writings</i>		<i>Forest canopy tourism, Geotourism, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Royal tourism, Volunteer tourism, Women in tourism</i>

The following terms were Unfamiliar by 0% (0 archivists) of the respondents: *Travel*, *Adventure travel*, *Air travel*, *Astrology and travel*, *Automobile travel*, *Bicycle touring*, *Bus travel*, *Business travel*, *Games for travelers*, *International travel*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage--packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Ocean travel*, *Pets and travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Travel restrictions*, *Travelers' aid societies*, *Youth travel programs*, *Travel writing*, *Travel journalism*, *Voyages and travels*, *Aeronautics--flights*, *Buccaneers*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Scientific expeditions*, *Seafaring life*, *Shipwrecks*, *Space flights*, *Travel delays*, *Voyages around the world*, *Voyages to the Pacific coast*, *Adventure and adventurers*, *Travelers*, *Tourism*, *Architecture and tourism*, *Cruise lines*, *Culture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Ecotourism*, *Garden tours*, *Heritage tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Indian tourism*, *Lake tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Package tours*, *River tourism*, *Rural tourism*, *Sex tourism*, *Sightseeing business*, *Space tourism*, *Sports and tourism*, *Sustainable tourism*, *Wine tourism* and *National tourism organizations*. [See Table 19.] There were no 100%, 75%, 63%, 50% or 38% responses for Unfamiliar.

Table 19: Lowest Unfamiliar Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	<i>Travel Grouping</i>	<i>Voyages and travels Grouping</i>	<i>Tourism Grouping</i>
0%	<i>Travel, Adventure travel, Air travel, Astrology and travel, Automobile travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Business travel, Games for travelers, International travel, International travel regulations, Interstellar travel, Luggage—packing, Motorcycle touring, Ocean travel, Pets and travel, Railroad travel, Teenage travel programs, Travel restrictions, Travelers’ aid societies, Youth travel programs, Travel writing, Travel journalism</i>	<i>Voyages and travels, Aeronautics—flights, Air travel, Buccaneers, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Literary journeys, Mountaineering expeditions, Ocean travel, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Quests (expeditions), Railroad travel, Scientific expeditions, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Space flights, Travel delays, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travel, Travelers</i>	<i>Tourism, Architecture and tourism, Cruise lines, Culture and tourism, Customs administration and tourism, Ecotourism, Garden tours, Heritage tourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Indian tourism, Lake tourism, Music and tourism, Package tours, River tourism, Rural tourism, Sex tourism, Sightseeing business, Space tourism, Sports and tourism, Sustainable tourism, Wine tourism, National tourism organizations, Travel</i>

4.10 Users of Travel-Related Archival Collections

The researcher devised a questionnaire [see Appendix A] for researchers at the four designated repositories: the American Philosophical Society, the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. Researchers at these four repositories used material representing four distinct types of travel: geographic exploration, scientific expedition, missionary activity and leisure and emigration. There were, of course, overlaps. Researchers at the American Philosophical Society could also have used scientific expedition collections. Researchers at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania could also have viewed exploration collections.

4.10.1 The Questionnaire

The researcher mailed out questionnaires to users of travel-related collections of the four designated repositories (APS, Penn, PHS and HSP). The Questionnaire consisted of eight questions [see Appendix A].

Question #1 asks the researcher to rank, with 1 being the most effective and 4 being the least effective, the four types of access points typically found in a special collections repository: a) card catalogues, b) online catalogues/databases, c) published guides and d) staff.

As a parallel to Question #1, Question #2 asks the researcher to rank, with 1 being the one they would go to first and 4 being the one they would do last, the four types of access points typically found in a special collections repository: a) card catalogues, b) online catalogues/databases, c) published guides and d) staff.

Question #3 probes whether a researcher uses a keyword or subject search when using an online catalogue or database. It also follows up with “why.”

Questions #4 and #5 were inspired by an early conversation with a staff member from the Presbyterian Historical Society. When the researcher informed her that he would be sending out questionnaires to users of her collection, she thought that knowing if they negotiated the access points (card catalogues, online catalogues/databases and published guides) on their own or needed staff mediation (Question #4) and if they were satisfied with what they found after the searches (Question #5).

Question #6 asks about the researchers' level of confidence using online research tools (measured by a Likert-type scale). Question #7 is a binary question: Did you use travel-related subject terms in your research? There is a follow-up question (if yes) of terms used. The last question, #8, asks about the use, by the researcher, of genre/form terms when searching.

The researcher conducted written surveys (using questionnaires sent via the United States post or via email) [see Appendix A], in 2015, with users of APS' (2 respondents), Penn's (4), PHS' (3) and HSP's (3) travel-related collections. The researcher identified users from lists of past research fellows (APS and PHS) and recommendations from repository staff (Penn and HSP). The pool of researchers using travel-related collections is a shallow one indeed. Neuman (1997) states that for a mail survey, a response rate of 10-50% is common (Newman 1997:247). The researcher sent out 34 invitations to participate and received 14 positive replies (35%) ($n = 14$). Of those, 12 (84%) were deemed eligible to proceed. He sent out 12 questionnaires, under an explanatory letter, with self-addressed, stamped envelopes. The researcher received 12 (100%) completed questionnaires.

Since the researchers were sent the questionnaires by post, there was no face-to-face or telephone interaction. The responses to the questionnaires were anonymous [see Appendixes C and E].

4.10.2 Summary of the Questionnaires

The researcher received 12 completed responses to the user Questionnaire. For the first question (When you want to know what kinds of collections or items are in a archive/special collections library, which of these aids to you find most effective: card catalogues, online catalogues/databases, published guides and staff?), only 8% rated card catalogues as #1 (the most effective; 75% rated card catalogues as #4 (the least effective); 17% did not rate them at all.

There were no #2 or #3 ratings. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #1.]

In contrast to the card catalogues, online tools had a better response rate. For online catalogues/databases: 50% rated them as #1 (most effective); 17% rated them as #2; 25% rated them as #3; no one rated them as #4 (least effective). Eight percent answered "not applicable."

For published guides: 8% ranked them as #1 (most effective); 50% ranked them as #2; 34% ranked them as #3; and 8% rated them as #4 (least effective). Staff had overall better ratings by the users than the guides, with 33% ranking them as #1 (most effective), 33% ranking them as #2 and 33% ranking them as #3. There were no #4 (least effective) rankings.

For the second question (When thinking of access point for the collection, please rank the following in order of which you would do first: card catalogues, online catalogues/databases, published guides and staff.), no one rated card catalogues as #1 (the first choice); 8% rated card catalogues as #2; 75% rated them as #4 (the last choice). There were no #3 ratings. Eight percent rated that question as "not applicable"; 9% left it blank. . [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #2.]

In contrast to the card catalogues, online tools had a better response rate. For online catalogues/databases: 67% rated them as #1 (first choice); 8% rated them as #2; 8% rated them as #3; 8% rated them as #4 (last choice). Eight percent rated online as "not applicable."

For published guides: 8% ranked them as #1 (first choice); 50% ranked them as #2; 42% ranked them as #3; and 0% rated them as #4 (last choice). Staff had overall better ratings by the users than the guides, with 25% ranking them as #1 (first choice), 33% ranking them as #2 and 42% ranking them as #3. There were no #4 (last choice) rankings.

For Question #3 (When using an online catalogue or database, do you usually use a "keyword" or "subject" search?), 67% used a keyword search; 17% used a subject search; 8% checked off both of the choices or wrote in the word "both"; 8% did not respond.

When responding to a follow-up "Why" to Question #3, most identified keyword searching a being more versatile (it "will search subject field as well") and easier to identify than standardised terms ("subject sometimes must be in an exact syntax match" or "I was not confident that subject tags had been applied to all the data/files of interest"). For those

commenting on subject searching, one said that "subject search always delivers enormous amounts of information, mostly irrelevant to my research." [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #3.]

Question #4 asked about users' ability to use three of the four designated access points (card catalogues, online catalogues/databases and published guides) unaided. Fifty-eight percent managed these access points solo; 33% had staff mediation; 9% indicated both self and staff. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #4.]

For Question #5 (Were you able to find the amount of material you expected, when you came to do research, based on your experience searching the online catalogues/databases or published guides prior to your visit?) 58% reported that the pre-visit exercises allowed them to meet their expectations; 9% reported that these tools did not allow them to meet their expectations; 33% said that these pre-visit searches allowed them to exceed their expectations. [The one respondent who said that the pre-visit searching did not meet their expectations said that they were helped by archival staff when they arrived at the repository.] Grouped, 91% of users found their expectations either met or exceeded by the work they did, reviewing access tools, prior to a site visit. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #5.]

Part of the expectation-meeting reporting may have been related to users' confidence at using online tools. When asked by Question #6 (Indicate your level of confidence using online research tools.) to rank from #1 (least confident) to #4 (most confident), users reported: #1 (least confident) at 8%, #2 at 17%, #3 at 33% and #4 (most confident) at 33%. Nine percent indicated that that question was "not applicable." [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #6.]

For Question #7 (Did you use travel-related subject terms in your research?), 50% said Yes; 50% reported No. Of those who reported Yes, they were asked to list the travel terms they used. Most of the terms they listed were very specific to their research, actually not from the list of 80 travel terms studied in this project. Only *Travel* was a direct term match. One researcher also identified using the standard travel subfield term *Description and travel*. One, though cited specific names, used terms which included the word "expedition," which is part of a few travel terms: *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Quests (expeditions)* and *Scientific expeditions*. Another used versions of the word "transportation" [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.]

Question #8 (Did you use genre/form terms when searching?) saw 67% reporting Yes and 33% reporting No. In the follow-up question for those who replied Yes, they were asked which terms they used. They often used a combination of primary and subfield genre/form terms, including: diaries, journals, personal narratives, correspondence, memoirs, photographs, archives, etc. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #8.]

“Memoirs,” “Journals,” “Narratives,” “Correspondence” and “Photographs” are not primary genre/form terms. Rather, the Library of Congress uses *Autobiographies*, *Diaries*, *Personal narratives*, *Personal correspondence* and *Photobooks*, respectively. “Travel” is also not a primary genre/form term, but *Travel writing* is. However, *Travel* is a personal subject subfield, as in: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$x Travel” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Likewise, while “Archives” is not a 655 genre/form term, it is a subfield genre/form term when paired with a personal subject: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Archives.” *Diaries* is both a 655 genre/form term and a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Diaries.” And while “Correspondence” is not a 655 genre/form term (although *Personal correspondence* is), *Correspondence* is a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Correspondence” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Fifty-eight of the respondents were male; 42% were female. Seventeen percent were users of the American Philosophical Society; 33% were users of the University of Pennsylvania Museum Archives; 25% were users of the Presbyterian Historical Society; 25% were users of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

4.11 Conclusion

Repositories are continuing to accession sizable travel-related collections, be they corporate or individual — such as the recent Anspach Travel Bureau collection at Duke University (Durham, North Carolina) donation or the Charles Kuralt papers at the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill (finally processed and opened to the public about 15 years ago). In either case these collections need to be processed and described in a way that anyone looking for the material (that of printed materials from a family travel business for the Anspach or the papers of a popular American television traveller and travel writer -- Kuralt) can actually find and use them (Collier 2014 and Rawlings 1999). People, famous or not, are still collecting during their travels and amassing large collections (archival or material) which are intended to be a legacy for future generations (Pointer & Wappler 2015).

And yet there are those who, while they value what archivists do and the role of a repository in research, believe it comes in a close second to the actual place itself. For example, a travel archive does not hold the same meaning as actually visiting the place. But of course a travel archive captures a place in time. When you visit a place, one’s perceptions are only through the lens of the present. That fact does not stop scholars, like Kate Brown (2015), from pining for the original to experience the authentic: “When a researcher appears on site, little organizational work has been done, which makes reading a place for the past a discouraging prospect. The scholar is largely alone in attempting to figure out what happened. Historians approach the archive with a critical eye as to the way some knowledge has been sorted and other knowledge silenced, but recognizing these problems does not mean they give up on them” (Brown 2015:6).

Fortunately, for this thesis, Brown (2015) inserts that “Archives are still extremely useful” (Brown 2015:6). This researcher, of course, believes that they are more than just useful, but are crucial in fully understanding a place. The role of the archivist is to make some sense out of original documentation and organization and present it in a way that is edifying to a researcher. In this chapter the researcher has outlined how this process has been done by archivists and librarians in a variety of media: MARC records on WorldCat; finding aids on ArchiveGrid and PACSCL; and card catalogues, published guides, and online catalogues at individual repositories. Additionally, the researcher has established the notion of archivist-as-access-point as well for those seeking to delve into a repository’s riches.

Chapter 5 (Data Interpretation) reviews the results outlined in Chapter 4, including critical evaluation, looking for themes or consistencies within data in order to formulate recommendations. Scrutiny is also applied in addressing any extraneous findings.

Chapter 5: Interpretation of the Data

5.1 Introduction

The usual place of historical inquiry is the archive or library. At first glance, archives appear more useful and complete than the places of past events. In an archive, documents are systematized into files which are labeled and gathered into collections. Archivists do a great deal of the invisible work of making things visible and comprehensible by grouping and categorizing documents to frame knowledge, so that when a historian arrives there is a structure in place from which to make sense of the past. By filing and organizing, archivists squeeze vast territories into miniature, map-size icons that are more coherent and legible than the view you get sanding in one spot, anxiously eyeing the horizon for clues (Brown 2015:6).

In Chapter 4 the researcher presented the results of the mixed methods approach to this research problem (how metadata can be applied in a more effective way to travel archives, to increase access). Using a combination of bibliometrics and surveys, he moved from larger population sets (involving metadata for thousands of bibliographic records) to the smallest (individual archivists and researchers).

Bibliographic databases, archival repositories, archivists and researchers were the population sets for this study. For bibliographic databases they were represented by MARC records and finding aids; for archival repositories they were represented by four leading (but diverse) non-governmental archives; for archivists they were represented by archival employees of these institutions; and, for researchers, they were represented by users of the collections of these four bodies. This study focused on paper-based travel archives, described in English, world-wide. These travel archives also must have been at publicly accessible institutions.

The overall method moved from larger to smaller data sets of populations. The largest quantitative set consisted of world-wide data on union databases, consisting of MARC records and online finding aids which documented travel collections. These were represented by WorldCat (for MARC records) and ArchiveGrid (for finding aids) [see Section 3.7]. [Both WorldCat and ArchiveGrid, while owned by OCLC, were searched separately.] A smaller quantitative search was then conducted on regional online finding aids which may not have been represented on ArchiveGrid (from PACSCL) [see Section 3.7].

The smallest quantitative data set involved site visits to repositories in the Philadelphia area which hold substantial travel-related archives: the American Philosophical Society [APS], the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives [Penn], Presbyterian Historical Society [PHS] and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP][see Section 3.3.3]. These repositories represented, by the preponderance of their holdings, four typical types of travel-related documentation: exploration (American Philosophical Society), scientific expedition (Penn Museum), missionary (Presbyterian Historical Society) and leisure/relocation (Historical Society of Pennsylvania). The researcher spoke with archival and reference staff at each repository, inquiring about institutional histories, acquisitions, processing and cataloguing. He then used existing access points, gleaned from these conversations -- much

as a first time researcher would, to discover the ease and breadth of locating travel-related archives at each repository.

There were two qualitative data sets of populations: the views and opinions of archivists (via a face-to-face or telephone interview schedule) and users of travel collections (a questionnaire via post). Both of these populations were represented by samples from the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, the Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [see Section 3.7].

5.2 The Quantitative Population Data Sets

Quantitative population data sets consisted of searching MARC records and online finding aids in WorldCat, ArchiveGrid and PACSCL respectively. It also involved counting bibliographic citations at established access points during each site visit.

Table 20 compares all of the three union databases (WorldCat, ArchiveGrid and the PACSCL finding aids) for the three groupings of travel-related terms. What is clear from these results is once again that *Voyages and travels* is by far the most popular of the three groupings (46% compared with *Travel* with 26% and *Tourism* at 28%). *Travel*, however, takes second place to *Tourism* (but flips back in Table 21) (WorldCat 2014a-c; WorldCat 2015; OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015; PACSCL finding aids 2015a-b).

Table 20: All Union Databases			
Term	WorldCat	ArchiveGrid	PACSCL
<i>Travel</i> (+ narrower & associated)	68,778	908	30
<i>Voyages and travels</i> (+ narrower & related)	118,996	1413	40
<i>Tourism</i> (+ narrower & related)	72,715	645	30

Table 21 compares the two finding aids union databases (ArchiveGrid and PACSCL) for the three groupings of travel-related terms. What is clear from these results is that *Voyages and travels* is still by far the most popular of the three groupings (47% compared with *Travel* with 31% and *Tourism* at 22%) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015; PACSCL finding aids 2015a-b).

Table 21: All Finding Aids Databases		
Term	ArchiveGrid	PACSCL
<i>Travel</i> (+ narrower & associated)	908	30
<i>Voyages and travels</i> (+ narrower & related)	1413	40
<i>Tourism</i> (+ narrower & related)	645	30

This grouping, Voyages and travels, covers the three ways of travelling: air (Aeronautics--flights, Air travel, Space flights), land (Mountaineering expeditions, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Railroad travel) and water (Buccaneers, Ocean travel, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast). Plus there is the generic related term of Voyages and travels: Travel. It also classifies individuals (Buccaneers, Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Quests (expeditions) -- and the related terms Adventure and adventurers and Travelers). It covers the sciences (Discoveries in geography, Mountaineering expeditions, Scientific expeditions), the arts (Grand tours (education), Literary journeys), religion (Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages) and mishaps (Shipwrecks, Travel delays).

5.2.1 WorldCat (MARC Records)

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH (Library of Congress authorities 2014) terms over four research sessions in 2014 and 2015 on the WorldCat site: 10 and 21 November 2014, 10 December 2014 and 22 January 2015 (WorldCat 2014a-c and WorldCat 2015).

The first conclusion from the rounds of WorldCat searching, reported in Chapter 4, was that archivists, when creating MARC records and having 80 terms to choose from, kept with the three primary travel terms: *Travel* (11,080), *Voyages and travels* (6474) and *Tourism* (2228). An exception to this finding is *Voyages and travels*' narrower term *Seafaring life* (with 2730), which even exceeded *Tourism* (with 2228) in WorldCat hits. Additionally, *Voyages and travels*' narrower term *Overland journeys to the Pacific* (with 1928) also had significant hits.

Another conclusion was the overwhelming use of *Diaries* as opposed to *Archives* as a genre/form sub-term (\$v) when paired with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* and their sub- and associated/related terms. Archivists who created these MARC records, when paring up subject terms with the genre/form terms *Archives* and *Diaries*, were still relying on the principle primary terms *Travel* and *Voyages and travels*. Of these two genre/form terms, *Diaries* (1873 when paired with *Travel* and 660 with paired with *Voyages and travels*) was used more significantly than *Archives* (141 with *Travel* and 35 with *Voyages and travels*). For the term *Tourism* there was basically no difference between *Diaries* (14) and *Archives* (16) when archivists paired them.

These rounds of searches also indicated the lack of the use by archivists of *Archives* or *Journals* as a genre/form (655-tag) when combined with *Travel* (with *Journals* only 62 hits), *Voyages and travels* (only 25 hits with *Journals*), and *Tourism* (0) (and of all their narrower or associated/related terms, only *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, with 27, was notable). One can gather, from the bibliometric test [see Table 7] on the use of multiple travel terms within a MARC record, that this practice was not heavily significant. However, when testing for the subject subfield *Description and travel*, that number (28,771) far out-paced any of the single primary travel-related terms (for example *Travel* with 11,080 similar hits).

What definitive conclusions can be drawn from the search summaries of WorldCat? Namely: 1) manuscript cataloguers are relying on the general travel terms of *Travel*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism* (and *Seafaring life*), 2) manuscript cataloguers use *Diaries* more frequently as a genre

subfield than *Archives*, 3) manuscript cataloguers do not significantly use *Archives* or *Journals* as a primary genre/form term when paired with other travel terms, 4) manuscript cataloguers do not use multiple travel subject terms within a single record and 5) there is robust use of the subfield *Description and travel* by manuscript cataloguers.

5.2.2 ArchiveGrid (Finding Aids)

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH (Library of Congress authorities 2014) terms over one research session in 2015 on the ArchiveGrid site: 23 January (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

In searching ArchiveGrid for *Travel* and its narrower and associated terms, only a few had hits over 50: *Travel* (551), *Ocean travel* (144) and *Railroad travel* (99). *Voyages and travels* (and its narrower and related terms) fared better: *Voyages and travels* (131), *Ocean travel* (144), *Overland Journeys to the Pacific* (180), *Railroad travel* (99), *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (63), *Travel* (551) and *Travelers* (85) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015). As with other tests on the three primary categories of travel-related terms, *Tourism* (and its narrower or related terms) bordered on the invisible (with only 83 hits).

However, the terms representing standard modes of travel, overland and over-water, still resulted in the highest hits: *Ocean travel* (144), *Railroad travel* (99), *Voyages and travels* (131), *Overland Journeys to the Pacific* (180) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (63) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

Compared to the WorldCat search on *Description and travel* [see Section 4.2.7], with 28,771 hits, ArchiveGrid's 97 hits seemed almost insignificant. But what this phenomenon revealed was that archivists were not using subfields, when creating finding aids, in the same way that manuscript cataloguers had done when creating MARC records in WorldCat. When sometimes, at repositories, an incorrect use [see Sections 4.5.7 and 4.7.6] of the phrase "travel and description" as a primary subject term, instead of its correct form *Description and travel* as a geographic subfield, could be problematic for future access.

One can conclude, from these searches, that archivists are perhaps relying more on researchers using free-text searching of the finding aid than on applying detailed subject access for their edification.

5.2.3 PACSCL (Finding Aids)

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH (Library of Congress authorities 2014) terms over two research sessions in 2015 on the PACSCL site: 12 and 21 January (PACSCL finding aids 2015a-b).

The PACSCL database was searchable by free-text and could be narrowed by the standard categories, including: subject/topic, names, form/genre, subject/person, subject/corporate name and subject/place. At the time of the test the researcher found 2767 finding aids available. In looking at the subject/topic terms, the following had matches for *Travel* and its narrower and associated terms: *Travel* (26), *International travel* (2), *Travel writing* [under the term *Travel writers*] (1) and *Travelers' writings* (1) (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

For *Voyages and travels* and its related and narrower terms there were *Voyages and travels* (2), *Travelers* (1), *Aeronautics* (5), *Scientific expeditions* (4), *Shipwrecks* (1) and *Space flights* (1). Surprisingly *Tourism* and one of its narrower terms each made a showing: *Tourism* (2) and *Heritage tourism* (2) (PACSCL finding aids 2015a). It was not possible to easily run these subject terms against the genre/form terms of Archives, Diaries or Journals, due to PACSCL's use of a variety of terms. The researcher did find Diaries (71) and Journals (accounts) (2). If one, then, took the initial result of Travel (with its 26 hits) and compared it against these two classified form/genre terms, one found only a match for Diaries (8) (PACSCL finding aids 2015a).

When the researcher repeated this exercise with the other matched subject terms he found that there was not a high correlation between established travel subject terms and genre/form terms representing archives, diaries or journals.

The lack of *Description and travel* hits in the PACSCL database mirrored the thin results from ArchiveGrid [see Section 4.2.2]. Like ArchiveGrid, what this may be indicating is that archivists were not using subfields when creating finding aids, in contrast to the way librarians had done when creating MARC records in WorldCat.

One can conclude, from these searches, that (like with ArchiveGrid) archivists are perhaps relying more on researchers using free-text searching of the finding aid than on applying detailed subject access for their benefit.

5.2.4 Repository Site Visits Summary

Brown asserts that “Usually the most arduous difficulties a historian encounters are under-heated archives, cranky archivists, and lousy food in the canteen” (Brown 2015:47). Fortunately for this researcher, two out of those three experiences did not occur (and none of the repositories visited actually had a canteen).

The answers to patrons' questions do not come from one source. Therefore, the recommendations of where patrons should look for subject access points could also be varied. That is certainly true for the four repositories in this study. And not all of these access points were online.

For instance, in the Presbyterian Historical Society, there were four matches for *Voyages and travels* in their card catalogue and 19 matches in the published PCUS Manuscript Guide, but none in either of their online resources (CALVIN [MARC records] or Archival Collections [finding aids]). The card catalogue also showed one match for *Overland journeys to the Pacific* and three for *Pilgrims and pilgrimages* while their online resources revealed none for either category (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b-d and 2015a-b; Benedetto 1990).

For the American Philosophical Society, this researcher found *Railroad travel* in the Post-1969 Card Catalogue but not in their online catalogue. Their published guide, *American Exploration*, showed 38 references for *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, but their online catalogue showed none (American Philosophical Society 2014a-b and 2015; Stanton 1991).

For the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, there was one match for Air travel in their card catalogue but none in their online catalogue Discover. Likewise, there is a reference for Interstellar travel found in PC1 (their manuscript card catalogue), but none in Discover. For Overland journeys to the Pacific, there was one match in both PC1 and their published Guide to Manuscripts, but none in Discover. But the issue is more than simply binary (either a term appears or it does not). There is also a qualitative aspect. For example, PC1 lists 23 matches for Voyages and travels and the published Guide to Manuscripts reveals a significant 96 matches, yet the online catalogue only lists 12 records under Voyages and travels (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b, 2014b-c and 2015).

Only the Penn Museum rebuffed these findings. There were no matches in any of the categories in their published guide; whereas their online database of finding aids had a total of 21 hits (University of Pennsylvania 2015; Ruwell 1984).

The researcher accessed the 80 LCSH (Library of Congress authorities 2014) terms over seven site visits in 2014 and 2015 at the American Philosophical Society (22 and 24 December 2014), the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives (16 January 2015), the Presbyterian Historical Society (23 December 2014 and 20 January 2015) and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (1 November 2014 and 29 January 2015). These visits included checking bibliographic sources: APS (American Philosophical Society 1970, 2014a-b and 2015; Bell & Smith 1966; Catlett 1987; Stanton 1991; Stapleton 1985); Penn (Ruwell 1984; University of Pennsylvania 2015); PHS (Benedetto 1990; Heuser 1988; Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b-d and 2015a-b) and HSP (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b, 2014b-c and 2015).

The process involved background conversations with ten archivists and librarians at the repositories: APS (3 archivists and librarians on 22 December 2014) (Goodman, personal interview, 22 December 2014; Greifenstein, personal interview, 22 December 2014; Lutz, personal interview, 22 December 2014; Ziegler, e-mail to VA Lutz, 22 December 2014); Penn (2 archivists on 16 January 2015) (Pezzati, personal interview, 16 January 2015; Pezzati, personal e-mail, 23 January 2015); PHS (3 archivists on 23 December 2014 and 20 January 2015) (Barr, personal interview, 23 December 2014; Brock & Barr, personal interview, 20 January 2015; Jacobson, personal interview, 23 December 2014) and HSP (2 archivists on 29 January 2015) (Lyons & Hutto, personal interview, 29 January 2015). [The researcher is also the Senior Director of the Library and Collections at HSP, since 1992, and based his site visit report from there partially on his knowledge of the Society and its collections. However, he is not included in these demographics.]

The researcher also conducted seven database session visits for the four repositories: APS (24 December 2014 and 21 January 2015) (American Philosophical Society 2014b and 2015); Penn Museum (16 January 2015) (University of Pennsylvania 2015); PHS (23 December 2014 and 21 January 2015) (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014c-d and 2015a-b) and HSP (2 November 2014 and 21 January 2015) (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2014b and 2015).

5.2.4.1 American Philosophical Society

Of the six tools investigated for archival subject access at the American Philosophical Society [APS], only the online catalogue [Section 4.5.6] and the *New Guide to the Collections* [Section 4.4.4] revealed any substantial travel terms subject access. But even with these two tools, the largest matches were for non-standard equivalents. For example, the non-standard *Travel and description* was often substituted for—or parallel to—the LCSH standard *Description and travel*. Additionally, in lieu of the standard term *Travel writing*, the online catalogue had a hefty 69-hit result for the non-standard *Travel narratives and journals*.

Yet for an archive with so many papers of early exploration and scientific investigation, there are proportionally few uses of travel-related LCSH terms. This is not, perhaps, all that surprising in that they do not consider their collections as “travel.” (This is similar to the stance held by Penn [see Section 5.2.4.2] and the Presbyterian Historical Society [see Section 5.2.4.3] as well.) Their collections had a purpose and that purpose was the advancement of science.

A positive aspect of the APS’ online catalogue is that it is a frequent user of the subfield *Description and travel* after a geographic designation, such as “Canada—Description and travel.” For instance, there are 132 hits when one searches for the subfield *Description and travel* (American Philosophical Society 2015).

5.2.4.2 University of Pennsylvania Museum Archives

Like the American Philosophical Society [see Section 5.2.4.1], the Penn Museum, on the surface, does not have any material that documents travel. Yet, the very nature of scientific expeditions implies some sort of travel—it is just that, like the Presbyterian Historical Society [see Section 5.2.4.3], they do not view their collections as being travel collections. In the case of the Museum, they are viewed as scientific. According to their chief curator Alex Pezzati: “...our records are described according to the primary needs and uses of the institution. In the archives we do, in fact, know that our records are more than excavation notes, but we have yet to describe them fully to the public” (Pezzati, personal e-mail, 23 January 2015).

5.2.4.3 Presbyterian Historical Society

With hundreds of collections by eager and earnest Presbyterians heading into the great unknown to spread the gospel, there is a paucity of records (like the Penn Museum [see Section 5.2.4.2] and the American Philosophical Society [see Section 5.2.4.1]) categorised with travel-related subject access. The archivists at PHS are quick to point out that defining these records as travel is counter to the mission of the PHS. The missionaries’ main focuses were medical, educational and evangelical, not travel; therefore, the primary subject access would not reflect travel. It is only through staff mediation that someone searching for travel would be made aware that basically all of the foreign missionary archives are travel-related, whether or not they have travel-related subject access (Brock & Barr, personal interview, 20 January 2015).

5.2.4.4 Historical Society of Pennsylvania

Compared to the three repositories listed above (APS, Penn and PHS) the Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] is a haven for travel-related archives. HSP is rich in two types of travel documentation: leisure and immigration. Leisure travel may consist of people of means doing “grand tours” of Europe or traveling to Philadelphia to view the Centennial Exposition of 1876 or heading out to the west of America to visit the new Yellowstone National Park (in the American state of Wyoming). Immigrants were, in many cases, not the leisure class. These were folks who, due to famine or strife, left their homelands for good, making the great *trek* to the United States to start a better life. Starting on the east coast of America, eventually they headed west, constantly pushing the frontiers from the state of Pennsylvania to the state of Indiana to the American territories beyond the Mississippi River to the promised land of the American Pacific coast. The Historical Society knows that these are travel accounts and strives to provide access accordingly.

However, only two access tools, *Discover* (online catalogue) and the *Guide to Manuscripts* (published catalogue) deliberately conform to LCSH. PC1 (card catalogue) was heavily populated with subject cards derived prior to standardized Library of Congress subject headings. *Discover* had 214 hits for *Travel* but only 12 for *Voyages and travels*. The *Guide to Manuscripts* had reverse proportions: 96 matches for *Voyages and travels* and only two for *Travel*. The card catalogue (PC1) did best with the broadest travel term, *Travel* (121 instances), and then second best with *Voyages and travels* (23).

However, HSP’s *Discover* catalogue does fare better with the subfield *Description and travel*. In doing a search on that exact subject phrase, 159 manuscript records were revealed (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2015).

5.2.5 Repository Comparisons

Table 22 compares all of the four repositories (Historical Society of Pennsylvania, American Philosophical Society, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Penn Museum) for the three groupings of travel-related terms. What is clear from these results is that *Voyages and travels* is by far the most popular of the three groupings (45% compared with *Travel* with 31% and *Tourism* at 24%). These percentages mirror those in Table 20 (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b-d and 2015a-b; Benedetto 1990; American Philosophical Society 2014a-b and 2015; Stanton 1991; Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b, 2014b-c and 2015; University of Pennsylvania 2015; Ruwell 1984).

Table 22: Comparison of all repositories				
Term	HSP	APS	PHS	Penn
<i>Travel</i> (+ narrower & associated)	389	382	47	0
<i>Voyages and travels</i> (+ narrower & related)	729	347	75	21
<i>Tourism</i> (+ narrower & related)	343	253	46	0

5.3 The Qualitative Population Data Sets

Qualitative population data sets consisted of archival staff and researchers, via interview schedules and questionnaires, respectively.

5.3.1 Archival Staff Interview Schedules

The researcher conducted face-to-face or telephone interviews (using interview schedules) [see Appendix A] in 2015 with archival staff at APS (via telephone on 6 and 27 February), Penn (via telephone on 17 February), PHS (via telephone on 6 and 19 February) and HSP (conducted face-to-face on 20 and 24 February 2015). The researcher selected the archivists from among the staff interviewed during the repository site visits [see Section 5.2.4].

The researcher interviewed two archivists from each of the four targeted institutions (APS, Penn, PHS and HSP) ($n = 8$). [See Appendix D for the full responses.] For two of the institutions (Penn and HSP) that number constituted 100% of the professional archival staff. For two of the institutions (APS and PHS) that represented just under 30% of their professional archival staff.

The responses to Question #1 (What do you consider are travel-related collections?) represent an evolution in the minds of some of the archivists from the participating institutions. When the researcher conducted site visits with the archivists (prior to the formal Interview Schedule which was conducted, often, weeks later), the responses (from the APS, Penn and PHS anyway) to the description of this doctoral thesis was often along the lines of "we don't have much on travel" (Greifenstein, personal interview, 22 December 2014; Pezzati, personal interview, 16 January 2015; Brock & Barr, personal interview, 20 January 2015). After the researcher explained to them what he considered travel-related collections (and after pointing out that explorers traveled somewhere to explore (APS), scientists traveled somewhere to dig (Penn Museum) and missionaries traveled somewhere to evangelize (PHS)), their responses turned to "well, if you mean *that*, but we don't think of those collections that way."

Two of those institutions, when being interviewed anonymously weeks later, softened their hard lines to what they considered travel archives and reported more positively to Question #1, while one of those three refused to be converted. The fourth repository was consistent and proud of their travel collections, pre- and post-Interview Schedule. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #1.]

For Question #2 (Have you had researchers using your facility looking specifically for travel-related material?) the responses often mirrored the mindsets of the replies in Question #1. If a repository did not think it had any (or much) travel collections, then they were likely to report that they did not have travel archival researchers. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #2.]

Question #3 was quite straight-forward: What would be the best way for a travel researcher to access your pertinent collections? Given the first thing that came to their minds, seven of them (88%) said Online catalogues/databases while only one (12%) said Staff. It is clear that most did not consider themselves (or archivists in general) as an access tool (or certainly not the first

access tool to consult). One archivist ranked Staff as third while two of the archivists recommended Staff as a second choice. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #3.]

The fourth question (What is the effect of More Product, Less Process on subject access in general?), as reported in Chapter 4, had mixed results. Most of the repositories either did not use MPLP or only used modified versions of it. The general thought was along the lines of "I have general misgivings about MPLP (in reference to subject access), but I'm not worried about my repository since we generally do a good job at description." [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #4.] The short comings of MPLP are well known. These include, as reported in a project from the Kansas Historical Society (Gorzalski & Wiget 2011:19), "missing boxes, misfiled materials, accessions in extreme physical disarray...and records with serious preservation needs."

Question #5 (What level of a collection's description warrants travel-related subject access?) was harder for the respondents to pin down. Often the tone harkened back to their responses for Question #1. If an organisation did not believe that they had travel collections, they were under no obligation to describe them as such. For instance, there may be great collections which reflect months or years of work in a foreign county (plus the process of getting there and back), but because it was not considered a travel collection, there would not even be a geographic subfield of *Description and travel* for the main land they explored, dug up or prosthetyised. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #5.]

Question #6 (If you do use travel-related subject access terms, are the primary fields or are they located in subfields?), as reported in Chapter 4, was rather elementary. Thirty-seven percent (3) of the respondents said Primary; 38% (3) reported Subfields; two archivists (25%) chose both Primary and Subfields. More used subfields rather than primary fields for any travel designation. These responses were sustained by results from database searches at the four repositories (either during the site visits or remotely). [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #6.]

The seventh question (Do you use genre/form terms ... ?) garnered near universality: 88% (7) yes; 12% (1) no. Of those that used genre/form terms, they were evenly split between Primary, Subfields or Both. Although there was general reluctance to use the term *Archives* as a genre term since it would be seen as perhaps self-evident for an archival repository. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #7.]

The eighth question (How many subject access points do you usually provide for a collection?), as reported in Chapter 4, was near impossible to answer clearly. With the general consensus being "It depends on the collection," this question quickly became extraneous. What the question does is remind the researcher how subjective archival processing and manuscript cataloguing can be. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #8.]

Question #9 (The list of 80 travel-related terms) was interesting. Viewing an archivist as an access point, like a card or online catalogue, was both illuminating and revelatory. There were four possible responses to each travel term: Yes, there is something that fits that term in our collations; No, there is not; I don't know if there is or is not; I don't even know what that term means. [See Appendix D for the full responses for Question #9.]

The following terms had 100% (8 archivists) Yes results: *Travel*, *Business travel*, *International travel* and *Ocean travel* (all part of the *Travel* grouping); *Voyages and travels*, *Ocean travel*, *Voyages to the Pacific coast*, *Adventure and adventurers* and *Travel* (all part of the *Voyages and travels* grouping); and *Travel* (part of the *Tourism* grouping). [See Table 23.]

The following terms had 88% (7 archivists) Yes results: *Travel writing* (part of the *Travel* grouping); *Aeronautics--flights*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Scientific expeditions*, *Voyages around the world* and *Travelers* (all part of the *Voyages and travel* grouping); *Culture and tourism*, *Heritage tourism* and *Indian tourism* (all part of *Tourism* grouping). [See Table 23.]

The following terms had 75% (6 archivists) Yes results: *Adventure travel*, *Automobile travel*, *Independent travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Travel restrictions* and *Travelers' writings* (all part of the *Travel* grouping); *Railroad travel* and *Shipwrecks* (both part of the *Voyages and travels* grouping); *Tourism*, *Architecture and tourism* and *Cruise lines* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping). [See Table 23.]

Table 23: Top Yes Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	<i>Travel</i> Grouping	<i>Voyages and travels</i> Grouping	<i>Tourism</i> Grouping
100%	<i>Travel</i> , <i>Business travel</i> , <i>International travel</i> , <i>Ocean travel</i>	<i>Voyages and travels</i> , <i>Ocean travel</i> , <i>Voyages to the Pacific Coast</i> , <i>Adventure and adventurers</i> , <i>Travel</i>	<i>Travel</i>
88%	<i>Travel writing</i>	<i>Aeronautics—flights</i> , <i>Discoveries in geography</i> , <i>Grand tours (education)</i> , <i>Quests (expeditions)</i> , <i>Scientific expeditions</i> , <i>Voyages around the world</i> , <i>Travelers</i>	<i>Culture and tourism</i> , <i>Heritage tourism</i> , <i>Indian tourism</i>
75%	<i>Adventure travel</i> , <i>Automobile travel</i> , <i>Independent travel</i> , <i>Railroad travel</i> , <i>Travel restrictions</i> , <i>Travelers' writings</i>	<i>Railroad travel</i> , <i>Shipwrecks</i>	<i>Tourism</i> , <i>Architecture and tourism</i> , <i>Cruise lines</i>

The following terms had 63% (5 archivists) Yes results: *Seafaring life* and *Travel delays* (both part of the *Voyages and travels* grouping); *Garden tours* (part of the *Tourism* grouping). [See Table 24.]

The following terms had 50% (4 archivists) Yes results: *Air travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Homecoming, International travel regulations, Luggage--packing, Teenage travel programs* and *Travel journalism* (all part of the *Travel* grouping); *Air travel, Mountaineering expeditions* and *Pilgrims and pilgrimages* (all part of the *Voyages and travels* grouping); *Package tours* and *Sightseeing business* (both part of the *Tourism* grouping).). [See Table 24.]

The following terms had 38% (3 archivists) Yes results: *Motorcycle touring* and *Pets and travel* (both part of the *Travel* grouping); *Buccaneers, Literary journeys, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Papal visits* and *Space flights* (all part of the *Voyages and travels* grouping); *Music and tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism, Sports and tourism* and *Women in tourism* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping).). [See Table 24.]

The following terms had 25% (2 archivists) Yes results: *Caravans, Travelers' aid societies, Workers' travel programs* and *Youth travel programs* (all part of the *Travel* grouping): *Geotourism, Lake tourism, River tourism* and *Wine tourism* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping).

The following terms had 12% (1 archivist) Yes results: *Interstellar travel* (part of the *Travel* grouping); *Customs administration and tourism, Ecotourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Sex tourism, Volunteer tourism* and *National tourism organizations* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping). [See Table 24.]

The above figures meant that the following terms had 0% (0 archivists) Yes results: *Astrology and travel, Games for travelers* and *Signs and symbols for travelers* (all part of the *Travel* grouping); *Dark tourism, Forest canopy tourism, Holistic tourism, Space tourism* and *Sustainable tourism* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping). [See Table 24.]

Table 24: Middle and Low Yes Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	Travel Grouping	Voyages and travels Grouping	Tourism Grouping
63%		<i>Seafaring life, Travel delays</i>	<i>Garden tours</i>
50%	<i>Air travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Homecoming, International travel regulations, Luggage—packing, Teenage travel programs, Travel journalism</i>	<i>Air travel, Mountaineering expeditions, Pilgrims and pilgrimages</i>	<i>Package tours, Sightseeing business</i>
38%	<i>Motorcycle touring, Pets and travel</i>	<i>Buccaneers, Literary journeys, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Papal visits, Space flights</i>	<i>Music and tourism, Royal tourism, Rural tourism, Sports and tourism, Women in tourism</i>

25%	<i>Caravans, Travelers' aid societies, Workers' travel programs, Youth travel programs</i>		<i>Geotourism, Lake tourism, River tourism, Wine tourism</i>
12%	<i>Interstellar travel</i>		<i>Customs administration and tourism, Ecotourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Sex tourism, Volunteer tourism, National tourism organizations</i>
0%	<i>Astrology and travel, Games for travelers, Signs and symbols for travelers</i>		<i>Dark tourism, Forest canopy tourism, Holistic tourism, Space tourism, Sustainable tourism</i>

A Yes response was the equivalent of finding a subject card in a card catalogue, matching a term in an online catalogue/database or finding that term in the index of a published guide.

It is clear that the number of Unfamiliar terms were troubling to archivists. The researcher kept reassuring them that there were no right or wrong answers and that he too was not familiar with all 80 terms prior to commencing this research project. The most confusing term, with an 88% (7 archivists) Unfamiliar ranking, was *Dark tourism* (from the *Tourism* grouping). *Dark tourism* is, of course, visiting sites with some sort of macabre or tragic history or connotation (Library of Congress authorities 2014). But the researcher himself only found this out by an explanation in the LCSH resources. However, there were terms which could also have used definitions but did not have any readily supplied by LCSH staff. For instance, what is *Space tourism*: is it non-astronauts taking a ride into space or does it mean touring sites (on land) which relate to the space industry (like the Johnson Space Center in the American state of Texas or the European Space Agency's centre in French Guiana)? LCSH does not provide any scope note. The source notes LCSH provides (670-tag) looks like it indicates the former, but it is not definitive (Library of Congress authorities 2014). [See Table 25.]

The following terms were Unfamiliar by 25% (2 archivists) of the respondents: *Signs and symbols for travelers* (from the *Travel* grouping) and *Holistic tourism* (from the *Tourism* grouping). But what do they really mean? LCSH does not reveal easily, except by clicking on the MARC record and trying to decipher the 670-tag (source note). With some of the terms there is a scope note (680-tag) explanation as soon as one clicks on the link; in others one has to look into the MARC record, which at times can be cryptic. These source notes (670-tags) may be bibliographic or refer to a standard dictionary definition, but not necessarily to a library application (Library of Congress authorities 2014). [See Table 25.]

The following terms were Unfamiliar by 12% (1 archivist) of the respondents: *Caravans, Homecoming, Independent travel, Workers' travel programs* and *Travelers' writings* (all part of the *Travel* grouping); *Forest canopy tourism, Geotourism, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Royal tourism, Volunteer tourism* and *Women in tourism* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping). Again, what do they mean? Is *Geotourism* trekking to high-points in every state/province and then checking it off from a list? Does *Royal tourism* mean excursions done by those of royal blood or by commoners visiting royal castles and palaces? Once again, LCSH does not offer any scope notes (but by clicking on the MARC record can try to decipher the 670-tag) (Library of Congress authorities 2014). [See Table 25.]

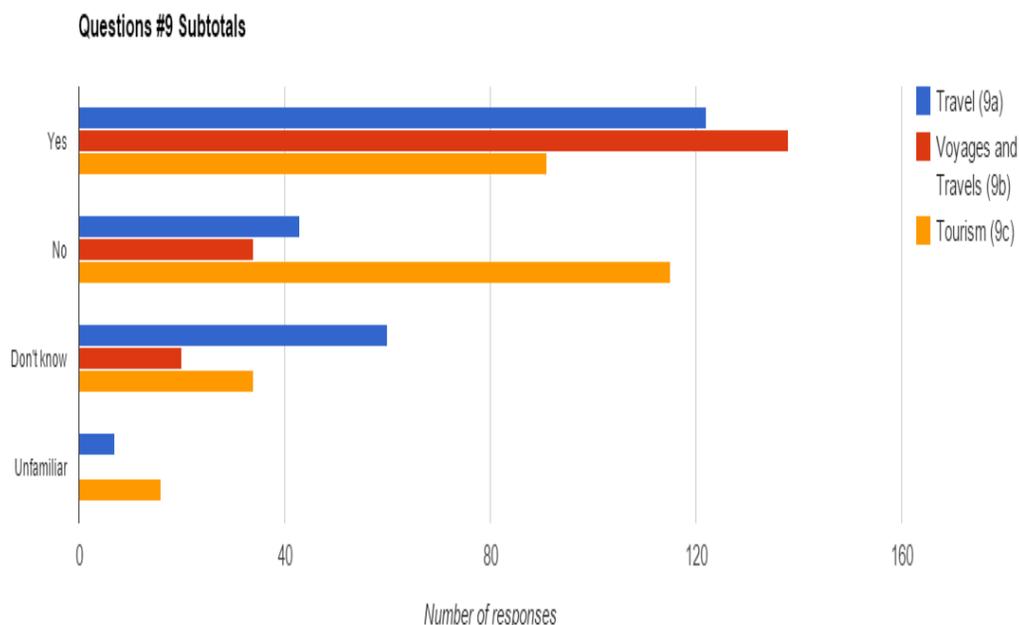
The following terms were Unfamiliar by 0% (0 archivists) of the respondents: *Travel, Adventure travel, Air travel, Astrology and travel, Automobile travel, Bicycle touring, Bus travel, Business travel, Games for travelers, International travel, International travel regulations, Interstellar travel, Luggage--packing, Motorcycle touring, Ocean travel, Pets and travel, Railroad travel, Teenage travel programs, Travel restrictions, Travelers' aid societies, Youth travel programs, Travel writing and Travel journalism* (all part of the *Travel* grouping); *Voyages and travels, Aeronautics--flights, Air travel, Buccaneers, Discoveries in geography, Grand tours (education), Literary journeys, Mountaineering expeditions, Ocean travel, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Quests (expeditions), Railroad travel, Scientific expeditions, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Space flights, Travel delays, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travel and Travelers* (all part of the *Voyages and travels* grouping); *Tourism, Architecture and tourism, Cruise lines, Culture and tourism, Customs administration and tourism, Ecotourism, Garden tours, Heritage tourism, Holocaust memorial tours, Indian tourism, Lake tourism, Music and tourism, Package tours, River tourism, Rural tourism, Sex tourism, Sightseeing business, Space tourism, Sports and tourism, Sustainable tourism, Wine tourism, National tourism organizations* and *Travel* (all part of the *Tourism* grouping). There were no 100%, 75%, 63%, 50% or 38% responses for Unfamiliar. [See Table 25.]

Table 25: Highest Unfamiliar Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	<i>Travel</i> Grouping	<i>Voyages and travels</i> Grouping	<i>Tourism</i> Grouping
88%			<i>Dark tourism</i>
25%	<i>Signs and symbols for travelers</i>		<i>Holistic tourism</i>
12%	<i>Caravans, Homecoming, Independent travel, Workers' travel programs, Travelers' writings</i>		<i>Forest canopy tourism, Geotourism, Medical tourism, Outfitting industry, Royal tourism, Volunteer tourism, Women in tourism</i>

There were no Unfamiliar terms in the *Voyages and travels* grouping. It could mean that these terms were all rather self-explanatory. The ease of these terms, plus their popular usage (contrasted with the *Travel* and *Tourism* groupings), make them prime candidates for travel subject description. There are also four terms (from the *Travel* grouping) which are repeated, and therefore part of, in the *Voyages and travels* grouping: *Travel*, *Air travel*, *Ocean travel* and *Railroad travel*.

Chart 9: Question #9 Subtotals



5.3.2 User Questionnaires

The researcher conducted written surveys (using questionnaires via the post) [see Appendix A], in 2015, with users of APS' (2 respondents), Penn's (4), PHS' (3) and HSP's (3) travel-related collections. The researcher identified users from publically available lists of past research fellows (APS and PHS) and recommendations from repository staff (Penn and HSP). He sent out 34 invitations to participate (plus follow-up requests) and received 14 positive replies (41%) ($n = 14$). Of those, 12 (84% of the positive replies and 35% of those invitations originally sent out) were deemed eligible to proceed. The pool of researchers using travel-related collections is a shallow one from the onset. Neuman states that for a mail survey, a response rate of 10-50% is common (Newman 1997:247).

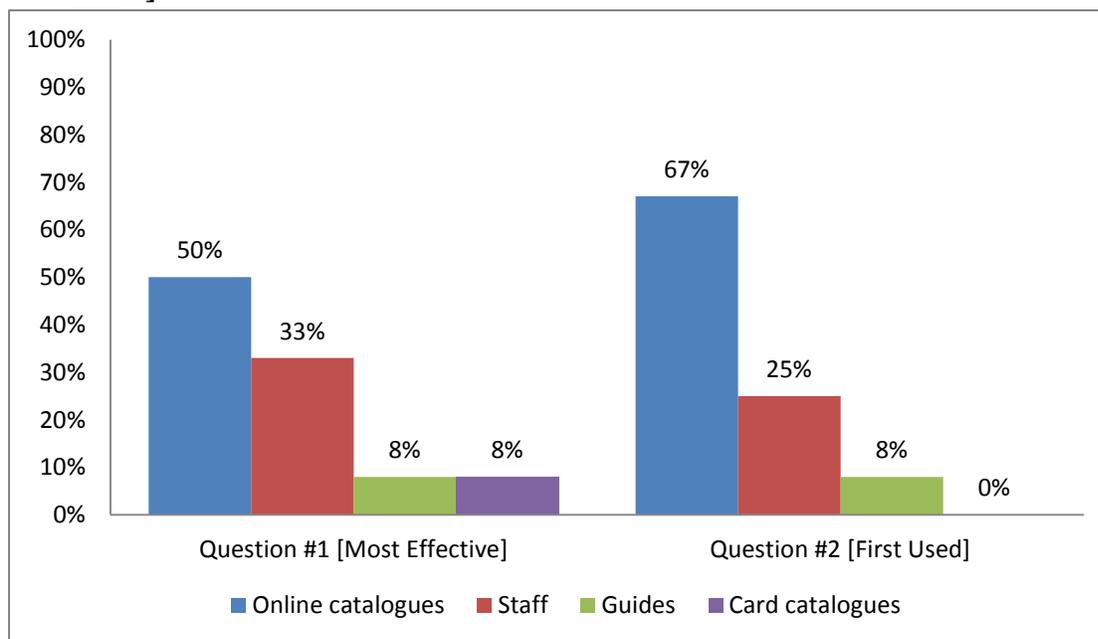
The researcher sent out 12 questionnaires, under an explanatory letter, with self-addressed, stamped envelopes. He received 12 completed questionnaires. Fifty-eight of the respondents were male; 42% were female. Seventeen percent were users of the American Philosophical

Society; 33% were users of the University of Pennsylvania Museum Archives; 25% were users of the Presbyterian Historical Society; 25% were users of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

There were several clear conclusions from the users' Questionnaire. For Question #1, online catalogues/databases received the highest single "most effective" (#1 of a 4-rank scale) rating with 50%. Consulting staff came in second with a 33% #1 ranking. Published guides received only 8% for a #1 ranking as did card catalogues. [See Chart 10.] Although published guides had a 50% #2 rating, card catalogues had none. The overall rankings for the four access points were online catalogues/databases, staff, published guides and then card catalogues. Card catalogues also garnered the most "least effective" (#4 of a 4-rank scale) rating with 75%. [See Appendix E for the full responses for Question #1.]

Similarly, of the four access points, card catalogues were the one ranked last of sources to use. Looking at this category (Question #2) more positively, online catalogues/databases were the first access point chosen by 67% of the users. Using staff came in next with 25%; published guides came in third (8%). [See Chart 10.] These results mirrored the results for Question #1, above. [See Appendix E for the full responses for Question #2.]

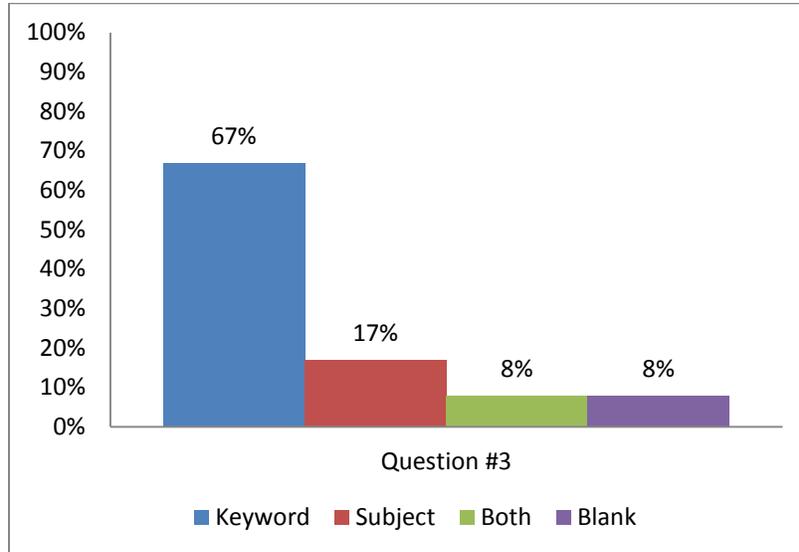
Chart 10: User Questionnaire Questions 1 [Most Effective Access Tool] & 2 [Access Tool Used First]



Question #3 revealed an overwhelming leaning towards using a keyword search over a subject search, 67% vs. 17%, with 8% indicating both and 8% leaving it blank. [See Chart 11.] When responding to a follow-up "Why" to Question #3, most identified keyword searching as being more versatile (it "will search subject field as well") and easier to identify than standardised terms ("subject sometimes must be in an exact syntax match"). For those commenting on subject searching, one said that "subject search always delivers enormous amounts of information,

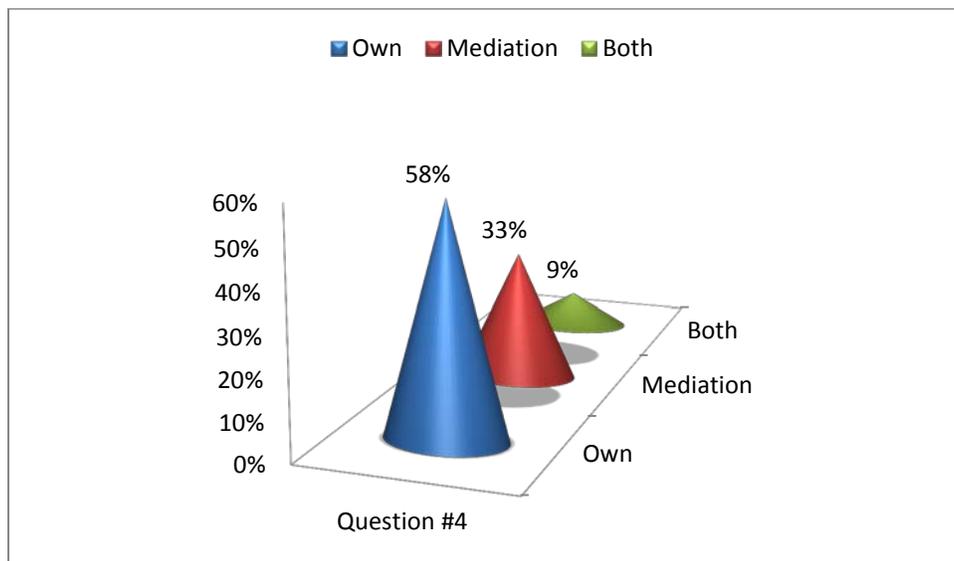
mostly irrelevant to my research." [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #3.]

Chart 11: User Questionnaire Question 3



Question #4 showed a propensity for users to use archival access points on their own [see Chart 12] instead of seeing staff mediation, 58% vs. 33%, with 9% indicating both. [See Appendix E for the full responses for Question #4.]

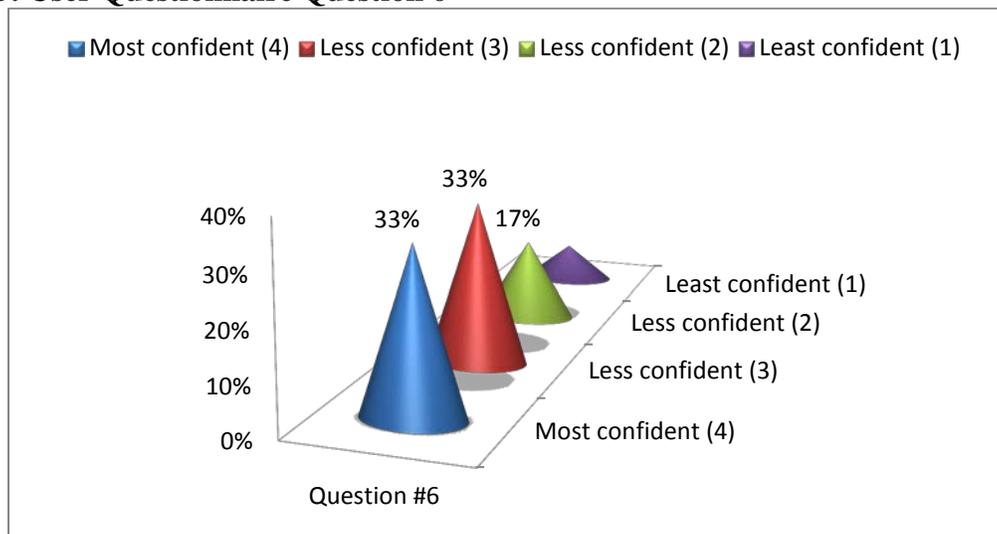
Chart 12: User Questionnaire Question 4



For the fifth question, only one respondent indicated their use of online catalogues/databases and/or published guides prior to commencing their site visits resulted in a "did not meet expectations" experience. Users were generally very satisfied that their application of these

access points resulted in their expectations being met or exceeded. Linked with this figure is the level (Question #6) of confidence users had with online searching tools. Thirty-three percent ranked themselves as a #4 (most confident); 33% as a #3; 17% as a #2; 8% as a #1 (least confident). [See Appendix E for the full responses for Questions #5-6.] This is similar to results found by Daniels and Yakel. In looking at online finding aids, Daniels and Yakel found that “users are confused by archival terminology and practice” and that this confusion leads to problems navigating through these access tools (Daniels & Yakel 2010:540). But more importantly, it is the comfort level of the researchers using these online tools which may be the primary motive for success (Daniels & Yakel 2010:540). [See Chart 13.]

Chart 13: User Questionnaire Question 6

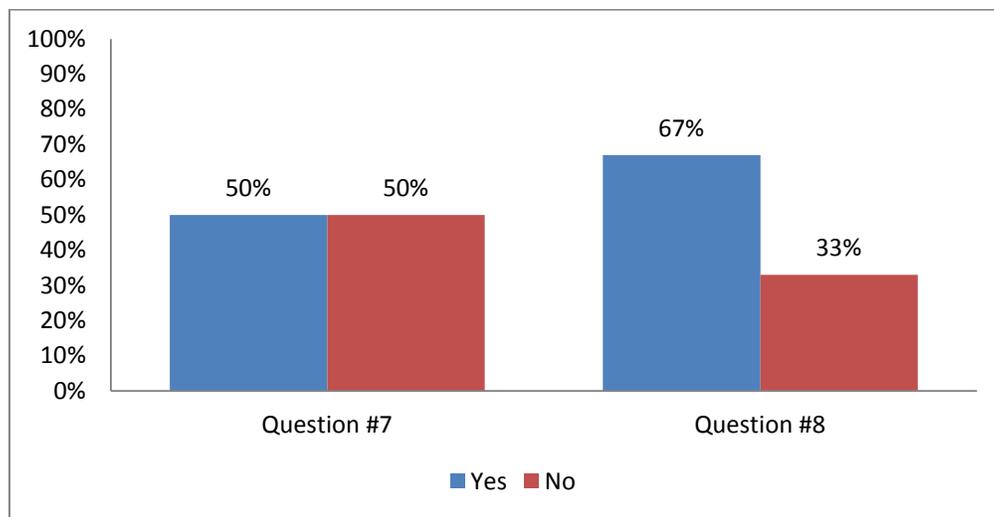


Question #7 showed that users were evenly split when asked if they used travel-related subject terms in their research: 50% Yes; 50% No. [See Chart 14.] When asked about what travel terms they used, they were actually not standard travel terms (for the purpose of this thesis, anyway). Of those who reported Yes, they were asked to list the travel terms they used. Most of the terms they listed were very specific to their research, actually not from the list of 80 travel terms studied in this project. Only *Travel* was a direct term match. One researcher also identified using the standard travel subfield term *Description and travel*. One, though cited specific names, used terms which included the word "expedition," which is part of a few travel terms: *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Quests (expeditions)* and *Scientific expeditions*. Another used versions of the word "transportation" [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.]

Likewise, for Question #8, the terms users listed as being genre/form were not necessarily standard genre/form terms (even though 67% indicated a Yes response to the question "Did you use genre/form terms when searching?" versus 33% who indicated a No response. [See Chart 14.] In the follow-up question for those who replied Yes, they were asked which terms they used. They often used a combination of primary and subfield genre/form terms, including: diaries, journals, personal narratives, correspondence, memoirs, photographs, archives, etc. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results.] "Memoirs," "Journals," "Narratives,"

“Correspondence” and “Photographs” are not primary genre/form terms. Rather, the Library of Congress uses *Autobiographies*, *Diaries*, *Personal narratives*, *Personal correspondence* and *Photobooks*, respectively. “Travel” is also not a primary genre/form term, but *Travel writing* is. However, *Travel* is a personal subject subfield, as in: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$x Travel” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014). Likewise, while “Archives” is not a 655 genre/form term, it is a subfield genre/form term when paired with a personal subject: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Archives.” *Diaries* is both a 655 genre/form term and a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Diaries.” And while “Correspondence” is not a 655 genre/form term (although *Personal correspondence* is), *Correspondence* is a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Correspondence” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014). [See Appendix E for the full responses for Question #8.]

Chart 14: User Questionnaire Questions 7 & 8



5.3.3 Finding Aids

The researcher evaluated the quality and construction of finding aids. The American Philosophical Society had its own manual (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012). The finding aid components consisted of: abstract, biographical note, scope and content note, provenance, processing information, genre, geographic names, personal names, subjects. For subjects, they offered this caveat “You should not and cannot note all terms, names, and headings in a collection” (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012:25). But when one does, terms should be constructed according to the rules of DACS [*Describing Archives: A Content Standard*] (Society of American Archivists 2013), using Library of Congress Subject Headings. The Penn Museum also had an archival processing guide (Penn Museum 2009). It stated that a finding aid should consist of the following parts: biography, collection scope and content note, additional descriptive data, detailed box and folder list and controlled access terms. The controlled access terms included general and genre. The general were those which “describe what is in the collection including geographic places, well-known people, important events, and general subjects. Any topic that a researcher might be interested in and that the collection would

provide valuable information about should be listed” (Penn Museum 2009:17). For genre terms they used the *Getty Art & Architecture Thesaurus* (Getty Research Institute 2011). The Presbyterian Historical Society did not have a processing manual (Brock, telephone interview, 25 March 2015). But they did adhere to archival standards and presented, as an example, the finding aid for the Wells Papers (Brock 2010) for consideration. The sections for a this PHS finding aid included: description summary, biographical note/administrative history, collection overview, organization and arrangement, related material, administrative information, preferred citation, catalog headings and collection inventory. Under catalog headings there were fields for personal name subject, corporate subject, topical subject, geographic subject, genre-form and personal added name.

The Historical Society of Pennsylvania used an archival processing manual originally conceived by HSP and APS in 2003 (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003), *CatMan*. The elements of the finding aid were: front matter (institutional identification, collection title, collection number, date range, extent, date of finding aid, copyright statement and institutional contact), abstract, language of material, background note, scope and content, arrangement, series description, digital archival objects, related materials, bibliography, separation report, access restrictions, user restrictions, acquisition information, custodial history, accruals, other finding aids, alternative format available, preferred citation, appraisal, processing information, other descriptive data, control access terms and detailed container listing (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:58-67). The control access terms included: subject terms, personal and corporate names and genre terms (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:66-67).

These four examples of finding aids mirrored the standard developed by the Society of American Archivists [SAA] (Society of American Archivists 2015). The SAA lists the following sections: title page, summary information, access and use, background information, scope and content and arrangement, subject terms, related materials and contents listing. Perhaps oddly, the SAA version only lists the following under subject terms: “This section includes a list of terms, topics, etc. covered in the collection and usually linked to a library catalog to provide the researcher with materials in similar categories” (Society of American Archivists 2015:3). But in neither this definition nor the examples they provide were there any genre terms.

5.4 Summaries and Recommendations

This summary [Section 5.4.1] groups the test populations into three main data sets: databases, repositories and people. The recommendation section [5.4.2] provides six suggestions to archivists and manuscript librarians which should alleviate the problem of subject access to travel-related collections.

5.4.1 Overall Summary of the Test Populations

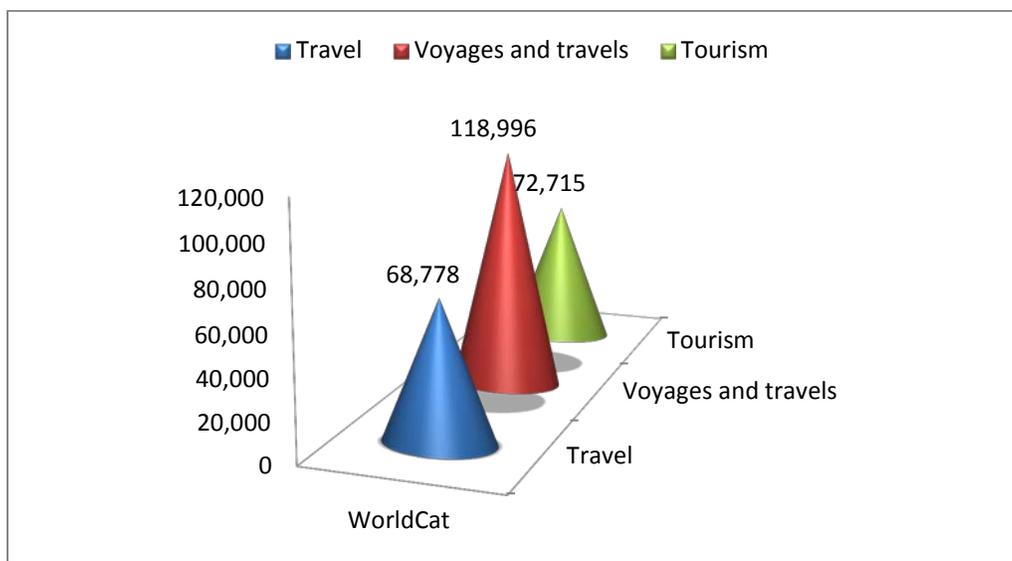
Based on the study of databases, repositories, archivists and users, there are two main criteria which need to be addressed in any set of recommendations for effective travel subject access: A) there needs to some version of the word “travel” in a MARC record and/or the archival finding

aid and B) there needs to be some indication of a genre/format, of the item, in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid.

5.4.1.1 The Databases

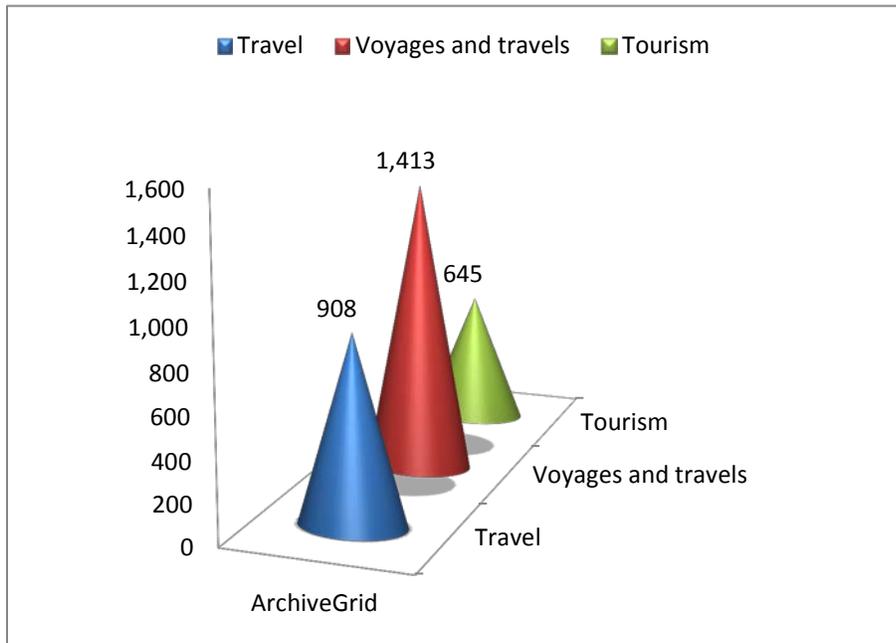
Archival records on WorldCat represented the largest data population set in this doctoral study. There were 260,489 [134,211 after removing terms repeated in more than one grouping] total travel-related hits during the study of MARC records. Of these, 68,778 hits were in the *Travel* grouping; 118,996 were in the *Voyages and travels* grouping and 72,715 were in the *Tourism* grouping. [See Chart 15.] Some individual terms had zero hits: *Travel journalism*, *Dark tourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Holistic tourism* and *Holocaust memorial tours*.

Chart 15: WorldCat Results



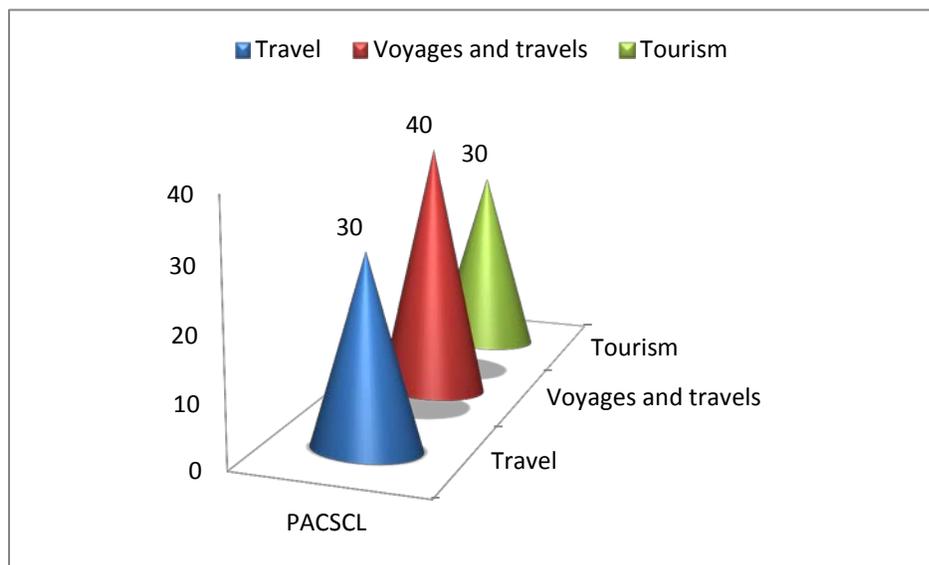
The second largest data population set was from ArchiveGrid records of finding aids. There were 2966 [1619 after removing terms repeated in more than one grouping] total travel-related hits during the study of finding aids. Of these, 908 hits were in the *Travel* grouping; 1413 were in the *Voyages and travels* grouping and 645 were in the *Tourism* grouping. [See Chart 16.] Some individual terms had zero hits: *Adventure travel*, *Astrology and travel*, *Caravans*, *Games for travelers*, *Independent travel*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage--packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Pets and travel*, *Signs and symbols for travelers*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Workers' travel programs*, *Youth travel programs*, *Travel journalism*, *Literary journeys*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Travel delays*, *Architecture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Dark tourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Geotourism*, *Heritage tourism*, *Holistic Tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Indian tourism*, *Lake tourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Outfitting industry*, *Package tours*, *River tourism*, *Royal tourism*, *Rural tourism*, *Sex tourism*, *Sightseeing business*, *Space tourism*, *Sports and tourism*, *Sustainable tourism*, *Volunteer tourism*, *Women in tourism* and *National tourism organizations*.

Chart 16: ArchiveGrid Results



The smallest data population set was from PACSCL records of finding aids. There were 100 [48 after removing terms repeated in more than one grouping] total travel-related hits during the study of finding aids. Of these 30 hits were in the *Travel* grouping; 40 were in the *Voyages and travels* grouping and 30 were in the *Tourism* grouping. [See Chart 17.] Some individual terms had zero hits: *Adventure travel*, *Air travel*, *Astrology and travel*, *Automobile travel*, *Bicycle touring*, *Business travel*, *Caravans*, *Games for travelers*, *Homecoming*, *Independent travel*, *International travel*, *International travel regulations*, *Interstellar travel*, *Luggage--packing*, *Motorcycle touring*, *Ocean travel*, *Pets and travel*, *Railroad travel*, *Signs and symbols for travelers*, *Teenage travel programs*, *Travel restrictions*, *Travelers' aid societies*, *Workers' travel programs*, *Youth travel programs*, *Travel journalism*, *Buccaneers*, *Discoveries in geography*, *Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)*, *Seafaring life*, *Travel delays*, *Voyages around the world*, *Voyages to the Pacific coast*, *Adventure and adventurers*, *Architecture and tourism*, *Cruise lines*, *Culture and tourism*, *Customs administration and tourism*, *Dark tourism*, *Ecotourism*, *Forest canopy tourism*, *Garden tours*, *Geotourism*, *Holistic Tourism*, *Holocaust memorial tours*, *Indian tourism*, *Lake tourism*, *Medical tourism*, *Music and tourism*, *Outfitting industry*, *Package tours*, *River tourism*, *Royal tourism*, *Rural tourism*, *Sex tourism*, *Sightseeing business*, *Space tourism*, *Sports and tourism*, *Sustainable tourism*, *Volunteer tourism*, *Wine tourism*, *Women in tourism* and *National tourism organizations*.

Chart 17: PACSCL Results



In looking at the results of the bibliometric studies for the international databases, one can draw several conclusions. For WorldCat there are five main points: 1) manuscript cataloguers are relying on the general travel terms of *Travel*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism* (and *Seafaring life*), 2) manuscript cataloguers use *Diaries* more frequently as a genre subfield than *Archives*, 3) manuscript cataloguers do not significantly use *Archives* or *Journals* as a primary genre/form term when paired with other travel terms, 4) manuscript cataloguers do not use multiple travel subject terms within a single record and 5) there is robust use of the subfield *Description and travel* by manuscript cataloguers. For ArchiveGrid, it is clear that archivists are perhaps relying more on researchers using free-text searching of the finding aid than on applying detailed subject access for their assistance.

For the regional PACSCL database, one can conclude (like with ArchiveGrid) that archivists are perhaps relying more on researchers using free-text searching of the finding aid than on applying detailed subject access for their patrons.

5.4.1.2 The Repositories

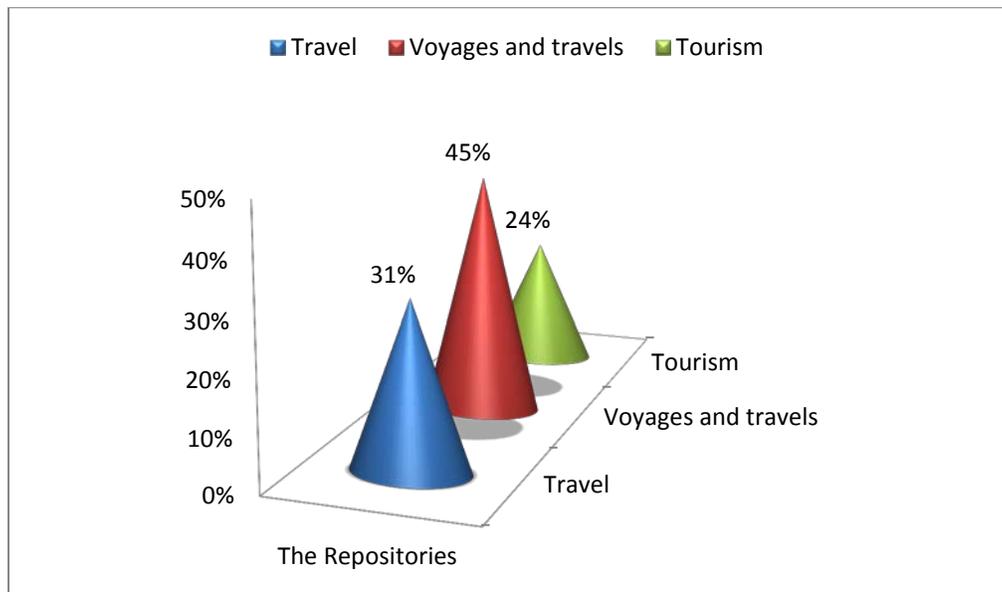
For the four site visits, the results were similar (yet varied from institution to institution). For example, for an archive with so many papers of early exploration and scientific investigation, there were proportionally few uses of travel-related LCSH terms at the American Philosophical Society. Like the Penn Museum and the Presbyterian Historical Society, they do not consider their collections as “travel.” Their collections had a purpose and that purpose was the advancement of science. There was, however a liberal use of *Description and travel* as a geographical subfield.

Like the American Philosophical Society and the Presbyterian Historical Society, the Penn Museum, on the surface, does not have any material that documents travel. Yet, the very nature of scientific expeditions implies some sort of travel. But they do not view their collections as being travel collections. In the case of the Museum, they are viewed as scientific. Their cataloguing reflects this bent.

The third member of the “no-travel-archives-here club” is the Presbyterian Historical Society. With hundreds of collections by eager and earnest Presbyterian foreign missionaries, there is a surprising paucity of records with travel-related subject access. The archivists at PHS share their missionaries’ zeal in outlining and characterising their true mission: evangelical, medical and educational -- not travel. Therefore, primary subject access would not reflect travel. Like APS and Penn, it is only through staff mediation that someone searching for travel would be made aware that basically all of the foreign missionary archives are travel-related, whether or not they have travel-related subject access.

The Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] is unabashedly proud of its travel-related archives. HSP is rich in two types of travel documentation: leisure and immigration. The Historical Society knows that these are travel accounts and strives to provide access accordingly. When one compares all of the four repositories (Historical Society of Pennsylvania, American Philosophical Society, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Penn Museum) for the three groupings of travel-related terms, the results are clear that *Voyages and travels* is by far the most popular of the three groupings (45% compared with Travel with 31% and Tourism at 24%). [See Chart 18.]

Chart 18: Repositories Results



The four examples of finding aids, from the targeted Philadelphia institutions, mirrored the standard developed by the Society of American Archivists [SAA] (Society of American Archivists 2015). The SAA advocates the following sections for inclusion: title page, summary information, access and use, background information, scope and content and arrangement, subject terms, related materials and contents listing. These archives meet or exceed these standards.

5.4.1.3 The People (Archivists and Users)

Half of the archivists surveyed with the Interview Schedule softened their hard lines to what they considered travel archives over the course of this study. The other half remained steadfast in their stances: one archive dismissing the travel aspect of their collections and the other reveling in their abundance of travel collections. Archivists from all the repositories reported use of their collections for travel. The archivists, in near unison, believe that their online access points were the best way to mine their collections. [See Appendix D for the full responses.]

Given how the four repositories process archival material, the current American archival trend of using More Product, Less Process (Greene & Meissner 2005) really did not effect them. They were, however, in agreement that there would have to be some documentation in the finding aid narrative, concerning travel, in order for a travel subject term, irrespective of the grouping (*Travel, Voyages and travelers* or *Tourism*) or location (primary or subfield), to be present.

The archivists did not need to be convinced to use genre/form terms (655-tag). They use them regularly. On the topic of subject access, personal names (600-tag), institutional names (610), topics (650) and geographic locations (651), the archivists were open to using them all to the degree which the collection necessitates.

The following *Travel* (plus narrower and associated) terms had 100% positive collection cognition rates with the archivists: *Travels, Business travel* and *International travel and Ocean travel*. The following *Voyages and travels* (plus narrower and related) terms had 100% positive collection cognition rates with the archivists: *Voyages and travels, Ocean travel, Voyages to the Pacific coast, Adventure and adventurers* and *Travel* (which is also a related term for *Voyages and travels*). Only *Travel* (which is also a related term for *Tourism*) represented the *Tourism* grouping. [See Table 26.]

Table 26: 100% Yes Responses by Archivists

Percentage of Archivists Surveyed	<i>Travel</i> Grouping	<i>Voyages and travels</i> Grouping	<i>Tourism</i> Grouping
100%	<i>Travel, Business travel, International travel, Ocean travel</i>	<i>Voyages and travels, Ocean travel, Voyages to the Pacific Coast, Adventure and adventurers, Travel</i>	<i>Travel</i>

For the archivists, the *Voyages and travels* grouping had the best results: the highest of the Yes rating for collection cognition, the lowest No rating for collection cognition, the lowest Don't Know rating for collection cognition and absolutely no responses for the Unfamiliar [with the term] rating. [See Appendix D for the full responses.]

For the users there were several clear conclusions [see Appendix E for the full Questionnaire responses]. The overall rankings for the four access points were online catalogues/databases, staff, published guides and then card catalogues. Card catalogues also garnered the most "least

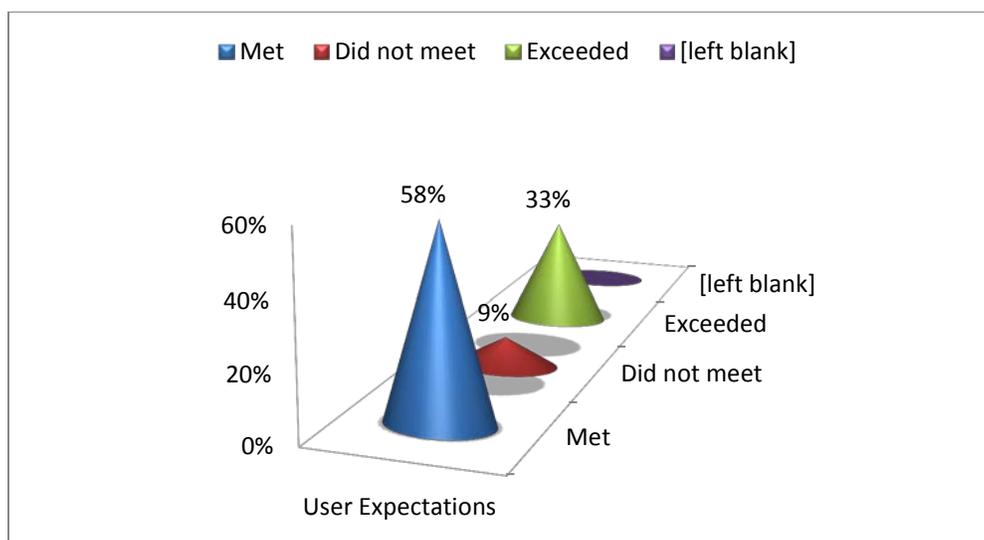
effective" (#4 of a 4-rank scale) rating with 75%. Eight percent ranked them as "most effective," while 17% wrote in "not applicable."

Similarly, of the four access points, card catalogues were the one ranked last of sources to use. Looking at this category more positively, online catalogues/databases were the first access point chosen by users (67%). Using staff came in next with 25%; published guides came in third (8%).

Users revealed an overwhelming leaning towards using a keyword search over a subject search, 67% vs. 17%, with 8% indicating both and 8% leaving it blank. Users showed a propensity to use archival access points on their own instead of seeing staff mediation, 58% vs. 33%, with 9% indicating both.

Users were generally very satisfied that their use of these access points resulted in their expectations being met or exceeded. [See Chart 19.] They also revealed a high level of confidence with the use of online searching tools. Thirty-three percent ranked themselves as a #4 (most confident); 33% as a #3; 17% as a #2; 8% as a #1 (least confident).

Chart 19: User Expectations



Users were fairly split when asked if they used travel-related subject terms in their research: 50% Yes; 50% No. When asked about what travel terms they used, they were actually not using standard travel terms. Likewise, the terms users listed as being genre/form were not necessarily standard genre/form terms (even though 67% indicated a Yes response to the question "Did you use genre/form terms when searching?" versus 33% who indicated a No response). [See Appendix E for the full responses.]

5.4.2 Recommendations

Based on the study of databases, repositories, archivists and users, there are two main criteria which need to be addressed in any set of recommendations for effective travel subject access: A) there needs to be some version of the word “travel” in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid and B) there needs to be some indication of a genre/format, of the item, in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid. To that end, below are six recommendations:

- 1) Archivists and manuscript librarians should use *Description and travel* liberally as a geographic subfield.
- 2) Archivists and manuscript librarians should concentrate on the second grouping of travel terms, *Voyages and travels*, in selecting subject terms for their finding aids or subject tracings for an archival MARC record for their travel-related collections.
- 3) Archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form primary terms.
- 4) Archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subject subfields.
- 5) Archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subject (650) terms and subfields (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which mimic natural keywords for travel-related collections.
- 6) Archivists and manuscript librarians should not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources.

5.4.2.1 Use *Description and travel* liberally as a Geographic Subfield

When archivists were asked if they used travel-related subject access terms in primary fields or subfields, 37% the respondents said Primary, 38% reported Subfields; 25% chose both Primary and Subfields. [See Appendix D for the full Questionnaire results for Question #6.] This result indicates a willingness to use a travel term in a geographic subfield.

When users were asked if they used travel-related subject terms in their research, 50% said Yes; 50% reported No. Of those who reported Yes, they were asked to list the travel terms they used. Most of the terms they listed were very specific to their research, actually not from the list of 80 travel terms studied in this project. Only *Travel* was a direct term match. One researcher also identified using the standard travel subfield term *Description and travel*. One, though citing specific names, used terms which included the word "expedition," which is part of a few travel terms: *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Quests (expeditions)* and *Scientific expeditions*. Another used versions of the word "transportation" [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.] This result indicates a willingness of researchers to use terms in a geographical subfield.

There was a healthy use of the subfield *Description and travel* in the four target repositories. For example, a positive aspect of the APS' online catalogue is that it is a frequent user of the subfield *Description and travel* after a geographic designation, with 132 hits when one searches for the subfield *Description and travel* (American Philosophical Society 2015). Likewise, HSP's

Discover catalogue uses liberally the subfield *Description and travel*. In doing a search on that exact subject phrase, 159 manuscript records were revealed (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2015).

Staff at the Presbyterian Historical Society indicated more willingness to use *Description and travel* as a subfield rather than a standard travel term as a primary (Bock & Barr, personal interview, 20 January 2015). This is an easy remedy and does not commit a repository to identify an entire collection as travel (with a 650 travel term), but rather allows them to, accurately, state that a geographic designation contains information regarding description and travel.

While the American Philosophical Society also advocates using *Discovery and exploration* as a geographic subfield (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012:24), this is not as good as *Description and travel*. The most obvious reason is that *Description and travel* contains the word “travel.” A slightly less pressing reason is that this term, *Discovery and exploration*, limits the researcher to only one of four types of travel archives covered in this thesis: exploration (the others being scientific expeditions, religious, and leisure/immigration).

These four repositories hold material representing four distinct types of travel: the American Philosophical Society (geographic exploration), the University Museum of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology (scientific expedition), Presbyterian Historical Society (foreign missionary) and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (leisure and immigration). There are, of course, overlaps. The American Philosophical Society also holds scientific expedition collections. The Historical Society of Pennsylvania also contains exploration collections. But, generally, these categories hold.

Using *Description and travel* as a subfield is an easy remedy and does not commit a repository to identify an entire collection as travel (with a 650 travel term), but rather allows archivists and manuscript librarians to, accurately, state that a geographic designation contains information regarding description and travel.

5.4.2.2 Concentrate on the Second Grouping of Travel Terms: *Voyages and travels*

As reported in Section 5.4.2.1, when archivists were asked if they used travel-related subject access terms in primary fields or subfields, 37% of the respondents said Primary, 38% reported Subfields; 25% chose both Primary and Subfields. [See Appendix D for the full Questionnaire results for Question #6.] This result indicates a willingness to use a travel term in a primary subject field. But it is unrealistic to suggest that archivists memorize the 80 travel-related subject access terms. And, of course, some of these are just down-right odd and will probably never be used (i.e. *Games for travelers*, *Forest canopy tourism*, etc.), but boning up on 24 travel terms is a much more reasonable suggestion.

As mentioned in Section 5.4.2.1, when users were asked if they used travel-related subject terms in their research, 50% said Yes; 50% reported No. Of those who reported Yes, they were asked

to list the travel terms they used. Most of the terms they listed were very specific to their research, actually not from the list of 80 travel terms studied in this project. Only *Travel* was a direct term match. One, though citing specific names, used terms which included the word "expedition," which is part of a few travel terms: *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Quests (expeditions)* and *Scientific expeditions*. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.] This result indicates a willingness of researchers to use primary terms in searching for collections.

Of the three groupings of travel-related subject terms, the *Voyages and travels* group, from this study, seemed to be the one most frequently used. This grouping covers the three ways of travelling: air (*Aeronautics--flights*, *Air travel*, *Space flights*), land (*Mountaineering expeditions*, *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, *Railroad travel*) and water (*Buccaneers*, *Ocean travel*, *Seafaring life*, *Shipwrecks*, *Voyages around the world*, *Voyages to the Pacific coast*). Plus there is the generic related term of *Voyages and travels: Travel*. It also classifies individuals (*Buccaneers*, *Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*, *Quests (expeditions)* [if one agrees that this term refers to knights and their adventures] -- and the related terms *Adventure and adventurers* and *Travelers*). It covers the sciences (*Discoveries in geography*, *Mountaineering expeditions*, *Scientific expeditions*), the arts (*Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*), religion (*Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*) and mishaps (*Shipwrecks*, *Travel delays*).

Not only was the *Voyages and travels* grouping clearly the most versatile of the three groupings according to the archivists' Interview Schedule, it was the grouping highest used (combining all of the access points from the site visits) at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, Presbyterian Historical Society and the University of Pennsylvania Museum. Only at the American Philosophical Society did it not come in as the most used grouping (coming in second to the *Travel* group). Combining the four repositories, there were 1172 hits using the *Voyages and travels* grouping, 818 using the *Travel* grouping and 642 for the *Tourism* grouping.

For the four repository site visits, the *Voyages and travels* group certainly had the highest hits. For the Penn Museum it was the only category with any responses: 21. For the American Philosophical Society it came a close second (with 347 hits) to the *Travel* group (with 382). Not so at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. The *Voyages and travels* group certainly had the highest hits (729) compared to the *Travel* group (389) and the *Tourism* group (343). Likewise, *Voyages and travels* was the top grouping at the Presbyterian Historical Society (with 78 hits), compared to the *Travel* group (47) and the *Tourism* group (46).

Voyages and travels led the grouping with the online databases hits: 120,449 vs. 69,716 (*Travel* grouping) and 73,390 (*Tourism* grouping). Likewise for the finding aids, *Voyages and travels* was the grouping hit leader: 1453 vs. 938 (*Travel*) and 675 (*Tourism*).

Below are the Library of Congress' scope notes for each of the *Voyages and travels* grouping of terms (Library of Congress authorities 2014):

Voyages and travels: [no scope note]

Aeronautics--flights: [no scope note]

Air travel: [no scope note]

Buccaneers: Here are entered works on sea adventurers who preyed upon Spanish ships and settlements in the Caribbean area from the late 1500's to the early 1700's, but chiefly in the 17th century.

Discoveries in geography: [no scope note]

Grand tours (education): Here are entered works on extended tours of Europe made by upper-class British youth as part of their education.

Literary journeys: Here are entered works on travel to places related to authors' lives or to the settings of their works. Works on travel as a theme in literature are entered under *Travel in literature*.

Mountaineering expeditions: [no scope note]

Ocean travel: [no scope note]

Overland journeys to the Pacific: Here are entered accounts of the crossing of the continent under pioneer conditions, on foot, on horseback, by wagon, etc.

Papal visits: [no scope note]

Pilgrims and pilgrimages: [no scope note]

Quests (exhibitions): [no scope note, but LC does provide three dictionary meanings, along the line of: an adventurous expedition undertaken by a knight or knights to secure or achieve something]

Railroad travel: [no scope note]

Scientific expeditions: [no scope note]

Seafaring life: [no scope note]

Shipwrecks: [no scope note]

Space flights: Here are entered works giving accounts of events and experiences during specific manned space flights. General and technical works on manned space travel are entered under *Manned space flight*. Works on the physics and technical details of locomotion beyond the earth's atmosphere are entered under *Space flight*. General works on the scientific, technological, and engineering disciplines needed for the exploration of outer space are entered under *Astronautics*. General works on travel to the planets or to the stars are entered under **\$a** *Interplanetary voyages* or *Interstellar travel*.

Travel delays: [no scope note]

Voyages around the world: [no scope note]

Voyages to the Pacific coast: Here are entered works on sea voyages from the eastern part of the United States, around Cape Horn or across the Isthmus of Panama, primarily from the time of gold discovery until the completion of the transcontinental railroads.

Adventure and adventurers: [no scope note]

Travel: Here are entered works on the art of travel, etc. Works on voyages and travels are entered under the heading *Voyages and travels*.

Travelers: Here are entered works on people who take trips or journeys. Works on the traditionally itinerant peoples of Ireland, Scotland, England, and Wales are entered under *Irish Travellers (Nomadic people)*; *Scottish Travellers (Nomadic people)*; *English Travellers (Nomadic people)*; and *Welsh Travellers (Nomadic people)*.

It is unrealistic to suggest that archivists and manuscript librarians memorize the 80 travel-related subject access terms, but boning up on 24 travel terms is a much more reasonable recommendation.

5.4.2.3 Use Genre/form Primary Terms

When asked if they used genre/form terms when searching, 67% of users from this study reported Yes and 33% reported No. In the follow-up question for those who replied Yes, they were asked which terms they used. They often used a combination of primary and subfield genre/form terms, including: diaries, journals, personal narratives, correspondence, memoirs, photographs, archives, etc. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #8.] This result indicates a willingness of researchers to use genre/form terms.

Likewise, when asked if they used genre/form terms 88% of archivists reported Yes; 12% reported No. Of those that used genre/form terms, they were evenly split between Primary, Subfields or Both. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.] This result indicates a willingness of archivists to use genre/form terms in a primary field.

Also, Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) studied the use of genre/form designations on manuscript cataloguing. They explain that: “Form, genre, and physical characteristics are similar to each other in that each names object types or features rather than a specific subject matter” (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:303).

Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo encourage adding “form, genre, and physical characteristics” terms to MARC records for better access. They define “form” as a term designating historically and functionally specific kinds of materials (daybooks, diaries, journals, memoranda, etc.); “genre” (for their purposes, not the definition used in this thesis) designates a style and technique of the contents (biographies, essays, hymns, etc.); “physical characteristics” designate production techniques and materials (lithographs, daguerreotypes, velum, autographs, etc.) (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:303). They focus to two similar (and somewhat irritatingly interchangeable) tags: the 655 (genre/form, subject heading) and the 755 (physical characteristics, added entry). The problem is that some archives insist on using one or the other for their own purposes, irrespective of the guidelines. “But the availability of two [italics theirs] fields has also caused confusion in some communities about where to put certain terms” (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:309). Choosing which tag/s to use, and what terms go where, still appear to be based on interpretation of the archive.

Since the 1980s, the Library of Congress has been improving genre/form access (McKnight 2012: 290). “Memoirs,” “Journals,” “Narratives,” “Correspondence” and “Photographs” are not primary genre/form terms. Rather, the Library of Congress uses *Autobiographies*, *Diaries*, *Personal narratives*, *Personal correspondence* and *Photobooks*, respectively. “Travel” is also not a primary genre/form term, but *Travel writing* is. However, *Travel* is a personal subject subfield, as in: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$x Travel” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014). Likewise, while “Archives” is not a 655 genre/form term, it is a subfield genre/form term when paired with a personal subject: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Archives.” *Diaries* is both a 655 genre/form term and a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Diaries.” And while “Correspondence” is not a 655 genre/form term (although *Personal correspondence* is), *Correspondence* is a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Correspondence” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use 655 tags which reflect the documentation of travel: *Travel writing* (use for travel literature, travel narratives and travelogues), *Tourist maps* (and *Manuscript maps*, *Physical maps*, *Road maps* and *Geological maps* where appropriate), *Photobooks* (use for photo books and photograph books) and *Scrapbooks* (use for scrap albums and scrap books) (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

5.4.2.4 Use Genre/form Subject Subfields

As mentioned in Section 5.4.2.3, 67% of users from this study's survey reported using genre/form terms when searching online databases/catalogues (while only 33% reported No). In the follow-up question for those who replied Yes, they were asked which terms they used. They often used a combination of primary and subfield genre/form terms, including: diaries, journals, personal narratives, correspondence, memoirs, photographs, archives, etc. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #8.] This result indicates a willingness of researchers to use genre/form terms.

As reported in Section 5.4.2.3: when asked if they used genre/form terms, 88% of archivists reported Yes; 12% reported No. Of those that used genre/form terms, they were evenly split between Primary, Subfields or Both. [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #7.] This result indicates a willingness of archivists to use genre/form terms in a subfield.

One way to aid subject access to travel-related archives is to incorporate genre/form subfields (\$v) into the MARC records and finding aids. Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) concentrate their research and recommendations on the primary form of genre/form terms (655). There are also opportunities for genre/form terms as part of a 600 tag or 650 tag. For a substantial amount of material associated with an individual, one can use the subfield *Archives* (for example: "600 1 0 Smith, James \$v Archives"). For items which would not reach the definition of a full archive, one can match it with a more appropriate term, such as *Diaries* or *Correspondence* (for example: "600 1 0 Smith, James \$v Diaries" or "600 1 0 Smith, James \$v Correspondence").

Travel is also a personal subject subfield, as in: "600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$x Travel" (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014). Likewise, while "Archives" is not a 655 genre/form term, it is a subfield genre/form term when paired with a personal subject: "600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Archives." *Diaries* is both a 655 genre/form term and a genre/form subfield "600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Diaries." And while "Correspondence" is not a 655 genre/form term (although *Personal correspondence* is), *Correspondence* is a genre/form subfield "600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Correspondence" (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subfields which help define the physical collections.

5.4.2.5 Use Terms Which Mimic Natural Keywords for Travel-related Collections

Given that users of travel archival collections, as reported in this thesis, preferred to use keyword searching more than subject searching, archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical

subjects, personal subject subfields, and genre/form terms which are also natural keywords for travel-related collections. For the 655 tag, these include: *Diaries* (use for personal journals), *Personal Correspondence* (use for private correspondence, personal or private email, personal letters and personal mail), *Personal narratives* (use for personal accounts), *Periodicals* (use for journals [publications], magazines and periodical publications), *Photobooks* (use for photo books and photograph books) and *Scrapbooks* (use for scrap albums and scrap books) (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

When asked, when using an online catalogue or database, if they usually used a "keyword" or "subject" search, 67% from this study's user survey reported using a keyword search; 17% reported using a subject search; 8% checked off both of the choices or wrote in the word "both"; 8% did not respond at all.

When responding to a follow-up "Why" to this question, most respondents identified keyword searching was more versatile (it "will search subject field as well") and easier to identify than standardised terms ("subject sometimes must be in an exact syntax match" or "I was not confident that subject tags had been applied to all the data/files of interest"). For those commenting on subject searching, one said that "subject search always delivers enormous amounts of information, mostly irrelevant to my research." [See Appendix E for the full Questionnaire results for Question #3.]

In Chapter 2, the researcher looked at full-text searching. Archivists have been dealing with natural language searching (aka full-text) for so long that thinking back to the days of a controlled-only vocabulary may seem ancient to some users. Greenberg (1998) defines the basic IR [Information Retrieval] framework for NLP [Natural Language Processing] as indexing, query formulating, and matching. "Indexing involves constructing a document representation...[query] involves transferring a mental query...to a query representation...[and] match...seeks to compare and match the query representation to the document presentation...(Greenberg 1998:410-411). In one sense it takes away the human factor: "With NLP, the problem of inter-indexer inconsistency is nonexistent. An NLP operation will produce the same results, on the same document, every time...[but c]learly, an NLP operation is not always as accurate as a human in terms of 'understanding' a document's content" (Greenberg 1998:413). Another problem with NLP is relevancy, a weakness in Greenberg's terminology (Greenberg 1998:417). A shorter restatement is that one gets too much information back. If NLP often returns too many irrelevant results in searching databases, what alternative does a researcher have? Searching finding-aids-only databases would be helpful, as long as one can also narrow down the search results.

It is always helpful to relook the keyword vs. subject search debate. The researcher performed a secondary JSTOR search on this topic (JSOR 2015). One running debate in *American Libraries* focused on the relevance of browsing vs. controlled vocabulary. "I would argue that browsing controlled-vocabulary subject headings is another source of serendipity that is independent of where books are located, and that clever keyword searching on enhanced catalog records is yet another source of serendipity that is independent of where a book is located" (Sanders 2005:32). While serendipity is fine, information scientists would prefer someone more, well, scientific. "Libraries...take some of the most controlled vocabulary ever created...and wonder what a

keyword search can offer. Library science has not added much to keyword advancement, making its promise, if not mythical, then at least mystical” (Pace 2005:78). What does mythical and mystical even mean in this context? Pace clarifies with: “... the notion that relevant keyword searching and scholarly use of subject headings are somehow mutually exclusive diminishes the utility of both” (Pace 2005:78). Five years later, it was still being debated. Barclay advocated keyword searching because “... you can not only use keyword searching to overcome the limits of classification, you can also read abstracts and reviews on the spot ...” (Barclay 2010:54). Mott lumps both forms of searching under the problematic category: “... it is exceedingly difficult to hit on the exact keyword or subject search combinations to identify every conceivable item that may be pertinent to one’s research” (Vaver & Mott 2010:6).

Music cataloguers also weighed in on subject vs. keyword searching. Cassaro opined: “Subject searching has always been problematic regardless of the subject focus ... subject strings are not constructed ... are not intuitive, and as such render this mode of information access as severely inadequate” (Cassaro 2012:247).

However, there are well defined problems with keyword searching. According to Beall (2007:47), keyword searching is the number one cause of search fatigue: “... a feeling of frustration and dissatisfaction experienced by searchers trying unsuccessfully to find desired information in a database” (Beall 2007:47). The problems are multiple. Keyword searching is problematic because of synonyms, homonyms, common terms, vague terms, documents in other languages, relevancy ranking, search interfaces, typographical errors, incomplete data and even researchers themselves (Beall 2007:47-49). But all is not lost. Keyword searching works best when “... a complete search result is not needed; when one or two resources ... are sufficient; and when the information isn’t a crucial need for the searcher” (Beall 2007:49-50).

Joshua Sternfeld notes the dreaded blank search box: “How often do we come across the phrase ‘browse the archive’ with an empty search bar awaiting input from the user? Frequently this seeming innocuous activity can have an intimidating -- even panic-inducing! -- effect. What can I search for? Which terms are acceptable and which terms will produce zero results?” (Sternfeld 2011:557).

Keeping up with the best ways to provide access is not a simple endeavour. In a survey of continuing education needs of archivists, Park, Tosaka, Maszaros and Lu (2010:166) found that “...one of the major challenges facing cataloging and metadata professionals is how to keep up with the proliferation of metadata schemes and content standards in the current digital library settings” (Park, Tosaka, Maszaros & Lu 2010:166).

If, in the view of Beall (2007:50), “Keyword searching functions poorly...for serious information-seeking” (Beall 2007:50), why is it being recommended (albeit in the form of mimicry)? Is it because “Googling” it is now embedded in our common online connectedness? Simply put, researchers are going to try keywords anyway. Asking archivists and manuscript librarians to use terms which are both standardized and natural language would be useful for those attempting to use either.

5.4.2.6 Do Not Ignore or Dismiss Analogue Subject Access Resources

At the Presbyterian Historical Society, there were four matches for *Voyages and travels* in their card catalogue and 19 matches in the published *PCUS Manuscript Guide*, but none in either of their online resources (CALVIN [MARC records] or Archival Collections [finding aids]). Their card catalogue also showed one match for *Overland journeys to the Pacific* and three for *Pilgrims and pilgrimages* while their online resources revealed none for either category (Presbyterian Historical Society 2014b-d and 2015a-b; Benedetto 1990).

At the American Philosophical Society, there was one match for *Railroad travel* in the Post-1969 Card Catalogue but not in their online catalogue. Their published guide, *American Exploration*, showed 38 references for *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, but their online catalogue showed none (American Philosophical Society 2014a-b and 2015; Stanton 1991). Yet when the researcher first visited the repository, he was told by the first archivist (during the reference interview) that he need not use the card catalogue since everything had been scanned and was part of their online catalogue (Greifenstein, personal interview, 22 December 2014). However, when conducting a reference interview with the second archivist, the researcher was told that only proper names from the card catalogue were entered into the online catalogue, not subjects (Lutz, personal interview, 22 December 2014). Therefore, the researcher should check the card catalogue. The only issue was that the card catalogue was not in a public space, but rather in a staff area. It is literally unseen by any researcher who does not inquire about its existence.

Likewise, neither archivist at the APS recommended published guides during that first site visit. It was their reference librarian, perhaps not unsurprisingly, who not only recommended the published guides to their collections, but pulled them off the shelf and delivered them to the researcher's table (Goodman, personal interview, 22 December 2014).

At the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, there was one match for *Air travel* in their card catalogue but none in their online catalogue *Discover*. Likewise, there was a reference for *Interstellar travel* found in their manuscript card catalogue, but none in *Discover*.

For *Overland journeys to the Pacific*, there was one match in both their card catalogue and their published *Guide to Manuscripts*, but none in *Discover* (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 1991b, 2014b-c and 2015).

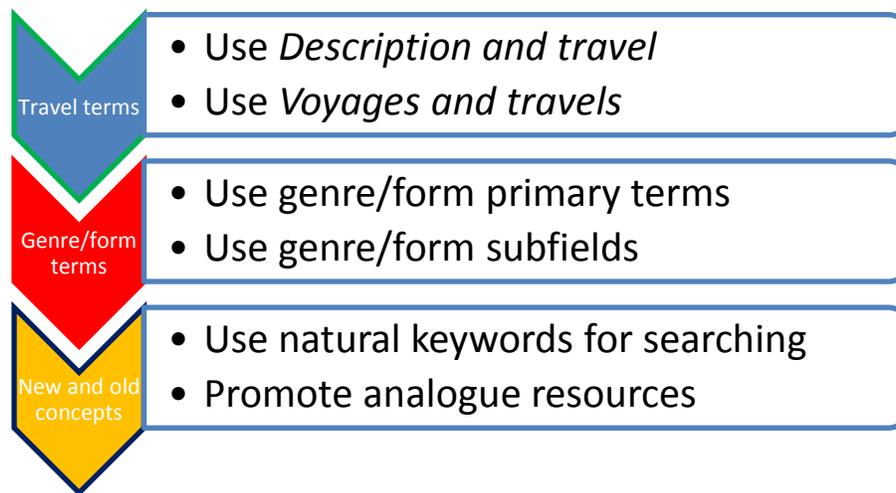
Just because an access does not exist online does not mean that it is archaic or obsolete. Archivists and manuscript librarians should encourage use of these analogue tools (as long as they are valid and relevant).

5.5 Conclusion

In this chapter the researcher interpreted the data presented in Chapter 4, looking specifically at the data population sets, grouped by databases, repositories and people. He provided six recommendations as remedies for the problem of subject access to travel-related collections: 1) Archivists and manuscript librarians should use *Description and travel* liberally as a geographic subfield, 2) should concentrate on the second grouping of travel terms, *Voyages and travels*, in selecting subject terms for their finding aids or subject tracings for an archival MARC record for

their travel-related collections, 3) should use genre/form terms (655), 4) should use genre/form subject subfields, 5) should use topical subjects (650) and subterms (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which are also natural keywords for travel-related collections and 6) should not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources.

Chart 20: The Recommendations



Using *Description and travel* as a subfield is an easy remedy and does not commit a repository to identify an entire collection as travel (with a 650 travel term), but rather allows archivists and manuscript librarians to, accurately, state that a geographic designation contains information regarding description and travel.

Of the three groupings of travel-related subject terms, the *Voyages and travels* group, from this study, seemed to be the one most frequently used. This grouping covers the three ways of travelling: air (*Aeronautics--flights, Air travel, Space flights*), land (*Mountaineering expeditions, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Railroad travel*) and water (*Buccaneers, Ocean travel, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast*). Plus there is the generic related term of *Voyages and travels: Travel*. It also classifies individuals (*Buccaneers, Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Quests (expeditions)* [if one agrees that this term refers to knights and their adventures] -- and the related terms *Adventure and adventurers* and *Travelers*). It covers the sciences (*Discoveries in geography, Mountaineering expeditions, Scientific expeditions*), the arts (*Grand tours (education), Literary journeys*), religion (*Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages*) and mishaps (*Shipwrecks, Travel delays*).

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use 655 tags which reflect the documentation of travel: *Travel writing* (use for travel literature, travel narratives and travelogues), *Tourist maps* (and *Manuscript maps, Physical maps, Road maps* and *Geological maps* where appropriate), *Photobooks* (use for photo books and photograph books) and *Scrapbooks* (use for scrap albums and scrap books) (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subfields which help define the physical collections. *Travel* is also a personal subject subfield, as in: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$x Travel” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014). Likewise, while “Archives” is not a 655 genre/form term, it is a subfield genre/form term when paired with a personal subject: “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Archives.” *Diaries* is both a 655 genre/form term and a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Diaries.” And while “Correspondence” is not a 655 genre/form term (although *Personal correspondence* is), *Correspondence* is a genre/form subfield “600 1 0 Smith, Robert \$v Correspondence” (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Given that users of travel archival collections, as reported in this thesis, preferred to use keyword searching more than subject searching, archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects, personal subject subfields, and genre/form terms which are also natural keywords for travel-related collections. For the 655 tag, these include: *Diaries* (use for personal journals), *Personal Correspondence* (use for private correspondence, personal or private email, personal letters and personal mail), *Personal narratives* (use for personal accounts), *Periodicals* (use for journals [publications], magazines and periodical publications), *Photobooks* (use for photo books and photograph books) and *Scrapbooks* (use for scrap albums and scrap books) (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014).

Just because an access does not exist online does not mean that it is archaic or obsolete. Archivists and manuscript librarians should encourage use of these analogue tools (as long as they are valid and relevant).

The next chapter (Chapter 6) looks at the entire project, noting how it met the problem, purpose, objectives and research questions of this thesis. Recommendations were made in this chapter to improve access to travel archives. In the next chapter, summations will also be made on the feasibility of applying these recommendations to other genre archives.

Chapter 6: Conclusion and Recommendations

6.1 Introduction

This chapter looks at the entire project, noting how it met the objectives of the thesis. In the previous chapter (Chapter 5) six recommendations were made to improve access to travel archives:

- 1) archivists and manuscript librarians should use *Description and travel* liberally as a geographic subfield,
- 2) archivists and manuscript librarians should concentrate on the second grouping of travel terms, *Voyages and travels*, in selecting subject terms for their finding aids or subject tracings for an archival MARC record,
- 3) archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form terms (655),
- 4) archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subject subfields,
- 5) archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects (650 terms) and subfields (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which are also natural keywords for travel-related collections and
- 6) archivists and manuscript librarians should not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources. In Chapter 6 summations are also made on the feasibility of applying these recommendations to other genre archives.

Due to inadequate subject description, it is often difficult for researchers to access travel archives. Travel archives are a form of genre archives. Archives are described by metadata (MARC [Machine-Readable Cataloguing] records, finding aids, path-finders, etc.). How, therefore, could metadata be applied in a more effective way to travel archives, to increase access? There is a secondary problem related to this first one: other genre archives also had access issues. How might a remedy, focusing on description, and in particular subject terms for better accessibility of travel archives, be applied to other genre archives?

The purpose of this research was to examine and describe gaps in the description of travel archives with the goal of better describing travel archives, in order to provide more efficient access. The same measures recommended to improve access to travel archives should also be beneficial, for example, to genealogical archives (another genre archive).

Bibliographic databases, archival repositories, archivists and researchers were the population sets for this study. For bibliographic databases they were represented by MARC records and finding aids; for archival repositories they were represented by four leading (but diverse) non-governmental archives; for archivists they were represented by archival employees of these institutions; and, for researchers they were represented by users of the collections of these four bodies. This study focused on paper-based travel archives, described in English, world-wide.

These travel archives also must have been at publicly accessible institutions. The overall method moved from larger to smaller data sets of populations. The largest quantitative set consisted of world-wide data on union databases. A smaller quantitative search was then conducted on regional online finding aids which may not have been represented on the larger union databases [see Section 3.7].

The smallest quantitative data set involved site visits to repositories which hold substantial travel-related archives [see Section 3.3.3]. These repositories represented, by the preponderance of their holdings, four typical types of travel-related documentation: exploration, scientific expedition, missionary, and leisure/relocation. The researcher spoke with archival and reference staff at each repository, inquiring about institutional histories, acquisitions, processing and cataloguing. He then used existing access points, gleaned from these conversations -- much as a first time researcher would, to discover the ease and breadth of locating travel-related archives at each repository.

The first conclusion from the rounds of WorldCat searching was that manuscript cataloguers were keeping with the big three terms (*Travel*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism*). A surprising exception to this finding was *Voyages and travels'* narrower term *Seafaring life*, which even exceeded *Tourism* in hits. *Voyages and travels'* narrower term *Overland journeys to the Pacific* also had significant hits.

The exception of *Seafaring life* most likely reflects travel between Great Britain, since one of the delimiters is collections in English only (la:eng), and the Americas, travel between Great Britain and its overseas colonial possessions, and the maritime industry (such as whaling). The exception of *Overland journeys to the Pacific* reflects American expansion from the Atlantic coast to its Pacific (including the famous Oregon and Santa Fé trails -- taking travellers to what are now the northwestern and southwestern parts of the United States), the migration of Mormons to the West to escape religious persecution and gold prospectors moving to California in search of fortune (Buck 2015).

A second conclusion from rounds of WorldCat searching was that manuscript cataloguers were still keeping with the big two terms (*Travel* and *Voyages and travels*) when paired up with the genre/form terms *Archives* and *Diaries*—with *Diaries* being used more significantly than *Archives*. Under *Tourism* there was basically no difference between *Diaries* and *Archives* when paired.

Another conclusion was the overwhelming use of *Diaries* as opposed to *Archives* as a genre/form sub-term when paired with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* and their sub- and associated/related terms. These rounds of WorldCat searches also indicated the lack of the use by archivists of *Archives* (or *Journals*) as a genre/form (655-tag) when combined with *Travel*, *Voyages and travels*, and *Tourism* (and their narrower or associated/related terms). One can conclude, from this test, that the use of multiple travel terms, in MARC records, was currently not heavily significant. However, when testing for the subject subfield *Description and travel*, that number (28,771) far out-paced any of the single primary travel-related terms (for example *Travel* with 11,080 similar hits).

Compared to the WorldCat search on *Description and travel* [Section 4.2.7], with 28,771 hits, ArchiveGrid's 97 hits seemed almost not worth mentioning. But what this was really revealing was that manuscript processors were not using subfields, when creating finding aids, in the same way that manuscript librarians had done when creating MARC records in WorldCat. When sometimes, at repositories, a prevalent [see Sections 4.5.7 and 4.7.6] use of the word "travel" was found as part of *Description and travel*, this could have been problematic in the future for access. As with other tests of the three primary categories of travel-related terms, *Tourism* (and its related and associated terms) bordered on the non-existent (with only 83 hits). The terms representing standard modes of travel, overland and over-water, still resulted in the highest hits: *Ocean travel* (144), *Railroad travel* (99), *Voyages and travels* (131), *Overland Journeys to the Pacific* (180) and *Voyages to the Pacific coast* (63) (OCLC ArchiveGrid 2015).

Ascertaining just how or why researchers used travel archives should aid archivists as they assign metadata. For instance, a researcher using a travel collection may not be interested in the travel aspect of it, but rather in some historical or cultural facet. This was certainly the case for travel-related items at the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum Archives and the Presbyterian Historical Society. Archivists were crucial in helping to identify researchers who used travel archives. These researchers were then queried on their use of the material [see Section 4.10.2].

For the users there were several clear conclusions [see Appendix E for the full Questionnaire responses]. The overall rankings for the four access points were online catalogues/databases, staff, published guides and then card catalogues. Similarly, of the four access points, card catalogues were the one ranked last of sources to use. Users revealed an overwhelming leaning towards using a keyword search over a subject search; users showed a propensity to use archival access points on their own instead of seeing staff mediation. Users were generally very satisfied that their use of these access points resulted in their expectations being met or exceeded. They also revealed a high level of confidence with the use of online searching tools.

Users were evenly split when asked if they used travel-related subject terms in their research: When asked about what travel terms they used, they were actually not using standard travel terms. Additionally, the terms users listed as being genre/form were not necessarily standard genre/form terms.[See Appendix E for the full responses.]

After assessing how metadata was currently being applied to travel archives and how researchers used or would like to use these materials, the researcher was able to suggest how travel archives could benefit from being better described, or at the very least described differently. Based on the study of databases, repositories, archivists and users, there were two main criteria which needed to be addressed in any set of recommendations for effective travel subject access:

A) there needed to some version of the word "travel" in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid and

B) there needed to be some indication of a genre/format, of the item, in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid.

Travel archives are just one type of genre archive. Genre archives are most often personal archives. The issues of research access are common to other forms of genre archives as well. This thesis held that remedies for accessing travel archives may also be applied to these other genre archives [see Section 6.4].

6.2 Meeting the Objectives of the Thesis

There were four overarching objectives to this research project: to assess the current state of metadata relating to travel archives; to ascertain how (or why) researchers use travel archives; to suggest how travel archives can be better described and to propose these remedies to other genre collections.

Travel archives are not easy to locate. In a similar vein, Perrone (2006) [see Chapter 2] knew there must have been archives of closed colleges run by Roman Catholic religious congregations (sisterhoods) in existence, but could not locate the records using traditional archival search terms. The researcher of this thesis also had difficulty locating travel archives using standard searching methods of union databases. Looking at the current state of metadata provided a clue as to why these collections proved to be elusive. In many cases, collections that should have had access points which included *Travel* as a subject term did not (OCLC WorldCat 2014) [see Sections 4.2 and 4.3].

6.2.1 Current State of Metadata

Quantitative population data sets consisted of searching MARC records and online finding aids in WorldCat, ArchiveGrid and PACSCL respectively. It also involved counting bibliographic citations at established access points during each site visit.

The researcher compared all of the three union databases (WorldCat, ArchiveGrid and the PACSCL finding aids) for the three groupings of travel-related terms. What was clear from these results was once again that *Voyages and travels* was by far the most popular of the three groupings (46% compared with *Travel* with 26% and *Tourism* at 28%). *Travel*, however, took second place to *Tourism*.

When comparing only the two finding aids union databases (ArchiveGrid and PACSCL) for the three groupings of travel-related terms, what became clear from these results was that *Voyages and travels* was still by far the most popular of the three groupings (47% compared with *Travel* with 31% and *Tourism* at 22%).

This grouping, *Voyages and travels*, covered the three ways of travelling: air (*Aeronautics--flights, Air travel, Space flights*), land (*Mountaineering expeditions, Overland journeys to the Pacific, Railroad travel*) and water (*Buccaneers, Ocean travel, Seafaring life, Shipwrecks, Voyages around the world, Voyages to the Pacific coast*). Plus there was the generic related term of *Voyages and travels: Travel*. It also classified individuals (*Buccaneers, Papal visits, Pilgrims and pilgrimages, Quests (expeditions)*) -- and the related terms *Adventure and adventurers* and *Travelers*). It covered the sciences (*Discoveries in geography, Mountaineering expeditions,*

Scientific expeditions), the arts (*Grand tours (education)*, *Literary journeys*), religion (*Papal visits*, *Pilgrims and pilgrimages*) and mishaps (*Shipwrecks*, *Travel delays*).

Applying subject access points is still a gold standard in manuscript processing (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003 and Mengel, Smerz & Grippe 2014). General terms (as well as more specific ones when warranted by archival content) not only hold value but are crucial for access. It is not an easy endeavour. Subject access is “...time consuming and tediously exacting” (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:28). The number of terms may vary based on the size and composition of the archival collection. The Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries [PACSCL], for example, recommends between five and ten “names, subjects and genres combined” (Mengel, Smerz & Grippe 2014:27). Not all archives follow this standard about adding subject headings. For instance, a newly minted finding aid from the Moravian Archives for their collection of missionary travel journals (McCullough 2014) contains no subject terms and only a name index at the end of the document.

As for the construction of finding aids, the American Philosophical Society has developed its own manual, after it had created a joint one with the Historical Society of Pennsylvania (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012). The finding aid components consist of: abstract, biographical note, scope and content note, provenance, processing information, genre, geographic names, personal names, subjects. For subjects, they offer this caveat “You should not and cannot note all terms, names, and headings in a collection” (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012:25). But when you do, terms should be constructed according to the rules of DACS [*Describing Archives: A Content Standard*] (Society of American Archivists 2013), using Library of Congress Subject Headings. When addressing geographic names, one of their examples covered travel: “Primary geographic areas covered by the collection should be included here. Examples include...Arctic regions – Discovery and exploration – American.” As for genre, their manual states that types of material included in the collection should be listed (Greifenstein, Downey, Lutz & Shrake 2012:24).

The Penn Museum developed an archival processing guide (Penn Museum 2009). The finding aid should consist of the following parts: biography, collection scope and content note, additional descriptive data, detailed box and folder list and controlled access terms. The controlled access terms include general and genre. The general ones are those which “describe what is in the collection including geographic places, well-known people, importation events, and general subjects. Any topic that a researcher might be interested in and that the collection would provide valuable information about should be listed” (Penn Museum 2009:17). For genre terms they use the *Getty Art & Architecture Thesaurus* (Getty Research Institute 2011).

The Presbyterian Historical Society did not have a processing manual (Brock 2015). But they did have archival standards and presented, as an example, the finding aid for the Wells Papers (Brock 2010). The sections for a typical PHS finding aid include: description summary, biographical note/administrative history, collection overview, organization and arrangement, related material, administrative information, preferred citation, catalog headings and collection inventory. Under catalog headings there are fields for personal name subject, corporate subject, topical subject, geographic subject, genre-form and personal added name. For the Wells papers

travel information was listed under “Thailand Description and travel” (Brock 2010:19). In the collection overview section, there was the following note: “The photograph albums series primarily documents the Wellses’ April 1930 journey to Baptist missions...in eastern Burma; their April 1931 journey to the Presbyterian mission station...in the Yunnan Province...; their 1931 travels through the Middle East, Europe, and Britain en route to New York” (Brock 2010:13). There were lots of travel reflected in the collection, but not a lot of subject access to it in the finding aid.

The Historical Society of Pennsylvania [HSP] used an archival processing manual developed jointly by HSP and the American Philosophical Society in 2003 (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003), *CatMan*. The elements of the finding aid are: front matter (institutional identification, collection title, collection number, date range, extent, date of finding aid, copyright statement and institutional contact), abstract, language of material, background note, scope and content, arrangement, series description, digital archival objects, related materials, bibliography, separation report, access restrictions, user restrictions, acquisition information, custodial history, accruals, other finding aids, alternative format available, preferred citation, appraisal, processing information, other descriptive data, control access terms and detailed container listing (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:58-67). The control access terms include: subject terms, personal and corporate names and genre terms (Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society 2003:66-67).

These examples of finding aids, from the four targeted repositories, mirrored the standard developed by the Society of American Archivists [SAA] (Society of American Archivists 2015). The SAA lists the following sections: title page, summary information, access and use, background information, scope and content and arrangement, subject terms, related materials and contents listing. Perhaps oddly, the SAA version only lists the following under subject terms: “This section includes a list of terms, topics, etc. covered in the collection and usually linked to a library catalog to provide the researcher with materials in similar categories” (Society of American Archivists 2015:3).

In the United States, the Library of Congress [LOC] has developed a name authorities system to facilitate access to metadata (Library of Congress authorities 2014). This study looked specifically for established travel terms devised by the Library of Congress: *Travel*, *Travel writing*, *Travelers’ writings*, *Travel journalism*, *Voyages and travels* and *Tourism* (plus all of their narrower and associated terms).

Out of four possible access points to the collections (Card catalogues, Online catalogues/databases, Printed guides and Staff) 88% (7 out of 8) of the archivists surveyed said they would recommend their online catalogues/databases as the first point of access (while only one said staff should be the first access point). Eighty-eight percent of the archivists surveyed also offered up second (or third or fourth) suggestions for access to their collections. Three archivists recommended the card catalogues as a close second (with one of these archivists further ranking staff and printed guides as third and fourth, respectively). Two of the archivists recommended staff as a second choice. One archivist suggested printed guides as a second

choice. The one archivist who listed staff as number one listed online catalogues/databases as a close second. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results.]

When it came to determining what level of a collection's description warranted travel-related subject access, it was harder for the respondents to pin it down. Some archivists looked for mention in the Collections Scope as to whether subject access was warranted. In using MARC records, another repository based its 6XX tags on the 545 or 520 notes. Others stated that there would have to be something significant mentioned at the "collection level" of description, one asserted that they would add subject access if there was something "rich at the folder level." Others stated that if there was a significant item (such as a diary or journal of a trip), it would be highlighted. Still others acknowledged that there is a "low level," in that all of their collections (in this case scientific expeditions) deal with travel due to their very nature. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results.]

Thirty-seven percent (3 archivists) of the respondents said they used primary field travel subject terms; 38% (3) reported use of travel subfields; 25% (2) chose both primary and subfields. As for the use of genre/form terms, 88% (7 archivists) said yes; 12% (1) no. Of those that used genre/form terms, they were evenly split between primary, subfields or both. [See Appendix D for the full Interview Schedule results.]

6.2.2 Researchers and Travel Archives

For the users there were several clear conclusions [see Appendix E for the full Questionnaire responses]. The overall rankings for the four access points were online catalogues/databases, staff, published guides and then card catalogues. Card catalogues also garnered the most "least effective" (#4 of a 4-rank scale) rating with 75%. Similarly, of the four access points, card catalogues were the one ranked last of sources to use. Looking at this category more positively, online catalogues/databases were the first access point chosen by users (67%). Using staff came in next with 25%; published guides came in third (8%).

Users revealed an overwhelming leaning towards using a keyword search over a subject search, 67% vs. 17%. Users showed a propensity to use archival access points on their own instead of seeing staff mediation, 58% vs. 33%. Users were generally very satisfied that their use of these access points resulted in their expectations being met or exceeded. They also revealed a high level of confidence with the use of online searching tools.

Users were evenly split when asked if they used travel-related subject terms in their research: 50% Yes; 50% No. When asked about what travel terms they used, they were actually not using standard travel terms. Likewise, the terms users listed as being genre/form were not necessarily standard genre/form terms (even though 67% indicated a Yes response to the question "Did you use genre/form terms when searching?" versus 33% who indicated a No response). [See Appendix E for the full responses.]

After assessing how metadata was currently being applied to travel archives and how researchers used or would like to use these materials, the researcher was able to suggest how travel archives could benefit from being better described, or at the very least described differently. Providing a

solution for badly or under-described archival collections could be beneficial to researchers. It involves “re-describing” currently processed collections. It certainly necessitates describing unprocessed collections with an eye to highlighting the travel aspects of the content [see Section 5.4.2].

6.2.3 Describing Travel Archives Better

Based on the study of databases, repositories, archivists and users, there were two main criteria which needed to be addressed in any set of recommendations for effective travel subject access:

A) there needed to be some version of the word “travel” in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid and

B) there needed to be some indication of a genre/format, of the item, in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid.

The researcher provided six recommendations as remedies for the problem of subject access to travel-related collections:

- 1) archivists and manuscript librarians should use *Description and travel* liberally as a geographic subfield,
- 2) archivists and manuscript librarians should concentrate on the second grouping of travel terms, *Voyages and travels*, in selecting subject terms for their finding aids or subject tracings for an archival MARC record for their travel-related collections,
- 3) archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form terms (655),
- 4) archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subject subfields,
- 5) archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects (650 terms) and subfields (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which are also natural keywords and
- 6) archivists and manuscript librarians should not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources.

Some of these recommendations could also be applied to other genre archives.

6.2.4 Other Genre Collections

The recommendations for these remedies to improve access to travel-related archival collections can also be applied to other genre archives, in this example: genealogical archives. Just as there were 80 travel-related subject terms evaluated in this thesis (and then narrowed to a recommended 24-term more manageable list), so too can genealogical subject terms be utilized. Archivists and manuscript librarians should use 655 tags which reflect the documentation of

genealogy. Archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subject subfields. One way to aid subject access to genealogical archives is to incorporate genre/form subfields (\$v) into the MARC records and finding aids. Archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects (650 terms) and subfields (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which are also natural keywords for genealogical collections. [See Section 6.4.]

6.3 Improving Access to Travel Archives

For the purposes of this thesis, travel archives were seen as material accumulated which documented someone's purposeful travel. These could have been the personal papers of travel writers, notes and papers of explorers, diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business, leisure or relocation. This concept is based on the parallel definition for travel writing [see Section 1.11].

People use travel archives to acquire a better understanding of the archives' creators or of the situations these creators were in. For instance, the library at the Historical Society of Pennsylvania holds the Bartram Family Papers. John and William Bartram were American explorers (the states of North and South Carolina, Georgia and Florida in the United States) and naturalists. Researchers often are interested in these journals for their descriptions (and sketches) of not only flora and fauna, but also of the American Indians. These encounters with the American Indians were often the first such meetings in these areas of the American south. The journals also contain detailed accounts of the hardships of their journeys. One gets a sense of the Bartrams as people — as well as explorers (Historical Society of Pennsylvania 2009). Knowing that these men travelled in the southern parts of what was to become the United States, searching using a travel term would be a logical approach.

Historic travel writing, often the end-product of a travel archive, generally focused on pilgrimages, exploration, adventure and leisure (Arnold 2000). Yet finding these and perhaps other types of genre archives was a difficult task due to either too narrow/too broad or insufficient metadata. It was most likely the intent of the creator of the collection which foreshadowed its archival description. This may have been because archivists have traditionally described collections based on archival *fonds* (MacNeil 1996) — basing access on provenance rather than pertinence. One aim of this study explored, using travel archives as a case study, how archivists could better use metadata in describing genre collections. In order to accomplish that, one needed to investigate how they were currently described. They could have been described in many ways, since they were most likely personal papers of travel writers, notes and papers of explorers, or diaries or journals of individuals travelling for business, leisure or relocation.

In Chapter 5 the researcher interpreted the data presented in Chapter 4, looking specifically at the data population sets, grouped by databases, repositories and people. He provided six recommendations as remedies for the problem of subject access to travel-related collections:

- 1) use *Description and travel* liberally as a geographic subfield,

- 2) concentrate on the second grouping of travel terms, *Voyages and travels*, in selecting subject terms for their finding aids or subject tracings for an archival MARC record for their travel-related collections,
- 3) use genre/form terms,
- 4) use genre/form subject subfields,
- 5) use topical subjects and subfields, personal subject subfields and genre/form terms which are also natural keywords for travel-related collections and
- 6) do not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources. Some of these recommendations can also be applied to other genre archives.

6.4 Application to Other Genre Archives

The recommendations for these remedies to improve access to travel-related archival collections can also be applied to other genre archives. Just as there are categories in literature for genre fiction (such as mystery, romance or science fiction), this thesis began with the construct that there also was something that may be termed genre archives. [The use of this new term, however, differed from the use of the term *Genre* when using a 655-tag in a machine readable record; see Section 1.11.] This thesis considered travel archives part of the larger category of genre archives. They shared both rich research potential and inadequate access. Genre archival collections (or simply genre archives), for the purpose of this thesis, referred to collections which focused on the activities of one aspect of their creators' lives. Researchers attempting to access genre archives were often stymied by insufficient metadata. They frequently overlooked collections because a processing archivist may not have described those collections in a way which would have benefitted their research. For example, someone researching accounts of 19th century travel may have found collections under the search term *Travel*, but may have missed collections dealing with exploration or expeditions, if an archivist considered these collections more "scientific" than travel and did not provide access to them under *Travel*. This then necessitated the question: How can an archivist apply access points in a more effective way when describing genre archives?

Genre archives are most often personal archives, and travel archives are but one type of genre archives. Another type of genre archives, for instance, is family history archives. The issue of research access is common to other forms of archives as well. It was the goal of this research that remedies for improving subject access to travel archives also be available for application to these other types of genre archives.

Travel archives may be unique but their access problems are shared with many other genre archives. Genealogical archives and literary archives are not as easily identifiable as one may think. Archivists can play a more active role in helping these collections expand their audiences by making them more accessible.

Determining just how researchers are using these collections is also a key to description. Duff and Johnson (2003) find addressing the archival needs of genealogists a useful approach when using family history papers as a case study. Genealogical archives, like travel archives, are a subset of genre archives. Since, like Perrone (2006) who describes her frustration in trying to locate archives of closed Roman Catholic women's colleges in the United States, there was a problem with description of travel archives, then it was incumbent to devise ways to remedy the dilemma of access. The aim of this study, therefore, was to explore, using travel archives as a case study, how archivists could better use metadata in describing genre archives.

The following recommendations are for application to genealogical archives, but could, of course, also be amended and applied to other genre collections.

6.4.1 Use of Standard Subject Terms

Just as there were 80 travel-related subject terms (Library of Congress authorities 2014) evaluated in this thesis (and then narrowed to a recommended 24-term more manageable list), so too can genealogical subject terms be utilized for family history archival collections. The Library of Congress authority terms are hierarchical. Under each primary term there may be narrower terms (as *Pets and travel* is a narrower term of *Travel*) and then there are associated terms (usually listed as “see also” references by the Library of Congress). For example: *Tourism* and *Voyages and travels* are both associated terms (“see also” references) to *Travel*. The term *Genealogy* has both narrower terms and associated terms.

Genealogy, as a subject for the Library of Congress [LC] (Library of Congress authorities 2015), is presented differently than the various *Travel* terms. The Library of Congress suggests *Genealogy* as a primary term (650) and as a genre/form subfield (\$v). Under *Genealogy*, it lists these narrower primary terms: *Aerial photography in genealogy*, *Cemeteries—Recording*, *Families of royal descent*, *Genetic genealogy*, *Interviewing in genealogy*, *Jesse trees*, *National socialism and genealogy*, *Newspapers in genealogy*, *Photographs in genealogy*, *Probate records*, *Registers of births*, etc. Just as there are two associated primary terms for *Travel* (*Tourism* and *Voyages and travels*), there are three associated primary terms for *Genealogy*: *Biography*, *Heraldry* and *Precedence*.

Genealogy can be utilised as both a primary term and a subfield. Using *Genealogy* as a genre/form subfield (\$v), it offers: *American newspapers—Sections, columns, etc.—Genealogy*; *Daimyo—Genealogy*; *Indians of North America—Genealogy*; *Jesus Christ—Genealogy*; *Jews—Genealogy*; *Kings and rulers—Genealogy*; *Newspapers—Sections, columns, etc.—Genealogy* and *Nobility—Genealogy*.

The first associated term for *Genealogy* is *Biography*. LC uses the same format with the associated term *Biography* (Library of Congress authorities 2015). Under *Biography*, it lists these narrower primary terms: *Anecdotes*, *Autobiographies*, *Bio-bibliography*, *Biographical films*, *Biographical television programs*, *Campaign biography*, *Christian biography*, *Classical biography*, *Epitaphs*, *Imaginary biography*, *Military biography*, *Naval biography*, *Obituaries*, *Oral biography*, *Portraits*, *Religious biography*, *Spiritual biography*, *Table-talk* and *Word portraits*. Just as *Genealogy* is an associated term for *Biography*, *Biography* is also listed as an

associated term is *Genealogy*. (*Biography is an associated term to Genealogy as Tourism or Voyages and travels are to the term Travel*).

Biography can be utilised as both a primary term and a subfield. Using *Biography* as a genre/form subfield (\$v), it offers: *Aeronautics—Biography*; *Agricultural journalism—Biography*; *Agriculture—Biography*; *Agriculture, Cooperative—Biography*; *Anti-Nazi movement—Biography*; *Architecture—Biography*; *Architecture, Medieval—Biography*; *Astronautics—Biography*; *Automobile racing—Biography*; *Basketball—Biography*; *Broadcasting—Biography*; *Chess—Biography*; *Cinematography—Biography*; *Circus—Biography*; *Cooperation—Biography*; *Dance—Biography*; *Education—Biographical methods*; *Ethical culture movement—Biography*; *Industrial arts—Biography*; *Islamic law—Biography*; *Medicine—Biography*; *Medicine, Chinese—Biography*; *Motion pictures—Biography*; *Motion pictures—Production and direction—Biography*; *Performing arts—Biography*; *Photography—Biography*; *Presidents—Biography*; *Public administration—Biography*; *Radio—Biography*; *Radio broadcasting—Biography*; *Rocketry—Biography*; *Sports—Biography*; *Television—Biography* and *Veterinary medicine—Biography*. *Biography*, as a subfield, also has the variant *Biographical methods*.

Biographical methods can only be utilised as a subfield. Using *Biographical methods* as a topical subfield (\$x), the Library of Congress offers: *Christian education—Biographical methods*; *Education—Biographical methods*; *Employee selection—Biographical methods*; *Ethnology—Biographical methods*; *Gerontology—Biographical methods*; *Mental health education—Biographical methods*; *Prediction of occupational success—Biographical methods*; *Psychology—Biographical methods*; *Social sciences—Biographical methods*; *Social work education—Biographical methods*; *Sociology—Biographical methods* and *Women's studies—Biographical methods*. This is a similar set up to using the term *Travel* as both a primary term (650-tag *Travel*) and as a subfield for individual persons and corporate bodies (\$x *Travel*).

The second associated term for *Genealogy* is *Heraldry*. LC uses the same format with the associated term *Heraldry* (Library of Congress authorities 2015). Under *Heraldry*, it lists these narrower primary terms: *Achievements (Heraldry)*; *Animals in heraldry*; *Animals, Mythical, in heraldry*; *Badges*; *Battle-cries*; *Bears in heraldry*; *Canting arms (Heraldry)*; *Castles in heraldry*; *Collars in heraldry*; *Color in heraldry*; *Crosses in heraldry*; *Crowns in heraldry*; *Devices (Heraldry)*; *Dogs in heraldry*; *Eagles in heraldry*; *Elephants in heraldry*; *Emblems*; *Escutcheons (Heraldry)*; *Flags*; *Flowers in heraldry*; *Hatchments*; *Horses in heraldry*; *Insignia*; *Lion in heraldry*; *Livery buttons*; *Livery collars*; *Muslims in heraldry*; *Orders of knighthood and chivalry*; *Seals (Numismatics)*; *Shells in heraldry*; *Stags (Deer) in heraldry*; *Vines in heraldry*; *Visitations, Heraldic*; *Wild boar in heraldry* and *Wines in heraldry*. *Heraldry's* associated terms are: *Chivalry*; *Crests*; *Decorations of honor*; *Emblems, National*; *Genealogy*; *Knights and knighthood*; *Precedence* and *Titles of honor and nobility*. (*Heraldry is an associated term to Genealogy as Tourism or Voyages and travels are to the term Travel*).

Heraldry can be utilised as both a primary term and a subfield. Using *Heraldry* as a topical subfield (\$x), it offers: *Kings and rulers—Heraldry* and *Nobility—Heraldry*. This is a similar set up to using the term *Travel* as both a primary term (650-tag *Travel*) and as a subfield for names of countries and cities (\$x *Description and travel*).

The third associated term for *Genealogy* is *Precedence*. *Precedence* has no narrower terms but has the following associated terms: *Genealogy*, *Heraldry* and *Municipal ceremonial* (Library of Congress authorities 2015). (*Precedence* is an associated term to *Genealogy* as *Tourism* or *Voyages and travels* are to the term *Travel*).

In Section 5.4.2.2, the researcher recommended that archivists and manuscript librarians focus on the second grouping of travel terms (*Voyages and travels*) when creating MARC records and finding aids. This method reduced the onus of familiarization from 80 terms to 24. Likewise, *Genealogy* and its narrower and associated terms (grouped as *Genealogy*, *Biography*, *Heraldry* and *Precedence*) number 84. When focusing on the first grouping of terms (also called *Genealogy*), that number reduces to 15. This is a much more manageable number for which an archivist or manuscript librarian can be familiar.

For instance, the following are the narrower terms for *Genealogy*:

Aerial photography in genealogy
Cemeteries—Recording
Families of royal descent
Genetic genealogy
Interviewing in genealogy
Jesse trees
National socialism and genealogy
Newspapers in genealogy
Photographs in genealogy
Probate records
Registers of births, etc.

There are three associated primary terms for *Genealogy*:

Biography
Heraldry
Precedence

Admittedly, not all of these terms are stellar or all that practical for average folk. For example:

Families of royal descent (self-explanatory)
Jesse trees (representations of the genealogy of Jesus)
National socialism and genealogy (Nazi machinations to prove Aryan ancestry)
Precedence (rank or diplomatic etiquette)

Still, there is enough in these initial lists which should ring familiar:

Aerial photography in genealogy (bird's eye views of where one's ancestors lived)
Cemeteries—Recording (graveyard plot and marker information)
Genetic genealogy (using DNA to prove familial relationships)

Interviewing in genealogy (self-explanatory)
Newspapers in genealogy (self-explanatory)
Photographs in genealogy (self-explanatory)
Probate records (wills)
Registers of births, etc. (vital records)
Biography (self-explanatory, includes autobiography)
Heraldry (coats-of-arms)

6.4.2 Genre/form Primary Terms

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form terms (655). Zinkham, Cloud and Mayo (1989) studied the use of genre/form designations on manuscript cataloguing. They explain that: “Form, genre, and physical characteristics are similar to each other in that each names object types or features rather than a specific subject matter” (Zinkham, Cloud & Mayo 1989:303).

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use 655 tags which reflect the documentation of genealogy. People produce works about their families (either as a collective or as individuals). For example, LC offers these following terms which describe these types of *oeuvre* (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014):

Family histories (a term used for genealogical histories and genealogies and narrative family histories)
Personal narratives (for personal accounts)
Autobiographies (use for confessions, egodocuments [also known as “life writing”], memoirs and personal memoirs)
Biographies (use for authorized biographies, biographical notes, biographical sketches, life histories, and unauthorized biographies)
Photobooks (use for photo books and photograph books)
Scrapbooks (use for scrap albums and scrap books)

If a patron is looking for a family history, having something which is an actual family history tagged as *Family histories* is useful. The stuff of family collections also include photo albums and scrapbooks; therefore, using these 655-tag terms (*Photobooks* and *Scrapbooks* respectively) is helpful. *Personal narratives* (which document individual events), *Autobiographies* (self-documented personal histories) and *Biographies* (third person documentation of individuals and families).

6.4.3 Genre/form Subfields

In Chapter 5 of this thesis, the researcher recommended that archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subject subfields as a way to better describe travel collections. One way to aid subject access to genealogical archives is to incorporate genre/form subfields (\$v) into the MARC records and finding aids as well. As with travel archives, for a substantial amount of material associated with an individual, one can use the subfield *Archives* (for example: “600 1 0 Smith, James \$v Archives”). For items which would not reach the definition of a full archive,

one can match it with a more appropriate term, such as *Diaries* or *Correspondence* (for example: “600 1 0 Smith, James \$v Diaries” or “600 1 0 Smith, James \$v Correspondence”).

As outlined in Section 6.4.1, the Library of Congress also recommends using *Genealogy* as a genre/form subfield (\$v); for example, it offers: *American newspapers—Sections, columns, etc.—Genealogy*; *Daimyo—Genealogy*; *Indians of North America—Genealogy*; *Jesus Christ—Genealogy*; *Jews—Genealogy*; *Kings and rulers—Genealogy*; *Newspapers—Sections, columns, etc.—Genealogy* and *Nobility—Genealogy* (Library of Congress authorities 2015).

As discussed in Section 6.4.1, *Biography* (and its variant *Biographical methods*) can also be utilised as a subfield. The Library of Congress offers: *Aeronautics—Biography*; *Agricultural journalism—Biography*; *Agriculture—Biography*; *Agriculture, Cooperative—Biography*; *Anti-Nazi movement—Biography*; *Architecture—Biography*; *Architecture, Medieval—Biography*; *Astronautics—Biography*; *Automobile racing—Biography*; *Basketball—Biography*; *Broadcasting—Biography*; *Chess—Biography*; *Cinematography—Biography*; *Circus—Biography*; *Cooperation—Biography*; *Dance—Biography*; *Education—Biographical methods*; *Ethical culture movement—Biography*; *Industrial arts—Biography*; *Islamic law—Biography*; *Medicine—Biography*; *Medicine, Chinese—Biography*; *Motion pictures—Biography*; *Motion pictures—Production and direction—Biography*; *Performing arts—Biography*; *Photography—Biography*; *Presidents—Biography*; *Public administration—Biography*; *Radio—Biography*; *Radio broadcasting—Biography*; *Rocketry—Biography*; *Sports—Biography*; *Television—Biography* and *Veterinary medicine—Biography*.

One may use *Heraldry* as a subfield (\$x); LC offers: *Kings and rulers—Heraldry* and *Nobility—Heraldry*.

6.4.4 Topical Subfield Terms

Archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which are also natural keywords for genealogical collections.

Given that users of travel archival collections, as reported in this thesis, preferred to use keyword searching more than subject searching, archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects, personal subject subfields, and genre/form terms which are also natural keywords for genealogical collections. For the 655 tag, LC offers these (Library of Congress genre/form terms 2014):

Diaries (use for personal journals)

Personal Correspondence (use for private correspondence, personal or private email, personal letters and personal mail)

Personal narratives (use for personal accounts)

Periodicals (use for journals [publications], magazines and periodical publications)

Photobooks (use for photo books and photograph books)

Scrapbooks (use for scrap albums and scrap books)

Diaries, Personal Correspondence, Photobooks and *Scrapbooks* are all familiar subfield terms that archivists and manuscript libraries can apply a subject clarifiers to MARC records and finding aids.

6.5 Summary

In Chapter 1 the researcher set out the structure of this thesis. He introduced the notion of travel archives and how they are perhaps one of the more unappreciated archival collections. This is often because they are accumulated and kept by someone and often comes only to a repository when the originator dies or is no longer able to enjoy its existence. Travel archives may be the notes and journals of travel writers, leisure world travellers, scientists on expedition or average people making momentous life relocations (voluntary or not). Travel archives are not something usually passed down from one generation to the next. Family members of these travellers may view keeping memorabilia of trips they have not taken as more of a burden than an honour. However, these travel archives could prove a rich trove for researchers if publically accessible.

Final disposition does not, however, deter the traveller from documenting a life of travel: saving itineraries, programmes, brochures, menus, post-cards, ephemera, trinkets and doodads. They often supplement these things with lists, tables and narratives — such as a journal or diary. They may write and publish about these trips at a later date. A travel archive is much more than an accumulation of miscellanea. It is both a documentation of the world and the character of the traveller who created the collection. Accessing travel archives, which are a subset of genre archives, was the crux of this thesis.

In Chapter 2 the researcher investigated online archival and library literature looking for “finding aids” and “travel archives” without success. A broader literature search was only slightly more forthcoming. While there were lots of studies about access to archival collections, over the past 30 years, they were mostly general and rarely addressed genre collections. Prior to 2003, studies provide a concise overview of the history of archival description and how each new development would solve the problems or deficiencies of a previous one: Creating a finding aid was better than typing out subject cards; Machine-Readable Cataloguing Archival and Manuscripts Control [MARC AMC] would make collections more accessible; Dublin Core and Encoded Archival Description [EAD] would render MARC AMC and paper finding aids (respectively) irrelevant. None of these studies had a direct impact on the thesis at hand, but they did provide a litany of the ongoing problem of archival access.

Within the last ten years, new solutions were described which would address the old deficiencies of archival access – for example, the belief that search-engines would solve the problems researcher had accessing collections. Now systems like Encoded Archival Context–Corporate bodies, Persons, and Families [EAC-CPF], describing individuals, families and corporate bodies that create, preserve, use and are responsible for and/or associated with records, are the next big plan. There were a handful of studies which looked at these similar issues but through the lens of other genre archival collections (genealogy, presidential papers, regional history, etc.). However, none of these articles directly (or indirectly) addressed the issue of access to travel archives.

The research also delved into the literature on the culture of collecting. While not exhaustive, helping to understand why individuals and organization collect aided the researcher in this academic process. Overall, the articles provided a concise overview of the history of archival description and how each new development was thought to solve the problems or deficiencies of the previous iteration. None of them had a direct impact on this thesis, but they did provide a litany of the ongoing problem of archival access. Even though direct mention of travel archives and their access issues were not addressed in the professional literature, the literature did skirt around the issue by discussing larger issues of access which afflicted a myriad of types of archival collections: subject access, MARC AMC, finding aids, full-text, user interfaces, genre archives and the collecting culture.

In Chapter 3 the researcher laid out the research methodology of this study. Using travel archives as a study, this thesis focused in particular on travel archives located at four institutions in the American city of Philadelphia. The study of travel archives (and their issues with access) produced results that were applicable to other genre archives.

For data collection methods, the researcher first used a form of bibliometric analysis, surveying MARC records of travel archives at publicly accessible institutions, described in English, from OCLC's WorldCat and finding aids on ArchiveGrid. To refine the research, a second step searched a smaller, regional American version of ArchiveGrid called the PACSCL Finding Aids database. For a third step, initial interviews with archivists during site visits of the targeted repositories were followed up by a one-on-one, administered interview schedules of selected staff. As a way to ascertain how users accessed travel archives or travel-related collections, the researcher sent a questionnaire to archival patrons, gleaned from suggestions by the staff archivists at the selected repositories.

The overall method moved from larger to smaller quantitative data sets of populations. The largest set consisted of world-wide data on union databases, consisting of MARC records and online finding aids which document travel collections. A smaller search was then conducted on regional finding aids which may not have been represented on ArchiveGrid (from PACSCL). The smallest data set involved site visits to repositories in the Philadelphia area which held substantial travel-related archives: American Philosophical Society, University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

There were two qualitative data sets of populations: the views and opinions of archivists and users of travel collections. Both of these populations were represented by samples from the American Philosophical Society, the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology Archives, the Presbyterian Historical Society and the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

In Chapter 4 the researcher presented the data. Archival records on WorldCat represented the largest data population set in this doctoral study. There were 260,489 [134,211 after removing terms repeated in more than one grouping] total travel-related hits during the study of MARC records. Of these, 68,778 hits were in the *Travel* grouping; 118,996 were in the *Voyages and travels* grouping and 72,715 were in the *Tourism* grouping. The second largest data population

set was from ArchiveGrid records of finding aids. There were 2966 [1619 after removing terms repeated in more than one grouping] total travel-related hits during the study of finding aids. The smallest data population set was from PACSCL records of finding aids. There were 100 [48 after removing terms repeated in more than one grouping] total travel-related hits during the study of finding aids.

For the four site visits, the results were similar (yet varied from institution to institution). For example, for an archive with so many papers of early exploration and scientific investigation, there were proportionally few uses of travel-related LCSH terms at the American Philosophical Society. Like the Penn Museum and the Presbyterian Historical Society, they do not consider their collections as “travel.”

The four examples of finding aids, from the targeted Philadelphia institutions, mirrored the standard developed by the Society of American Archivists [SAA] (Society of American Archivists 2015).

In Chapter 5 the researcher concluded that based on the study of databases, repositories, archivists and users, there were two main criteria which needed to be addressed in any set of recommendations for effective travel subject access:

A) there needed to be some version of the word “travel” in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid and

B) there needed to be some indication of a genre/format, of the item, in a MARC record and/or the archival finding aid.

The researcher provided six recommendations to improve access to travel archives:

- 1) archivists and manuscript librarians should use *Description and travel* liberally as a geographic subfield,
- 2) archivists and manuscript librarians should concentrate on the second grouping of travel terms, *Voyages and travels*, in selecting subject terms for their finding aids or subject tracings for an archival MARC record,
- 3) archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form terms (655),
- 4) archivists and manuscript librarians should use genre/form subject subfields,
- 5) archivists and manuscript librarians should use topical subjects (650 terms) and subfields (\$x terms), personal subject subfields (\$v and \$x terms), and genre/form terms (655 terms) which are also natural keywords for travel-related collections and
- 6) archivists and manuscript librarians should not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources.

For those working with archival collections, who are not familiar with the Library of Congress Subject Headings, there is even some latitude. OCLC and the Library of Congress have developed an application they refer to as FAST [Faceted Application of Subject Terminology.] In developing this schema, OCLC and LC needed it to be simple, friendly and modern – all things that the LCSH is not. However, FAST does not reject the LCSH, but rather seeks to “...retain the very rich vocabulary of LCSH while making the schema easier to understand, control, apply, and use” (OCLC FAST 2016). It incorporates the 1.7 million headings into an eight-facet vocabulary: Personal names, Corporate names, Geographic names, Events, Titles, Time periods, Topics, and Form/Genre. It is the latter two, Topics and Form/Genre, which are most salient to this thesis. You basically type in natural language terms into a search box and the system matches it to LCSH authorized terminology.

In Chapter 6 the researcher modified and applied these travel recommendations to another type of genre archives, namely:

1. concentrate on a set of standard subject terms,
2. use genre/form primary terms,
3. use genre/form subfields and
4. use topical subfield terms.

For an example of another genre archive, the researcher used genealogical papers. However, this remedy could be applied to other types of genre archives as well.

6.6 Conclusion

This study was significant in that it suggested remedies for improving access to travel-related archival collections. Researchers attempting to access this type of archive are often hindered by insufficient (or inefficient) metadata. They frequently overlook collections because a processing archivist may not have described a collection in a way which would have benefitted their research. However, travel archives are only one type of genre archive. The remedies proposed in the project should be beneficial to other genre archives (such as family papers or literary papers).

The ephemeral nature of travel archives may lessen their outward credibility as serious research material. However, when one delves into them one sees that there is cultural and societal relevance. Having better access to these rich collections will expose them to more researchers. Archivists will be able to suggest these collections to researchers beyond those working on travel or tourism. Their opportunities for use will expand and they will be viewed less of a quaint oddity and more of a valid research source. It is incumbent that archivists endeavour to increase access to their collections.

For all the writing on subject access to archives, most of the literature was from the 1980s, 1990s and the following early 2000s. Archivists seemed to have simply moved on. But the problem

with subject access has not. In one sense, dealing with electronic interfaces has made the issue more dire, providing researchers with too many results. This thesis looked at subject access, using travel archives as a case study, to determine how metadata could be better applied to provide more efficient access. Archivists should be able to take the remedies from this study and apply them to not just travel archives in their own collections, but also to like archives (family history archives, literary archives, etc.).

Perhaps one of the most important recommendations to come out of this study (and surprising even to this researcher) is the last one: 6) archivists and manuscript librarians should not ignore or dismiss their analogue subject access resources. This is, of course, also the most technologically unsophisticated. However, the research proved that, in the four repositories studied, there were analogue resources that were not fully replicated even after the archive converted their records to digital. From published guides to the standard card catalogues, there were resources left (if not on the table) within reach of a researcher oblivious to their potentials.

This thesis, then, took the opportunity to look, and then look again, at how archivists are serving their populations. The American playwright and memoirist, Lillian Hellman, called this process (of looking again) “pentimento.” “Old paint on canvas, as it ages, sometimes becomes transparent. When that happens it is possible...to see the original lines: a tree will show through a woman’s dress, a child makes way for a dog, a large boat is no longer on an open sea. That is called pentimento because the painter ‘repented,’ changed his mind. Perhaps it would be as well to say that the old conception, replaced by a later choice, is a way of seeing and then seeing again” (Hellman 1980:309).

This “pentimenting” may also be used for reminding archivists to relook at their resources and ways of serving patrons, to think of what was of value once and what is still of value now. Or, as Lillian Hellman versed it: “The paint has aged now and I [want] to see what was there for me once, what is there for me now” (Hellman 2000:3)

American legal scholar, Jill Ramsfield, reflects: “This idea that “conversion” is not what it’s cracked up to be—is important, crucial, critical. What is not in the digital format may be our most genuine links to the past. To look, and then look again, is to study archives, read between the lines, see the connections that are often erased by digital conversions” (Ramsfield, personal email, 10 August 2015).

But the *fonds* of this thesis is really more than just providing bibliographic tools to archival patrons. It is more than what all this research reports, but rather what it leads to. Where does it take a reader? The researcher chose this topic because of his interest in travel writing and his work within both the travel and tourism industry and special collections libraries. This led him to looking at (and researching for) travel archives, the *ur*-source of travel writing. He was stymied in this endeavour by inadequate subject access to both MARC records and archival finding aids. There was also not a lot in the professional community on travel archives as an academic study.

The lack of travel archival studies could be because either the general public (or more saliently researchers) are not aware of travel archives as an untapped research source. It could be, as

Hackman (2009) reflects in 1984, an overall lack of “documentation strategies” in general. He proposed back then that SAA’s [Society of American Archivists] Task Force on Archives and Society “... develop specific recommendations for programs whereby the archival profession can better gain the attention, cooperation and support of key sectors, such as business, labor, and arts and culture, in developing effective continuing documentation strategies for records in these areas” (Hackman 2009:453).

This problem of archival access may be because travel archives could be viewed as just so much ephemeral stuff. Lowenthal (2006) refers to this phenomenon as “the chaos of accumulation.” “Heritage accumulates by its very nature: stockpiling is the *raison d’être* of stewardship. We amass out of habit and then contend that keeping stuff is good for us and for posterity” (Lowenthal 2006:195). However, a well constructed travel archive is more than just a box of random museum brochures and gewgaws. Done right, it could be a reflection of who we are as a society. Yet, to get to that point, one has to be able to get at the raw material. Archival science, as a profession, suffers from the malady that is so prevalent in all of our society nowadays: if it is not online, it doesn’t exist. From genealogical research to current political news to the latest entertainment scandals, all one has to do is type and get the result — or so the populous is told.

Archivists know, in their hearts, that that line of thinking (and research) is simply not true. But still they buy into it by pushing as much into digital form as they can (mostly in the form of metadata but also scanning original documents online) because that is how people in this day and age research. They start off online.

Archivists and manuscript librarians, as the guardians of society’s collective heritage, need to be the ones “looking and looking again,” as they provide access to the world’s patrimony. The materials they are entrusted with are indeed society’s genuine links with the past. Not using a variety of avenues (digital or analogue) to approach these collections is foolhardy at best and in the long-run self-defeating to the profession.

Bibliography

- AACR2 [Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules]. 2012. Available: <http://www.aacr2.org/> (Accessed 22 February 2014).
- American Philosophical Society. 1970. *Catalog of manuscripts in the American Philosophical Society library, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania*. Westport, CT: Greenwood.
- American Philosophical Society. 2001. Lewis and Clarke journals. Available: <http://www.amphilsoc.org/mole/view?docId=ead/Mss.917.3.L58-ead.xml;query=:brand=default> (Accessed 4 October 2013).
- _____. 2013. Available: <http://www.amphilsoc.org/> (Accessed 12 March 2014).
- _____. 2014a. [1969-1984 manuscript card catalogue]. (Accessed 22 December 2014).
- _____. 2014b. [online catalogue]. Available: <http://www.amphilsoc.org/collections/search> (Accessed 24 December 2014).
- _____. 2015. [online catalogue]. Available: <http://www.amphilsoc.org/collections/search> (Accessed 21 January 2015).
- Arathymou, S. 2009. Finding and accessing the right archive and archival data: archival tools to support research and to make archives available to public. *Historical Social Research/Historische Sozialforschung* 34(3):71-77. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/20762376> (Accessed 13 December 2013).
- ArchiveGrid: open the door to history. 2014. Available: <http://beta.worldcat.org/archivegrid/> (Accessed 10 February 2014).
- Archivists' Toolkit. 2009. Available: <http://www.archiviststoolkit.org/> (Accessed 22 February 2014).
- Archon: the simple archival information system. 2011. Available: <http://www.archon.org/> (Accessed 22 February 2014).
- Arnold, L. 2008. Libraries, archives, and the development of popular interest in genealogy and local history. Presentation given at the Organization of American Historians meeting, New York City, 28 March.
- _____. 2013. The collections of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. Historical Society of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia. (Manuscript).
- Arnold, LJ. 2000. A country without cats: a collection of travel writing. MLA qualifying paper, Temple University, Philadelphia.

- Ash, L. 1993. *Subject collections*. 7th edition. New Providence, NJ: R.R. Bowker.
- Association of College and Research Libraries. 1991. *Genre terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing*. Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries.
- Barclay, DA. 2010. The myth of browsing. *American Libraries* 41(6/7):52-54. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/20700547> (Accessed 19 March 2015).
- Barr, J. Presbyterian Historical Society reference, personal interview, 23 December 2014, Philadelphia.
- Beall, J. 2007. Search fatigue: finding a cure for the database blues. *American Libraries* 38(3):46-50. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/27771101> (Accessed 19 March 2015).
- Bearman, D. 1989. Archives and manuscript control with bibliographic utilities: challenges and opportunities. *The American Archivist* 52(1):26-39. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293310> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- Bell, LA. 1994. Gaining access to visual information: theory, analysis, and practice of determining subjects—a review of the literature with descriptive abstracts. *Art Documentation: Journal of the Art Libraries Society of North America* 13(2):89-94. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/27948634> (Accessed 19 February 2014).
- Bell, WJ & Smith, MD. 1966. *Guide to the archives and manuscript collections of the American Philosophical Society*. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society.
- Benedetto, R. 1990. *Guide to the manuscript collections of the Presbyterian Church, U.S.* New York: Greenwood.
- Berner, RC. 1971. Manuscript catalogs and other finding aids: what are their relationships? *The American Archivist* 34(4):367-372. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40291374> (Accessed 19 February 2014).
- Blouin, FX & Rosenberg, WG (eds). 2006. *Archives, documentation and institutions of social memory*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan.
- Bogan, R. 2000. Suitable subject access. *American Libraries* 31(7):35-36. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25637703> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Boston College. 2013. Graham Greene papers. Available: <http://bc-primo.hosted.exlibrisgroup.com/primolibrary/libweb/action/dlDisplay.do?onCampus=false&docId=ALMA-BC21351254200001021&vid=bclib&institution=BCL> (Accessed 4 October 2013).

- Bradsher, JG (ed). 1991. *Managing archives and archival institutions*. Chicago: University of Chicago.
- Brock, B. 2010. *Guide to the Kenneth E. Wells and Margaretta B. Wells Papers*. Philadelphia: PHS.
- _____. Finding aids, telephone interview, 25 March 2015.
- Brock, B & Barr, J. Presbyterian Historical Society processing, personal interview, 20 January 2015, Philadelphia.
- Brown, K. 2015. *Dispatches from dystopia: histories of places not yet forgotten*. Proof copy. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Buck, R. 2015. *The Oregon Trail: an American journey*. New York: Simon & Schuster.
- Burger, M. 2010. *Bibliographic style and reference techniques*. Pretoria: University of South Africa.
- Carson, HL. 1940. *A history of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania*. Philadelphia: The Society.
- Cassaro, JP. 2012. Music cataloguing: where is it headed? *Fontes Artis Musicae* 59(3):247-248. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/42765602> (Accessed 19 March 2019).
- Casson, L. 2001. *Libraries in the ancient world*. New Haven, Connecticut: Yale University Press.
- Catlett, JS (ed). 1987. *New guide to the collections in the library of the American Philosophical Society*. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society.
- Caust-Ellenbogen, C. PACSCL searching, e-mail to author, 22 January 2015.
- Cole, C. 1998. Information acquisition in history Ph.D. students: inferencing and the formation of knowledge structures. *Library Quarterly* 68(1):33-54.
- _____. 2000. Inducing expertise in history doctoral students via information retrieval design. *The Library Quarterly* 70(1):86-109. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4309400> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Collier, R. 2014. Around the world with the Anspach Travel Bureau collection of tourism literature. *RL* 7(2):14-15.
- Collins, K. 1998. Providing subject access to images: a study of user queries. *The American Archivist* 61(1):36-55. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294073> (Accessed 12 February 2014).

- Cook, T. 2006. Remembering the future: appraisal of records and the role of archives in constructing social memory, in *Archives, documentation and institutions of social memory*, edited by FX Blouin & WG Rosenberg. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan:169-181.
- _____. 2011. The archive(s) is a foreign country: historians, archivists, and the changing archival landscape. *The American Archivist* 74(2): 600-632.
- Crawford, G, Arnold, L, Connolly, L & Shylaja, Y. 1992. OPAC user satisfaction and success: a study of four libraries, in *Proceedings of the Seventh National Conference on Integrated Online Library Systems*, compiled by J. McQueen. Medford, New Jersey: Learned Information, Inc.:81-89.
- Cresswell, JW. 2003. *Research design: qualitative, quantitative, and mixed methods approaches*. 2nd edition. Thousand Oaks, California: Sage.
- Czeck, RLH. 1998. Archival MARC records and finding aids in the context of end-user subject access to archival collections. *The American Archivist* 61(2):426-440. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294095> (Accessed 20 November 2012).
- Daniels, MG and Yakel, E. 2010. Seek and you may find: successful search in online finding aid systems. *The American Archivist* 73(2):535-568. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/23290758> (Accessed 19 March 2019).
- Dickey, TJ. 2008. FRBRization of a library catalog: better collocation of records, leading to enhanced search, retrieval, and display. *Information Technology and Libraries* 27(1):23-32.
- Dooley, JM. 1992. Subject indexing in context. *The American Archivist* 55(2):344-354. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293647> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Drabeck, B. 2012. New PCA, Inc. archive established at Corning. *PCA Quarterly Newsletter* (186):2.
- Duff, WM & Johnson, CA. 2002. Accidentally found on purpose: information-seeking behavior of historians in archives. *The Library Quarterly* 72(4):472-496. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40039793> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- _____. 2003. Where is the list with all the names? Information-seeking behavior of genealogists. *The American Archivist* 66(1):79-95. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294218> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- DVAG: Delaware Valley Archivists Group. 2014. Available: <http://beta.dvarchivists.org/> (Accessed 19 March 2014).

- EAD: encoded archival description version 2002 official site. 2013. Available: <http://www.loc.gov/ead/> (Accessed 22 February 2014).
- Eckert, E. ArchiveGrid searching, e-mail to author, 19 March 2014.
- _____. ArchiveGrid searching, e-mail to author, 20 March 2014.
- Elsner, J & Cardinal R (eds). 1994. *The cultures of collecting*. London: Reaktion.
- Feeney, K. 1999. Retrieval of archival finding aids using world-wide-web search engines. *The American Archivist* 62(2):206-228. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294121> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Fermor, PL. 1977. *A time of gifts: on foot to Constantinople from the Hook of Holland to the Middle Danube*. London: Murray.
- _____. 1986. *Between the woods and the water: on foot to Constantinople from the Hook of Holland: the Middle Danube to the Iron Gates*. London: Murray.
- _____. 2014. *The broken road: from the Iron Gates to Mount Athos*. New York: NYRB Classics.
- Filene, B. 2012. Passionate histories: “outsider” history-makers and what they teach us. *The Public Historian* 34(1):11-33. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1525/tph.2012.34.1.11> (Accessed 8 July 2012).
- Gabel, L. WorldCat searching, e-mail to author, 7 November 2014.
- _____. WorldCat searching, e-mail to author, 1 December 2014.
- _____. WorldCat searching, e-mail to author, 2 December 2014.
- _____. WorldCat searching, e-mail to author, 9 December 2014.
- _____. WorldCat searching, e-mail to author, 21 January 2015.
- _____. WorldCat searching, e-mail to author, 3 March 2016.
- Getty Research Institute. 2011. *Art & architecture thesaurus online*. Available: <http://www.getty.edu/research/tools/vocabularies/aat/> (Accessed 26 March 2015).
- Gilliland-Swetland, AJ. 2000. Archival research: a “new” issue for graduate education. *The American Archivist* 63(2):258-270. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294141> (Accessed 21 August 2013).

- _____. 2002. Testing our truths: delineating the parameters of the authentic archival electronic record. *The American Archivist* 65(2):196-215. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294206> (Accessed 21 August 2013).
- Goodman, RE. American Philosophical Society reference, personal interview, 22 December 2014, Philadelphia.
- Gorman, GE & Clayton, P. 2005. *Qualitative research for the information professional*. 2nd edition. London: Facet.
- Gorzalski, M and Wiget, M. 2011. "More access, less backlog": how the Kansas Historical Society got its groove back. *Archival Issues* 33(1):7-24. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/23100470> (Accessed 19 March 2019).
- Greenberg, J. 1998. The applicability of natural language processing (NLP) to archival properties and objectives. *The American Archivist* 61(2):400-425. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294094> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- Greene, G. 1936. *Journey without maps*. London: Heinemann.
- _____. 1939. *The lawless roads*. London: Heinemann.
- _____. 1940. *The power and the glory*. London: Heinemann.
- _____. 1966. *The comedians*. New York: Viking.
- Greene, MA. 2003. The messy business of remembering: history, memory, and archives. *Archival Issues* 28(2):95-103. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41102082> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- Greene, MA & Meissner, D. 2005. More product, less process: revamping traditional archival processing. *The American Archivist* 68(2):208-263. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294290> (Accessed 13 December 2013).
- Greifenstein, CB. American Philosophical Society reference, personal interview, 22 December 2014, Philadelphia.
- Greifenstein, CB, Downey, A, Lutz, VA & Shrake, R. 2012. *American Philosophical Society library manuscripts processing manual*. Philadelphia: APS.
- Griffith, SF. 2001. *Serving history in a changing world: the Historical Society of Pennsylvania in the twentieth century*. Philadelphia: Historical Society of Pennsylvania.
- Hackett, Y. 2003. InterPARES: the search for authenticity in electronic records. *The Moving Image: The Journal of the Association of Moving Image Archivists* 3(2):100-107. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41167129> (Accessed 26 August 2013)

- Hackman, L. 2009. The origins of documentation strategies in context: recollections and reflections. *The American Archivist* 72(2):436-459. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/27802696> (Accessed 21 August 2013)
- Haley, A. 1976. *Roots: the saga of an American family*. New York: Doubleday.
- Hellman, L. 1980. *Three: an unfinished woman, penitento, scoundrel time*. Boston: Little, Brown & Co.
- _____. 2000. *Penitento: a book of portraits*. Boston: Back Bay Books.
- Hensen, SL. 1989. *Archives, personal papers, and manuscripts: a cataloging manual for archival repositories, historical societies, and manuscript libraries*. 2nd edition. Chicago:
- Heuser, FJ. 1988. *A guide to foreign missionary manuscripts in the Presbyterian Historical Society*. New York: Greenwood.
- Hickerson, T & Engst, E. 1985. Form terms for archival and manuscripts control. Stanford, Calif.: Research Libraries Group.
- Historical Society of Pennsylvania. 1991a. Atherton Blight papers in *Guide to the manuscript collections of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania*. Philadelphia: Historical Society of Pennsylvania:59.
- _____. 1991b. *Guide to the manuscript collections of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania*. Philadelphia: Historical Society of Pennsylvania.
- _____. 2001. Coxe family mining papers, #3005. Philadelphia. (Finding aid).
- _____. 2009. Bartram family papers, #36. Philadelphia. (Finding aid).
- _____. 2010a. Mary Elizabeth Hallock Greenewalt papers, musical edition, #867. Philadelphia. (Finding aid).
- _____. 2010b. Collections scope. Philadelphia. (Manuscript).
- _____. 2011. Collections management policy. Philadelphia. (Manuscript).
- _____. 2014a. Available: <http://hsp.org/> (Accessed 12 March 2014).
- _____. 2014b. *Discover* [online catalogue]. Available: <http://discover.hsp.org/> (Accessed 2 November 2014).
- _____. 2014c. [Manuscript card catalogue]. (Accessed 1 November 2014).

- _____. 2014d. Collections procedures manual. Philadelphia. (Manuscript).
- _____. 2015. *Discover* [online catalogue]. Available: <http://discover.hsp.org/> (Accessed 21 January 2015).
- Historical Society of Pennsylvania & American Philosophical Society. 2003. *CatMan: a manual for processing manuscript and archival collections*. Philadelphia: HSP/APS.
- Historical Society of Pennsylvania & Cliveden. 2009. Chew family papers, #2050. Philadelphia. (Finding aid).
- Ingram, A. 2000. *Archival information retrieval for the researcher of history*. Pretoria: University of South Africa.
- International Council on Archives. 1999. Multilingual archival terminology. Also available: <http://www.ciscra.org/mat/mat/term/233/449> (Accessed 3 March 2016).
- Iyer, P. 2013. *The man within my head [Graham Greene, my father and me]*. New York: Vintage.
- Jacobson, L. Presbyterian Historical Society reference, personal interview, 23 December 2014, Philadelphia.
- Joyce, WL. 1984. Archivists and research use. *The American Archivist* 47(2):124-134. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40292653> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- JSTOR. 2014. Available: <http://jstor.org> (Accessed 10 February 2014).
- _____. 2015. Available: <http://jstor.org> (Accessed 19 March 2015).
- Kaplan, E. 2000. We are what we collect, we collect what we are: archives and the construction of identity. *The American Archivist* 63(1):126-151. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40283823> (Accessed 21 February 2014).
- Kiesling, K. 1997. EAD as an archival descriptive standard. *The American Archivist* 60(3):344-354. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294442> (Accessed 19 February 2014).
- Konzak, E, Nemmers, JR & Thomas, C. 2006. Opening archives: improving access to hidden archival collections in Florida. *Florida Libraries* 49(2):16-19.
- Krause, MG & Yakel, E. 2007. Interaction in virtual archives: The Polar Bear Expedition Digital Collections next generation finding aid. *The American Archivist* 70(2):282-314. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294572> (Accessed 26 November 2012).

- Leedy, PD & Ormrod, JE. 2005. *Practical research*. 8th edition. Columbus, Ohio: Pearson.
- LISTA/Library, information science, and technology abstracts. 2014. Available: <http://www.ebscohost.com/academic/library-information-science-technology-abstracts-lista> (Accessed 10 February 2014).
- Library of Congress. 1997. USMARC code list for relators, sources, description conventions. Washington: Library of Congress.
- _____. 2009. Library of Congress subject headings. 31st edition. Washington: Library of Congress.
- Library of Congress authorities. 2014. Available: <http://authorities.loc.gov> (Accessed 18 February 2014).
- _____. 2015. Available: <http://authorities.loc.gov> (Accessed 10 April 2015).
- Library of Congress genre/form terms. 2014. Available: id.loc.gov/authorities/genreForms.html (Accessed 16 March 2015).
- Light, M & Hyry, T. 2002. Colophons and annotations: new directions for the finding aid. *The American Archivist* 65(2):216-230. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294207> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- Lowenthal, D. 2006. Archives, heritage, and history, in *Archives, documentation and institutions of social memory*, edited by FX Blouin & WG Rosenberg. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan:193-206.
- Lucas, L. 1981. Efficient finding aids: developing a system for control of archives and manuscripts. *The American Archivist* 44(1):21-26. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40292361> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Lutz, VA. American Philosophical Society reference, personal interview, 22 December 2014, Philadelphia.
- Lyons, M & Hutto, C. Historical Society of Pennsylvania processing, personal interview, 29 January 2015, Philadelphia.
- Lytle, RH. 1980. Intellectual access to archives: I. provenance and content indexing methods of subject retrieval. *The American Archivist* 43(1):64-75. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40292268> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Lytle, RH. & Dürr, WT. 1980. Intellectual access to archives: II. report of an experiment comparing provenance and content indexing methods of subject retrieval. *The American Archivist* 43(2):191-207. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40292291> (Accessed 12 February 2014).

- MacNeil, H. 1996. Subject access to archival “fonds”: balancing provenance and pertinence. *Fontes Artis Musicae* 43(3):242-258. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/23508211> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- _____. 2005. Picking our text: archival description, authenticity, and the archivist as editor. *The American Archivist* 68(2):264-278. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294291> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- _____. 2008. Archivalterity: rethinking original order. *Archivaria* 66(Fall):1-24.
- _____. 2009. Trusting description: authenticity, accountability, and archival description standards. *Journal of Archival Organization* 7(3):89-107.
- MacNeil, H. & Mak, B. 2007. Constructions of authenticity. *Library Trends* 56(1):26-52.
- Madeira, PC. 1964. *Men in search of man: the first seventy-five years of the University Museum of the University of Pennsylvania*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press.
- Mandel, C. 1980. Hidden collections: the elephant in the closet. *RBM* 5(2):106-114.
- McCrary, A & Russell, BM. 2005. Crosswalking EAD: collaboration in archival description. *Information Technology and Libraries* 24(3):99-106.
- McCullough, TJ. 2014. *Finding aid of the collection of travel journals 1740-1845*. Bethlehem, PA: Moravian Archives.
- McKnight, M. 2012. Are we there yet? Toward a workable controlled vocabulary for music. *Fontes Artis Musicae* 59(3):286-292. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/42765606> (Accessed 19 March 2019).
- McNitt, WH. 1989. Development of the Presnet subject descriptor thesaurus. *The American Archivist* 52(3):358-364. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293365> (Accessed 20 November 2012).
- Mengel, H, Smerz, C & Grippe, CD. 2014. *Minimal processing manual: hidden collections processing project*. Philadelphia: PACSCL.
- Meyer, M, Calitz, L & Brink, I. 2002. Archival value in South Africa. *The Indexer* 23(2):70-73.
- Michelson, A. 1987. Description and reference in the age of automation. *The American Archivist* 50(2):192-208. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294544> (Accessed 12 February 2014).

- Miles, MJ & Bergstrom, SJ. 2009. Classification of library resources by subject on the library website: is there an optimal number of subject labels? *Information Technology and Libraries* 28(1):16-20.
- Millar, L. 2006. An obligation of trust: speculation on accountability and description. *The American Archivist* 69(1):60-78. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294311> (Accessed 21 August 2013).
- Nadelson, R. 2012. Our souvenirs, ourselves. *Travel [and] Leisure* 42(7):64-67.
- National Archives of South Africa. 2011. Available: <http://www.national.archives.gov.za/naairs.htm> (Accessed 3 March 2014).
- Nesmith, T. 2002. Seeing archives: postmodernism and the changing intellectual place of archives. *The American Archivist* 65(1):24-41. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294187> (Accessed 21 August 2013).
- Neuman, WL. 1997. *Social research methods*. 3rd edition. Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- Nexus database system. 1999. Available: <http://stardata.nrf.ac.za> (Accessed 10 February 2014).
- OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] ArchiveGrid. 2015. Available: <http://beta.worldcat.org/archivegrid/?p=1&,+Miss.html> (Accessed 23 January 2015).
- OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] FAST. 2016. Available: <http://www.oclc.org/research/themes/data-science/fast.html> (Accessed 3 March 2016).
- OCLC [Online Computer Library Center] WorldCat. 2014. Available: <http://www.oclc.org/en-US/worldcat.html> (Accessed 10 February 2014).
- OECD [Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development]. 2014. Available: <http://stats.oecd.org/glossary/detail.asp?ID=198> (Accessed 30 June 2014).
- O'Neil, LP. 2000. *Travel writing: see the world, sell the story*. Cincinnati: Writer's Digest.
- Ostroff, H. 1990. Subject access to archival and manuscript material. *The American Archivist* 53(1):100-105. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293428> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Pace, AK. 2005. Technically speaking: the relevance of "relevant relevance." *American Libraries* 36(9):78-79. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25649735> (Accessed 19 March 2015).
- PACSCL [Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries]. 2014. Available: <http://pacscl.org/> (Accessed 10 February 2014).

- PACSCL finding aids. 2014. Available: <http://dla.library.upenn.edu/dla/pacscl/index.html> (Accessed 10 February 2014).
- _____. 2015a. Available: <http://dla.library.upenn.edu/dla/pacscl/index.html> (Accessed 12 January 2015).
- _____. 2015b. Available: <http://dla.library.upenn.edu/dla/pacscl/index.html> (Accessed 21 January 2015).
- Paris, M. 1988. Thoughts on the case study. *Journal of Education for Library and Information Science* 29(2):137-140. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40323569> (Accessed 24 March 2014).
- Park, J, Tosaka, Y, Maszaros, S and Lu, C. 2010. From metadata creation to metadata quality control: continuing education needs among cataloging and metadata professionals. *Journal of Education for Library and Information Science* 51(3):158-176. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40732596> (Accessed 19 March 2019).
- Pearce, SM. 1995. *On collecting*. London: Routledge.
- Penn Museum. 2009. *Penn Museum processing guide*. Philadelphia: Penn Museum.
- Perrone, F. 2006. Vanished worlds: searching for the records of closed Catholic women's colleges. *Archival Issues* 30(2):119-149. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41102127> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- Peterson, BS. 2013. The big squeeze. *Condé Nast Traveler* (July):33-34, 36, 40-42, 44.
- Peterson, T (ed). 1994. *Art and architecture thesaurus*. New York: Oxford.
- Pezzati, A. Penn Museum reference, personal interview, 16 January 2015, Philadelphia.
- _____. Penn Museum reference, e-mail to author, 23 January 2015.
- _____. 2002. *Adventures in photography: expeditions of the University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Museum.
- _____. 2009. No armchair archaeologists allowed: travails of travel on early Penn Museum expeditions. PowerPoint presentation, Penn Museum, Philadelphia.
- Pointer, A & Wappler, M. 2015. A lesson in history: singer Anita Pointer collects black memorabilia so she'll never forget how her people were once depicted. *AARP The Magazine* 58(2A):82-83.

- Presbyterian Historical Society. 2014a. Available: <http://www.history.pcusa.org/> (Accessed 12 March 2014).
- _____. 2014b. [card catalogue]. (Accessed 23 December 2014).
- _____. 2014c. CALVIN [online catalogue]. Available: <http://www.history.pcusa.org/collections/online-catalogs/calvin> (Accessed 23 December 2014).
- _____. 2014d. *Guides to archival collections* [online catalogue]. Available: <http://www.history.pcusa.org/collections/research-tools/guides-archival-collections> (Accessed 23 December 2014).
- _____. 2015a. CALVIN [online catalogue]. Available: <http://www.history.pcusa.org/collections/online-catalogs/calvin> (Accessed 21 January 2015).
- _____. 2015b. *Guides to archival collections* [online catalogue]. Available: <http://www.history.pcusa.org/collections/research-tools/guides-archival-collections> (Accessed 21 January 2015).
- Price G & Sherman, C. 2001. Seven essential strategies: exploring the invisible web. *Online* 25(4):32-34.
- Prom, CJ. 2004. User interactions with electronic finding aids in a controlled setting. *The American Archivist* 67(2):234-268. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294278> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Pugh, MJ. 1982. The illusion of omniscience: subject access and the reference archivist. *The American Archivist* 45(1):33-44. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40292458> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Rabins, J. 1983. Records redux: enhancing subject access through redescription. *The Midwestern Archivist* 8(2):17-27. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41101592> (Accessed 20 November 2012).
- Ramsfield, J. Digital access, e-mail to author, 10 August 2015.
- Rawlings, JL. 1999. Processing twentieth century collections: a case study of the Charles Kuralt papers. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina.
- RDA [Resource Description and Access]. 2010. Available: <http://www.rdatoolkit.org> (Accessed 22 February 2014).

- Redmann, GR. 1993. Archivists and genealogists: the trend toward peaceful coexistence. *Archival Issues* 18(2):121-132. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41101858> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Reed, L. 2004. Larry Reed, in *A passion to preserve*, by W. Fellows. Madison: University of Wisconsin:186-189.
- Riley, J & Shepherd, K. 2009. A brave new world: archivists and shareable descriptive metadata. *The American Archivist* 72(1):91-112. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294597> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Ross, DD. 2003. Archival finding aids in the electronic age. *Mississippi Libraries* 67(2):51-53.
- Rudestam, KE & Newton, RR. 2007. *Surviving your dissertation*. 3rd edition. Los Angeles: Sage.
- Rush, M, Holdzkom, L, Backman, P, Santamaria, D & Leigh, A. 2008. Applying DACS to finding aids: case studies from three diverse repositories. *The American Archivist* 71(1): 210-227. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294501> (Accessed 20 November 2012).
- Ruwell, ME. 1984. *A guide to the University Museum archives of the University of Pennsylvania*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania.
- Sanders, B. 2005. Browsing online catalogues. *American Libraries* 36(8):32. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25649379> (Accessed 19 March 2015).
- Sandstrom, PE. 1994. An optimal foraging approach to information seeking and use. *The Library Quarterly* 64(4):414-449. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4308969> (Accessed 24 March 2014).
- Schrum, B, Hickson, M, Kim, J, Baker, A, & Dawson E. 2012. Evaluation report: Historical Society of Pennsylvania. University of the Arts, Philadelphia. (Manuscript).
- Shteyngart, G. 2014. The making of a travel writer. *Travel [and] Leisure* 44(1):44-47.
- Society of American Archivists. 2013. *Describing archives: a content standard*. 2nd edition. Chicago: Society of American Archivists.
- _____. 2015. *Sample annotated finding aid*. Available: <http://www2.archivists.org/usingarchives/appendix> (Accessed 25 March 2015)
- Society of American Travel Writers. 2014. Available: <http://www.satw.org/> (Accessed 17 March 2014).

- Southwell, KL. 2002. How researchers learn of manuscript resources at the Western History Collections. *Archival Issues* 26(2):91-109. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41102043> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Stanton, W. 1991. *American scientific exploration 1803-1860: manuscripts in four Philadelphia libraries*. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society.
- Stapleton, DH. 1985. *Accounts of European science, technology, and medicine written by American travelers abroad: 1735-1860, in the collections of the American Philosophical Society*. Philadelphia: American Philosophical Society.
- Sternfeld, J. 2011. Archival theory and digital historiography: selection, search, and metadata as archival processes for assessing historical contextualization. *The American Archivist* 74(2):544-575. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/23079050> (Accessed 19 March 2019).
- Stewart, S. 1993. *On longing: narratives of the miniature, the gigantic, the souvenir, the collection*. Durham, North Carolina: Duke University.
- Stewart, WGD. 1846. *Altowan; or incidents of life and adventure in the Rocky Mountains*. New York: Harper.
- Strong, L. 2000. American Indians and Scottish identity in Sir William Drummond Stewart's Collection. *Winterthur Portfolio* 35(2/3):127-155. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/1215362> (Accessed 5 December 2012).
- Theroux, P (ed). 2014. *The best American travel writing: 2014*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.
- Tibbo, HR. 1994. The epic struggle: subject retrieval from large bibliographic databases. *The American Archivist* 57(2):310-326. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293823> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Tibbo, HR & Meho, LI. 2001. Finding finding aids on the world wide web. *The American Archivist* 64(1):61-77. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294159> (Accessed 21 November 2012).
- Unisa. 2007. Policy on research ethics. Available: http://cm.unisa.ac.za/contents/departments/res_policies/docs/ResearchEthicsPolicy_apprv_Counc_21Sept07.pdf (Accessed 7 November 2013).
- University of Pennsylvania. 2015. [University Museum archives online catalogue]. Available: http://dla.library.upenn.edu/dla/ead/search.html?fq=repository_facet%3A%22Penn%20Museum%20Archives%22 (Accessed 16 January 2015).

- University of Pennsylvania Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology. 2014. Available: <http://penn.museum/> (Accessed 12 March 2014)
- Vargas, MA & Padway, J. 1992. Catalog them again for the first time. *Archival Issues* 17(1):49-63. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41101818> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Vaver, A and Mott, R. 2010. Serendipity through browsing. *American Libraries* 41(8):6. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25734591> (Accessed 19 March 2015).
- Washburn, B. ArchiveGrid searching, e-mail to author, 22 January 2015.
- Weber, LB. 1989. Archival description standards: concepts, principles, and methodologies. *The American Archivist* 52(4):504-513. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293399> (Accessed 19 February 2014).
- White, HD and McCain, KW. 1989. Bibliometrics. *Annual Review of Information Science and Technology* 24:1996-186.
- Wiberley, SE. 1983. Subject access in the humanities and the precision of the humanist's vocabulary. *The Library Quarterly* 53(4):420-433. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4307661> (Accessed 18 February 2014).
- _____. 1988. Names in space and time: the indexing vocabulary of the humanities. *The Library Quarterly* 58(1):1-28. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4308194> (Accessed 18 February 2014).
- _____. 2003. A methodological approach to developing bibliometric models of types of humanities scholarship. *The Library Quarterly* 73(2):121-159. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4309638> (Accessed 24 March 2014).
- WorldCat. 2014a. *OCLC Connexion* [computer software]. Dublin, Ohio: OCLC. (Accessed 10 November 2014).
- _____. 2014b. *OCLC Connexion* [computer software]. Dublin, Ohio: OCLC (Accessed 21 November 2014).
- _____. 2014c. *OCLC Connexion* [computer software]. Dublin, Ohio: OCLC (Accessed 10 December 2014).
- _____. 2015. *OCLC Connexion* [computer software]. Dublin, Ohio: OCLC (Accessed 22 January 2015).
- Yakel, E. 2006. Archival representation, in *Archives, documentation and institutions of social memory*, edited by FX Blouin & WG Rosenberg. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan:151-163.

- Yakel, E & Torres, DA. 2003. AI: archival intelligence and user expertise. *The American Archivist* 66(1):51-78. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294217> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- _____. 2007. Genealogists as a “community of records.” *The American Archivist* 70(1):93-113. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40294451> (Accessed 26 November 2012).
- Yee, M. 1988. *Moving image materials: genre terms*. Washington: Library of Congress.
- Zboray, RJ & Zboray, MS. 2009. Is it a diary, commonplace book, scrapbook, or whatchamacallit?: six years of exploration in New England’s manuscript archives. *Libraries and the Cultural Record* 44(1):101-123. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25549539> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Ziegler, S. American Philosophical Society catalogue, e-mail to VA Lutz, 22 December 2014.
- Zinkham, H, Cloud, PD, & Mayo, H. 1989. Providing access by form of material, genre, and physical characteristics: benefits and techniques. *The American Archivist* 52(3):300-319. Also available: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40293360> (Accessed 12 February 2014).
- Zinkham, H & Parker, EB. 1986. *Descriptive terms for graphic materials: genre and physical characteristic headings*. Washington: Library of Congress.

Appendix A

Archivists' Travel Collections Interview Schedule

Users' Travel Collections Questionnaire

Archivists' Travel-Related Collections Interview Schedule

[Note: This interview schedule refers to the practices at your repository only, not for the archival field in general.]

- 1) What do you consider are travel-related collections?
- 2) Have you had researchers using your facility looking specifically for travel-related material?
- 3) What would be the best way for a travel researcher to access your pertinent collections?
 - a) card catalogues
 - b) online catalogues/databases
 - c) printed guides
 - d) staff
- 4) What is the effect of More Product Less Process on subject access in general?
- 5) What level of a collection's description warrants travel-related subject access?
- 6) If you do use travel-related subject access terms, are they primary fields or are they located in subfields?
- 7) Do you use genre/form terms, either as a 655-Tag (or EAD equivalent) or as a 6XX-Tag subfield (or EAD equivalent)?
- 8) How many subject access points do you usually provide for a collection?
 - a) personal name (600)
 - b) institutional name (610)
 - c) topic (650)
 - d) geographical (651)
 - e) genre (655)
- 9) Of the following 80 specific travel-related LCSH terms {[R]= repeated term}, please check one of the following:
 - a) There are items in our collections relating to this term.
 - b) There are not items in our collections relating to this term.
 - c) I do not know if there are items in our collections relating to this term.
 - d) I am not familiar with this specific term.

Primary term #1: a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar
Travel

Narrower terms for Travel:

Adventure travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Air travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Astrology and travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Automobile travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Bicycle touring a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Bus travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Business travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Caravans a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Games for travelers a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Homecoming a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Independent travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

International travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

International travel regulations a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Interstellar travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Luggage—packing a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Motorcycle touring a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Ocean travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Pets and travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Railroad travel a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Signs and symbols for travelers a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Teenage travel programs a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travel restrictions a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travelers' aid societies a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Workers' travel programs a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Youth travel programs a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Associated terms for *Travel*:

Travel writing (used mainly for narratives and memoirs) a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travelers' writings (collections of works by travel writers have the heading: this may also be further described by adding a nationality, like: *Travelers' writings, Canadian*) a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travel journalism (works on journalism, focusing on travel) a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Primary Term #2: *Voyages and travels* a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Narrower terms for *Voyages and travels*

Aeronautics – flights a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Air travel [R] a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Buccaneers a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Discoveries in geography a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Grand tours (education) a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Literary journeys a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Mountaineering expeditions a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Ocean travel [R] a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Overland journeys to the Pacific a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Papal visits a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Pilgrims and pilgrimages a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Quests (expeditions) a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Railroad travel [R] a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Scientific expeditions a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Seafaring life a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Shipwrecks a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Space flights a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travel delays a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Voyages around the world a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Voyages to the Pacific coast a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Related terms for *Voyages and travels*:

Adventure and adventurers a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travel [R] a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travelers a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Primary term #3:
Tourism a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Narrower terms for *Tourism*:

Architecture and tourism a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Cruise lines a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

<i>Culture and tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Customs administration and tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Dark tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Ecotourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Forest canopy tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Garden tours</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Geotourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Heritage tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Holistic tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Holocaust memorial tours</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Indian tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Lake tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Medical tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Music and tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Outfitting industry</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Package tours</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>River tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Royal tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Rural tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Sex tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Sightseeing business</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Space tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar
<i>Sports and tourism</i>	a) Yes b) No c) Don't know	d) Unfamiliar

Sustainable tourism a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Volunteer tourism a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Wine tourism a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Women in tourism a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Related terms for *Tourism*:

National tourism organizations a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Travel [R] a) Yes b) No c) Don't know d) Unfamiliar

Users' Travel-Related Collections Questionnaire

[Note: This questionnaire refers to the practices at the designated repository only, not for your research in general or at other repositories.]

1) When you want to know what kinds of collections or items are in an archive/special collections library, which of these aids do you find most effective (with "1" being the most effective and "4" being the least)?

- _____ a) card catalogues
- _____ b) online catalogues/databases
- _____ c) published guides
- _____ d) staff

2) The four aids listed above are referred to as "access points." When thinking of access points for the collection, please rank the following in order of which you do first (with "1" being the one you would likely go to first and "4" being the one you would do last).

- _____ a) card catalogues
- _____ b) online catalogues/databases
- _____ c) published guides
- _____ d) staff

3) When using an online catalogue or database, do you usually use a "keyword" search or do you use a "subject" search?

a) _____ keyword _____ subject

b) why?

4) When you were at the designated repository, were you able to use the card catalogues, online catalogues/databases and published guides on your own or did you need mediation from staff?

_____ Own _____ Staff

5) At the designated repository, were you able to find the amount of material you expected, when you came to do research, based on your experience searching the online catalogues/databases or published guides prior to your visit?

_____met expectations _____did not meet expectations _____exceeded expectations

6) Indicate your level of confidence using online research tools, with 4 being the most confident:

_____1 _____2 _____3 _____4

7) Did you a) use travel-related subject terms in your research, and if so, b) which ones?

a) _____yes _____no

b) terms used: _____

8) Did you use genre/form terms (“diaries,” “journals,” “archives”) when searching, and if so, b) which ones?

a) _____yes _____no

b) terms used: _____

Appendix B

Chart B1 APS All Travel-Related terms

Chart B2 APS *Travel* terms

Chart B3 APS *Voyages and travels* terms

Chart B4 APS *Tourism* terms

Chart B5 Penn All Travel-Related terms

Chart B6 PHS All Travel-Related terms

Chart B7 PHS *Travel* terms

Chart B8 PHS *Voyages and travels* terms

Chart B9 PHS *Tourism* terms

Chart B10 HSP All Travel-Related terms

Chart B11 HSP *Travel* terms

Chart B12 HSP *Voyages and travels* terms

Chart B13 HSP *Tourism* terms

Chart B14 All Repositories

Chart B15 All Union Databases

Chart B16 All Finding Aids Databases

Appendix B

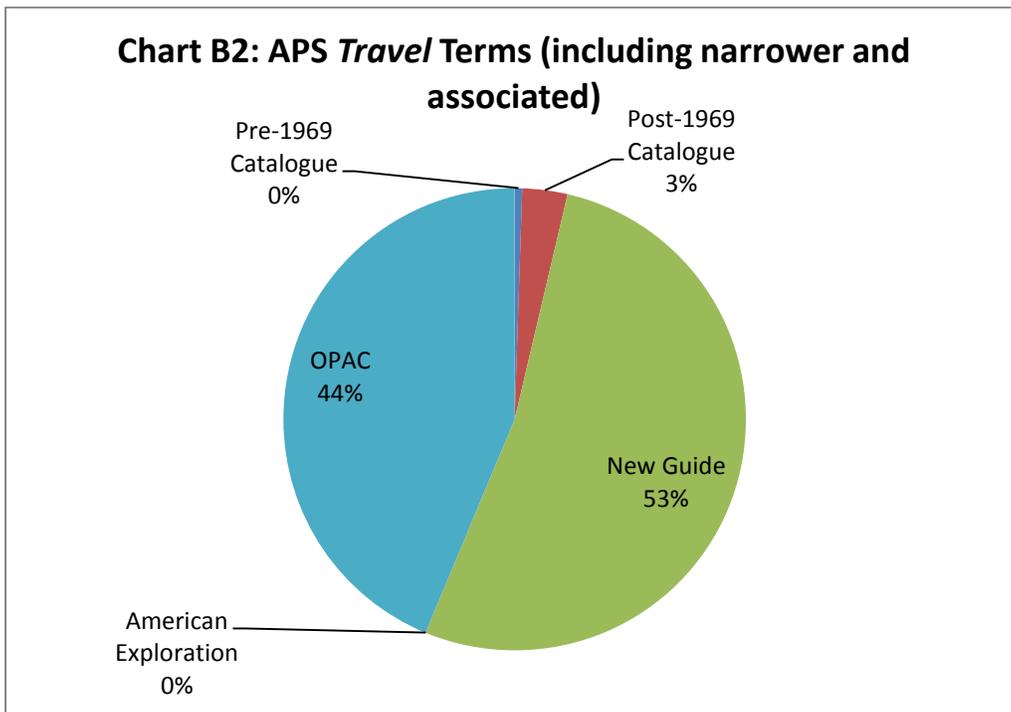
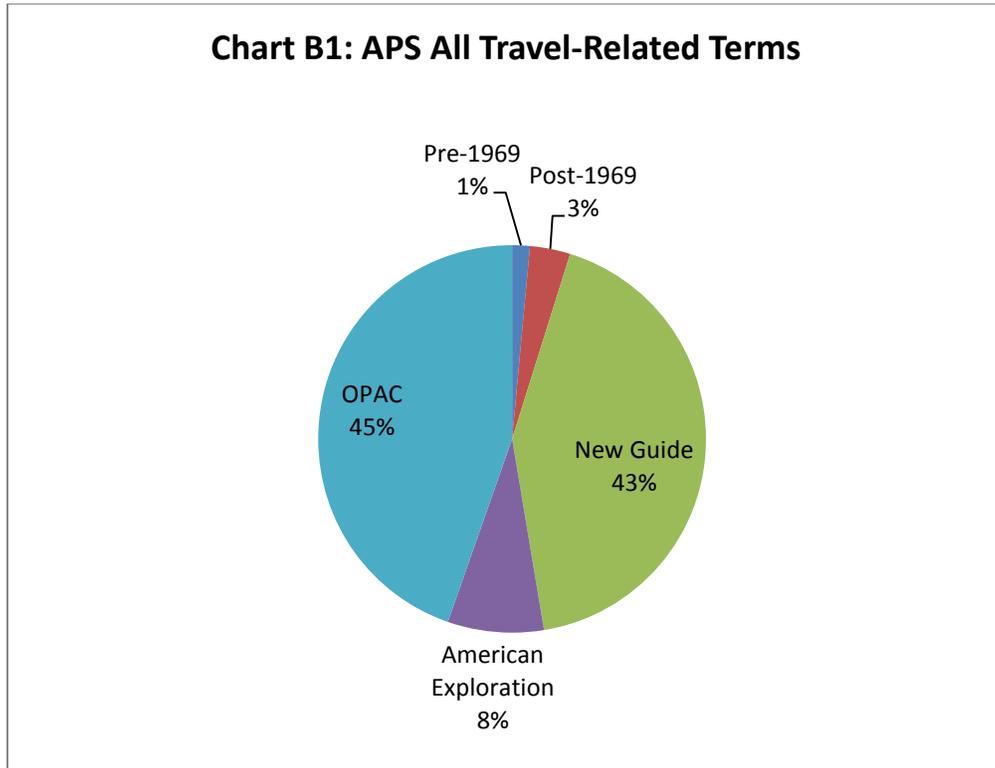


Chart B3: APS Voyages and Travels Terms (including narrower and related)

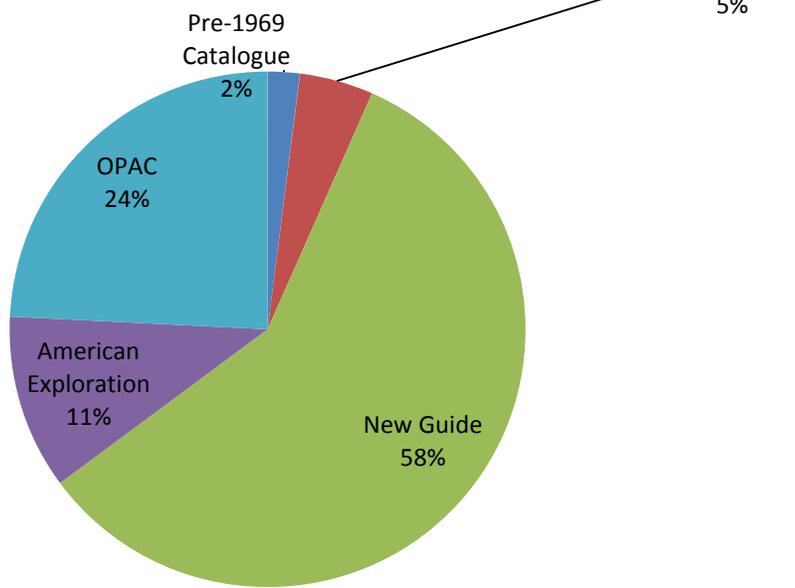


Chart B4: APS Tourism Terms (including narrower and related)

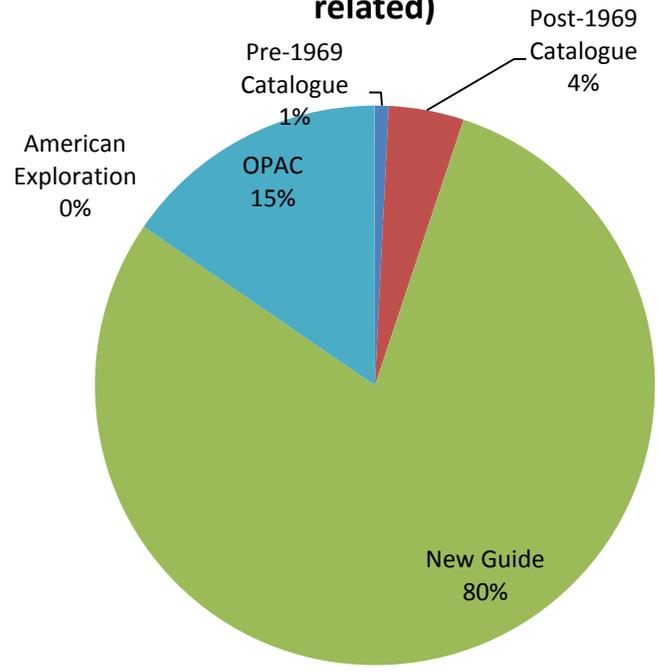


Chart B5: Penn All Travel-Related Terms, *Travel* (narrower and associated), *Voyages and travels* (narrower and related) and *Tourisim* (narrower and related) terms

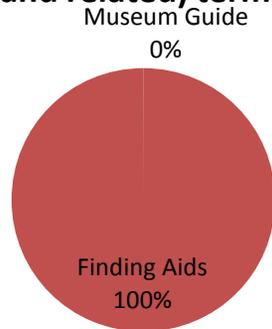
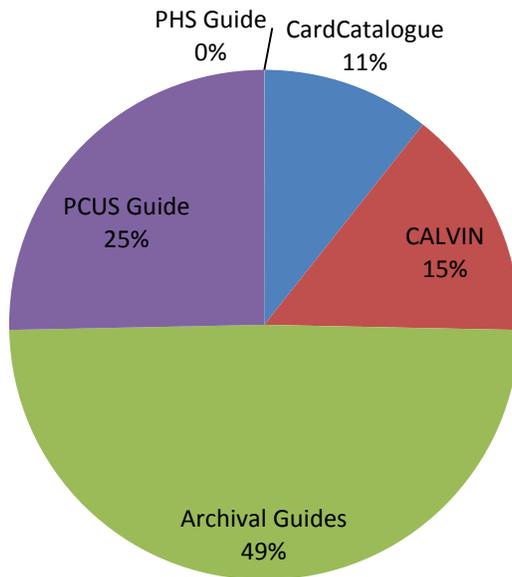


Chart B6: PHS All Travel-Related Terms



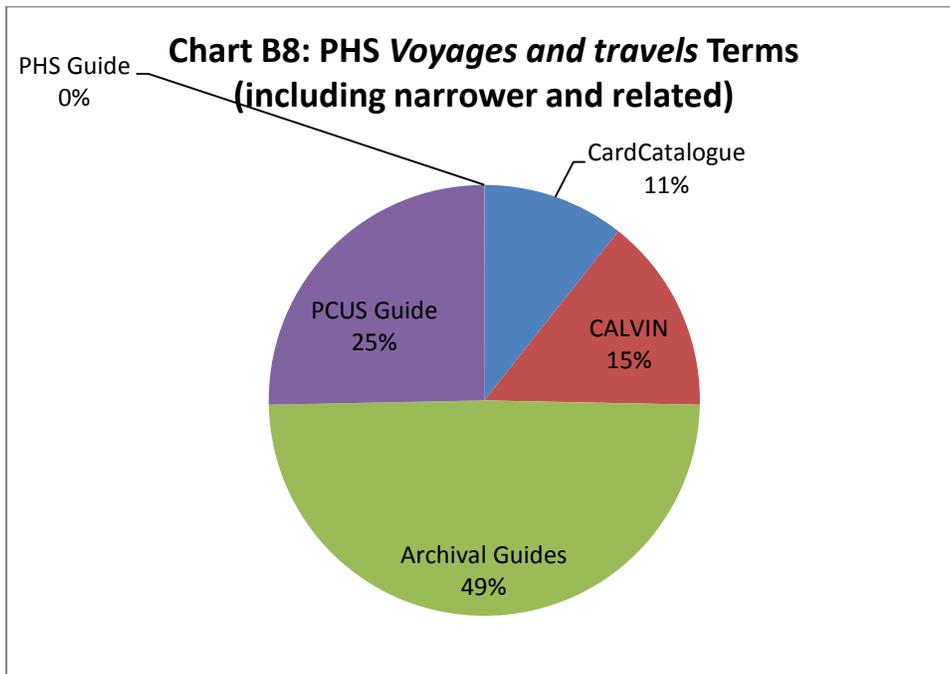
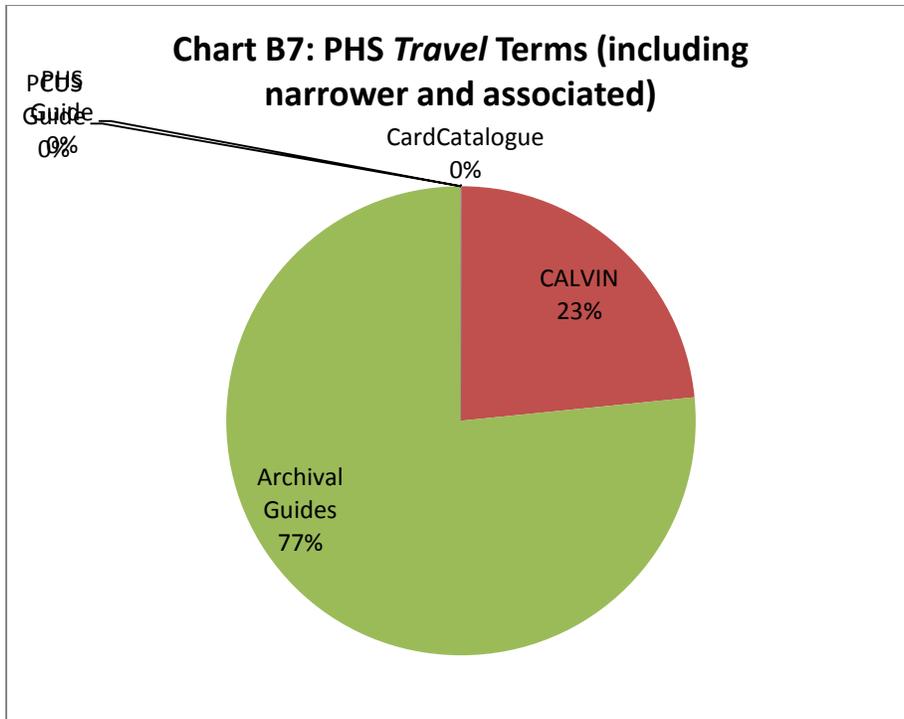


Chart B9: PHS *Tourism* Terms (including narrower and related)

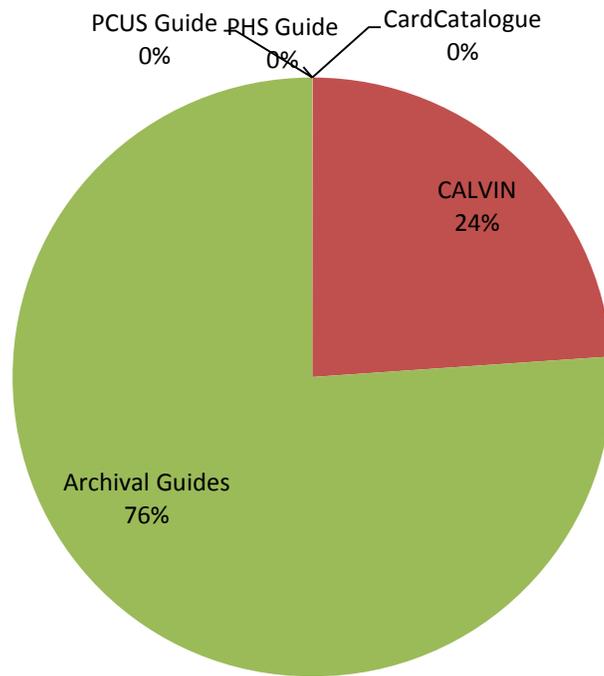
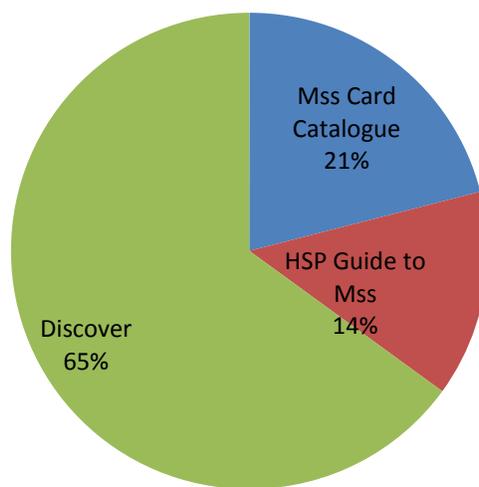
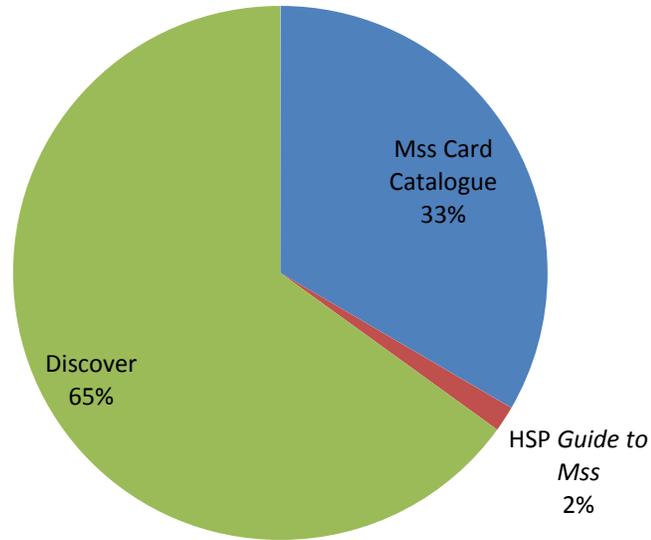


Chart B10: HSP All Travel-Related Terms



**Chart B11: HSP *Travel* Terms
(including narrower and associated)**



**Chart B12: HSP *Voyages and travel* Terms
(including narrower and related)**

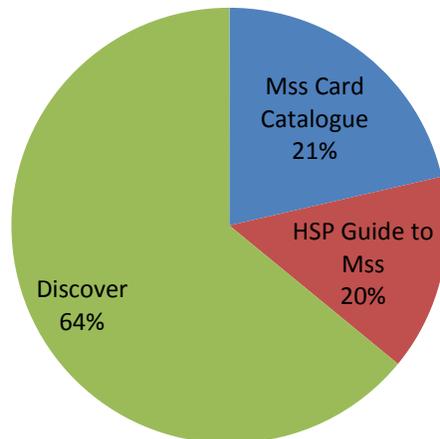


Chart B13: HSP *Tourism* Terms (including narrower and related)

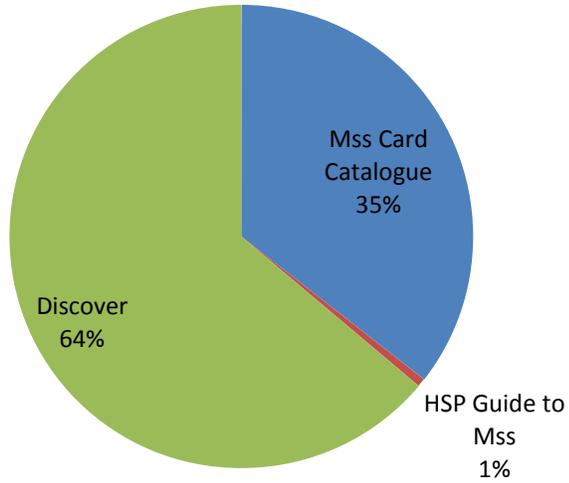


Chart B14 :All Repositories (all travel-related terms)

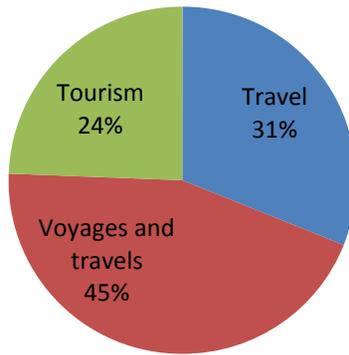


Chart B15: All Union Databases (all travel-related terms)

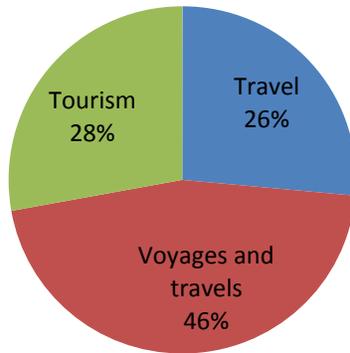
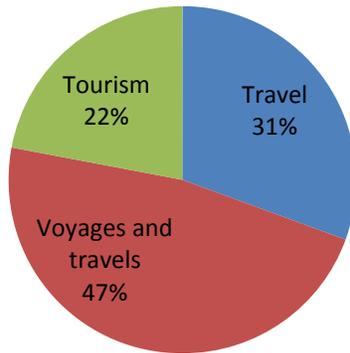


Chart B16: All Finding Aids Databases (all travel-related terms)



Appendix C

Consent Forms

LCSH Travel Terms Lists

INVITATION TO PARTICIPATE IN THE RESEARCH STUDY

Date:

Name of participant:

Name of organization (if applicable):

E-mail address:

Contact number:

Dear Participant:

I am a student in the Department of Information Science at the University of South Africa (UNISA). I am conducting a research study to gather information for my doctoral thesis. The purpose of this research is to examine, describe, and identify gaps in the description of travel archives with the goal of providing more efficient access. Research conducted on travel archives (and the recommendations stemming from this research) will serve as a case study and be applicable to other forms of genre archives.

Your participation will primarily entail individual face-to-face interviews. I may also need to contact you for a follow-up call if the need arises to clarify any of your responses as I am analysing my data. With your permission, I will take notes and otherwise document our conversations. The notes will be used to facilitate the analysis of your responses. Your responses will be reported anonymously.

Please be assured that participation in the study is strictly voluntary. You are free to decline participation, cancel an interview or withdraw from the study at any time. If you have questions concerning your participation, the study or its findings, please feel free to contact me.

Thank you in advance for your time and consideration. I look forward to meeting with you.

Truly,

L.J. Arnold
Doctoral Student
Department of Information Science (Archives)
University of South Africa (UNISA)
Local (office) e-mail address: larnold@hsp.org
Local (Philadelphia) telephone: 215.732.6200 x237

CONSENT AGREEMENT FORM

You are being asked to take part in a doctoral research study by an archival student from the University of South Africa's (UNISA) Department of Information Science. Your participation in the study is completely voluntary. You may refuse to join, or may withdraw your consent to be in the study, for any reason, at any time.

Please read the following details of the study carefully in order to make an informed choice about whether or not to participate in this study.

Details of the study:

The purpose of this research is to examine, describe, and identify gaps in the description of travel archives with the goal of providing more efficient access. Research conducted on travel archives (and the recommendations stemming from this research) will serve as a case study and be applicable to other forms of genre archives. Your participation will primarily consist of individual face-to-face interviews. The researcher may also need to contact you for a follow-up call if the need arises to clarify any of your responses as he analyses his data. With your permission, the researcher will take notes and otherwise document the interactions. The notes will be used to facilitate the analysis of your responses. Your responses will be reported anonymously.

I have read the information provided above and I voluntarily agree to participate in this research study.

- I agree
- I disagree

_____ (signature)

_____ (printed name)

All research which includes human volunteers is governed by the UNISA Research Policy that works to protect your rights and welfare. If you have questions or concerns as a research subject, you may contact the Research Directorate of the University of South Africa.

If you have questions about your participation, the study or its findings, please feel free to contact the researcher, L.J. Arnold, at:

Local (office) e-mail address: larnold@hsp.org
Local (Philadelphia) telephone: 215.732.6200 x237

Travel (Travel writing, Travelers' writings, Travel journalism), Voyages and travels and Tourism {[R]= repeated term}

Primary term #1: Travel

Narrower terms for *Travel*:

Adventure travel

Air travel

Astrology and travel

Automobile travel

Bicycle touring

Bus travel

Business travel

Caravans

Games for travelers

Homecoming

Independent travel

International travel

International travel regulations

Interstellar travel

Luggage—packing

Motorcycle touring

Ocean travel

Pets and travel

Railroad travel

Signs and symbols for travelers

Teenage travel programs

Travel restrictions

Travelers' aid societies

Workers' travel programs

Youth travel programs

Associated terms for *Travel*:

Travel writing (used mainly for narratives and memoirs)

Travelers' writings (collections of works by travel writers have the heading: this may also be further described by adding a nationality, like: *Travelers' writings, Canadian*)

Travel journalism (works on journalism, focusing on travel)

Primary Term #2: *Voyages and travels*

Narrower terms for *Voyages and travels*

Aeronautics – flights

Air travel [R]

Buccaneers

Discoveries in geography

Grand tours (education)

Literary journeys

Mountaineering expeditions

Ocean travel [R]

Overland journeys to the Pacific

Papal visits

Pilgrims and pilgrimages

Quests (expeditions)

Railroad travel [R]

Scientific expeditions

Seafaring life

Shipwrecks

Space flights

Travel delays

Voyages around the world

Voyages to the Pacific coast

Related terms for *Voyages and travels*:

Adventure and adventurers

Travel [R]

Travelers

Primary term #3: *Tourism*

Narrower terms for *Tourism*:

Architecture and tourism

Cruise lines

Culture and tourism

Customs administration and tourism

Dark tourism

Ecotourism

Forest canopy tourism

Garden tours

Geotourism

Heritage tourism

Holistic tourism

Holocaust memorial tours

Indian tourism

Lake tourism

Medical tourism

Music and tourism

Outfitting industry

Package tours

River tourism

Royal tourism

Rural tourism

Sex tourism

Sightseeing business

Space tourism

Sports and tourism

Sustainable tourism

Volunteer tourism

Wine tourism

Women in tourism

Related terms for *Tourism*:

National tourism organizations

Travel [R]

Appendix D

Archivists' Travel-Related Collections Interview Schedule (8 responses)

Archivists' Travel-Related Collections Interview Schedule (8 responses)

Summary

1) What do you consider are travel-related collections?

Papers that document activities that are traveling for the "sake of tourism as opposed to travel for a purpose, like carrying out mission work." It is someone who "traveled for personal entertainment or leisure and documented it," not where travel is incidental to what they were doing.

The Archivist thinks of travel as "more touristy, to go somewhere to see something." Also, travel "denotes a journey." Although exploration [a main focus of APS] involves travel, the Archivist does not think of it in terms of travel, but rather that someone "went somewhere and got some data."

"There are collections at HSP which come to mind: Edith Madeira (Red Cross nurse overseas); George Vaux (travel journal to Yellowstone National Park); the Bok papers (including travel to India and meeting Gandhi)."

"Generally, PHS doesn't have any, but there are a few exceptions. One collection has a definite travel journal and then there are the Wells Papers, which is heavily a travel collection."

"Travel journals, diaries, photographs, promotional material, ephemera from expeditions and individual journeys."

"Travel collections could include travel diaries (vacations, Grand Tours, etc.), photo albums, and ephemera (ocean liner menus, etc.). It would also describe the goings of people coming to Pennsylvania or from Pennsylvania (across oceans to get here from Ireland or where ever or going West with the Gold Rush). It could also be people off to war (or in the military or military-related activity like nursing) or in the military in peacetime, but overseas."

"A lot could be considered travel, such as taking a train or bus across town. But for the Penn Museum Archives it would be anyone who took an expedition from Philadelphia; that would be travel."

"A broad topic, but fits in well with what is at Penn: personal papers, photos, etc. All of the archeology and anthropology collections have travel in them (certainly getting there and back)."

2) Have you had researchers using your facility looking specifically for travel-related material?

"Researchers use the PHS for a variety of reasons beyond the primary topics of medicine, education and evangelization. Visitors may log in that they are looking for information on China, but will not elaborate on what aspect they are looking; it could be travel."

"Yes. One recently was from Drexel--looking at images of people from all over the world."

"I'm not aware of anyone coming to PHS specifically for travel."

Yes.

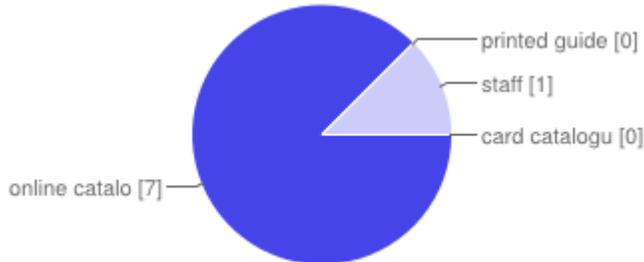
"Yes, researchers are often looking at photos (as part of an expedition). They may have specific Museum questions (about the artifacts), but a few of them have interest in other aspects of the archives. For instance, 2013 was the 100th year of getting the Sphinx at the Museum. Researchers studied how it physically got to the Museum: crating, shipping, customs (listing it as *une pierre antique* to save costs). Also, there was a World Series happening in Philadelphia at the time of arrival and there were no dock workers available to get it from the port to the Museum, since they were all focused on the baseball game. All of this information about the Sphinx' travel came from the Penn Museum Archives."

"I'm sure we have, but I have a limited role in Public Services, so am not the best barometer for that."

"Yes, in a couple of instances (not general, but very specific: like our Egyptian travel journal)."

"I can't recall any."

3) What would be the best way for a travel researcher to access your pertinent collections?



card catalogues	0 0%
online catalogues/databases	7 88%
printed guides	0 0%
staff	1 12%

Additional rankings:

B (Online) then C (Printed Guides).

B (Online: because there is an integrated books & archives search engine) and then D (Staff).

B (Online) then A (Card Catalogues).

D (Staff) and then B (Online Finding Aids).

B ("Guides to Archival Collections") and then D (Staff).

B (Online).

B (Online), then A (Card Catalogue), then D (Staff) then C (Other Guides).

B (Online Catalogue) then A (Card Catalogue).

4) What is the effect of More Product, Less Process on subject access in general?

APS still processes to the folder level "to make access meaningful." They do not use MPLP. When considering how to apply it, they would ask: How would MPLP work; how would it effect using Archivists' Toolkit; how would it effect researcher access? They decided not to use it but rather to process collections (up to 1850) to the item level and 21st century collections to the folder level, with a grey area in between.

"I don't think it has had an effect. PHS is very judicious in application of subject terms, very thoughtful in applying terms in a 'not too dense/not too light' manner. PHS has 'upped' their accessions process to do more careful looking in the front end so we have more information going into processing. We have not completely adopted MPLP, but also are not doing item-level processing."

"I don't believe MPLP has any affect on subject access. We used minimal processing for a special-funded project, but the Finding Aids were really detailed."

"In some way MPLP has had a detrimental effect. We use a modified MPLP process, still processing to the folder level. We create a folder-level inventory. If, when looking through material, there were a folder of travel-related material, we would add this to the Scope Note. MPLP would reduce processors' ability to identify materials."

"Not really, but MPLP changes it. It is possible that using MPLP would yield fewer subject terms, but then again they might have gotten more collections processed and therefore there are more subject terms in general. We don't do subject headings well, but that is not due to MPLP. Staff need better training. They often just reuse non-standard headings from other HSP records."

"I'm not a big fan of MPLP for expedition archives (perhaps only administrative papers). Scientists are not the best filers. So by organizing the material and putting as much as you can in the finding aid, you really get to know a collection. I tell the processors to take as long as you need. I would rather have a good job than a quick one."

"I struggle with MPLP. I see its value, but it hinders archival collections. MPLP does not have an effect on how collections are described at the Museum."

"Yes. MPLP could negatively affect subject access if you are not looking in every file. For instance, sometimes a researcher will say 'Do you know you have this item in the collection?' and then we'll add a note to the record."

5) What level of a collection's description warrants travel-related subject access?

"Generally at the Collection level, rarely at the series or sub-series level. There are almost no tracings taken from below the collection level."

"When it seems significant. Only when an item that is travel-related is very notable (or we think that researchers would note it) would it be highlighted. It is a judgement call. For example, the Wells Papers are all about travel. When the documentation in a collection is done for the 'sake of travel' or a portion rises to a certain quantity. It is quantity & uniqueness."

"In terms of keywords there is a low level, since most of the collections here deal with some level of travel."

"Our catalogue headings are coming from the 545 or 520 notes, so travel would have to be mentioned there for any type of subject tracing."

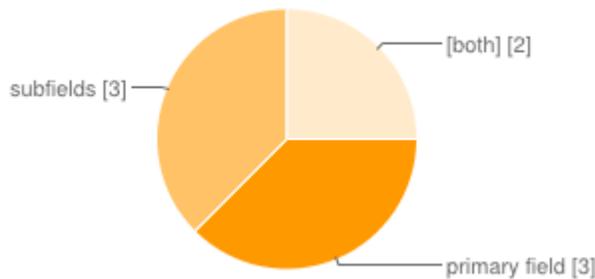
"There would have to be a diary or journal of a trip account or a minimal number of items (such as letters) describing travel." APS does not mark exploration as travel.

"The archival staff catalogue at a collection level so that is where it would be found (and in the principle names and place names assigned)." Staff are not at their ideal level for archival description, but they aspire to do better.

"If they see something that looks rich at the Folder Level."

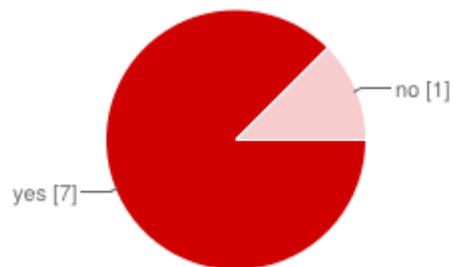
"If there are obvious words in the Collections Scope (trip journal or grand tour or 'traveled for business,' etc.)."

6) If you do use travel-related subject access terms, are they primary fields or are they located in subfields?



primary fields	3	37.5%
subfields	3	37.5%
[both]	2	25%

7) Do you use genre/form terms, either as a 655-Tag (or EAD equivalent) or as a 6XX-Tag subfield (or EAD equivalent)?



yes 7 88%

no 1 12%

Primary or subfield:

Primary.

Subfield.

"We don't use genre terms that much."

Both primary and sub-fields.

8) How many subject access points do you usually provide for a collection?

a) personal name (600) 8 100%

b) institutional name (610) 8 100%

c) topic (650) 8 100%

d) geographical (651) 8 100%

e) genre (655) 7 88%

General comments:

"Not off the top of my head. We use all of them [categories a-e]. It becomes evident as one processes, but there is not a specific number."

Between A, B and D about 10-15 terms, but it "depends on the collection and the ability of a processor to identify subjects." They want to be more caught up with description in order to do a better job at subject access.

"Yes to all of these 5 categories of terms. HSP uses Family Name in a 600 as well. HSP also uses Uniform Title. But as for a number, as many as it needs."

There is no minimum or maximum number for these access points.

It varies by size of the collection. They look for correspondents, organizations, and geography.

A & B should be <40/50; C <10; D for exploration/travel, but not scientists' papers; E only if noteworthy.

"It all depends on the content of each collection. But generally I don't like more than 4-5 genre terms."

"Yes to all, but it depends on the collection. Maybe around 5 personal names or 3 or 4 topics. But whatever the collection needed without going overboard."

9a) Of the following TRAVEL related LCSH terms {[R]= repeated term}, please check one of the following: a) There are items in our collections relating to this term. b) There are not items in our collections relating to this term. c) I do not know if there are items in our collections relating to this term. d) I am not familiar with this specific term.

Travel:

Yes	8	100%
No	0	0%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Adventure travel:

Yes	6	75%
No	2	25%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Air travel:

Yes	4	50%
No	2	25%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Astrology and travel:

Yes	0	0%
No	3	37.5%
Don't know	5	62.5%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Automobile travel:

Yes	6	75%
No	1	12.5%
Don't know	1	12.5%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Bicycle touring:

Yes	4	50%
No	1	12%
Don't know	3	38%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Bus travel:

Yes	4	50%
No	1	12%
Don't know	3	38%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Business travel:

Yes	8	100%
No	0	0%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Caravans:

Yes	2	25%
No	2	25%
Don't know	3	38%
Unfamiliar	1	12%

Games for travelers:

Yes	0	0%
No	4	50%
Don't know	4	50%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Homecoming:

Yes	4	50%
No	1	12.5%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	1	12.5%

Independent travel:

Yes	6	75%
No	0	0%
Don't know	1	12.5%
Unfamiliar	1	12.5%

International travel:

Yes	8	100%
No	0	0%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

International travel regulations:

Yes	4	50%
No	2	25%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Interstellar travel:

Yes	1	12%
No	5	63%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Luggage—packing:

Yes	4	50%
No	2	25%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Motorcycle touring:

Yes	3	37.5%
No	3	37.5%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Ocean travel:

Yes	8	100%
No	0	0%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Pets and travel:

Yes	3	37.5%
No	3	37.5%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Railroad travel:

Yes	6	75%
No	0	0%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Signs and symbols for travelers:

Yes	0	0%
No	1	12%
Don't know	5	63%
Unfamiliar	2	25%

Teenage travel programs:

Yes	4	50%
No	3	38%
Don't know	1	12%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Travel restrictions:

Yes	6	75%
No	0	0%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Travelers' aid societies:

Yes 2 25%
No 0 0%
Don't know 6 75%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Workers' travel programs:

Yes 2 25%
No 1 12.5%
Don't know 4 50%
Unfamiliar 1 12.5%

Youth travel programs:

Yes 2 25%
No 2 25%
Don't know 4 50%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Travel writing:

Yes 7 88%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Travelers' writings:

Yes 6 75%
No 1 12.5%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 1 12.5%

Travel journalism:

Yes	4 50%
No	3 38%
Don't know	1 12%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

9b) Of the following VOYAGES AND TRAVELS related LCSH terms {[R]= repeated term}, please check one of the following: a) There are items in our collections relating to this term. b) There are not items in our collections relating to this term. c) I do not know if there are items in our collections relating to this term. d) I am not familiar with this specific term.

Voyages and travels:

Yes	8 100%
No	0 0%
Don't know	0 0%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Aeronautics – flights:

Yes	7 88%
No	0 0%
Don't know	1 12%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Air travel [R]:

Yes	4 50%
No	2 25%
Don't know	2 25%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Buccaneers :

Yes	3 37.5%
No	3 37.5%
Don't know	2 25%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Discoveries in geography:

Yes 7 88%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Grand tours (education):

Yes 7 88%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Literary journeys:

Yes 3 37.5%
No 3 37.5%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Mountaineering expeditions:

Yes 4 50%
No 3 38%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Ocean travel [R]:

Yes 8 100%
No 0 0%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Overland journeys to the Pacific:

Yes	3	37.5%
No	3	37.5%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Papal visits:

Yes	3	38%
No	4	50%
Don't know	1	12%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Pilgrims and pilgrimages:

Yes	4	50%
No	2	25%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Quests (expeditions):

Yes	7	88%
No	1	12%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Railroad travel [R]:

Yes	6	75%
No	0	0%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Scientific expeditions:

Yes 7 88%
No 0 0%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Seafaring life:

Yes 5 63%
No 2 25%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Shipwrecks:

Yes 6 75%
No 2 25%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Space flights:

Yes 3 37.5%
No 3 37.5%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Travel delays:

Yes 5 63%
No 2 25%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Voyages around the world:

Yes 7 88%
No 0 0%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Voyages to the Pacific coast:

Yes 8 100%
No 0 0%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Adventure and adventurers:

Yes 8 100%
No 0 0%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Travel [R]:

Yes 8 100%
No 0 0%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Travelers:

Yes 7 88%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

9c) Of the following TOURISM related LCSH terms {[R]= repeated term}, please check one of the following: a) There are items in our collections relating to this term. b) There are not items in our collections relating to this term. c) I do not know if there are items in our collections relating to this term. d) I am not familiar with this specific term.

Tourism:

Yes	6 75%
No	2 25%
Don't know	0 0%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Architecture and tourism:

Yes	6 75%
No	0 0%
Don't know	2 25%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Cruise lines:

Yes	6 75%
No	2 25%
Don't know	0 0%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Culture and tourism:

Yes	7 88%
No	0 0%
Don't know	1 12%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Customs administration and tourism:

Yes	1 12%
No	5 63%
Don't know	2 25%
Unfamiliar	0 0%

Dark tourism:

Yes 0 0%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 7 88%

Ecotourism:

Yes 1 12%
No 3 38%
Don't know 4 50%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Forest canopy tourism:

Yes 0 0%
No 6 75%
Don't know 1 12.5%
Unfamiliar 1 12.5%

Garden tours:

Yes 5 62.5%
No 3 37.5%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Geotourism:

Yes 2 25%
No 4 50%
Don't know 1 12.5%
Unfamiliar 1 12.5%

Heritage tourism:

Yes 7 88%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Holistic tourism:

Yes 0 0%
No 5 63%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 2 25%

Holocaust memorial tours:

Yes 1 12.5%
No 6 75%
Don't know 1 12.5%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Indian tourism:

Yes 7 88%
No 1 12%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Lake tourism:

Yes 2 25%
No 5 63%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Medical tourism:

Yes 1 12.5%
No 4 50%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 1 12.5%

Music and tourism:

Yes 3 38%
No 4 50%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Outfitting industry:

Yes 1 12.5%
No 4 50%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 1 12.5%

Package tours:

Yes 4 50%
No 3 38%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

River tourism:

Yes 2 25%
No 4 50%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Royal tourism:

Yes 3 38%
No 4 50%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 1 12%

Rural tourism:

Yes 3 38%
No 4 50%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Sex tourism:

Yes 1 12%
No 5 63%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Sightseeing business:

Yes 4 50%
No 3 38%
Don't know 1 12%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Space tourism:

Yes 0 0%
No 6 75%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Sports and tourism:

Yes	3	37.5%
No	5	62.5%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Sustainable tourism:

Yes	0	0%
No	6	75%
Don't know	2	25%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Volunteer tourism:

Yes	1	12.5%
No	5	62.5%
Don't know	1	12.5%
Unfamiliar	1	12.5%

Wine tourism:

Yes	2	25%
No	5	63%
Don't know	1	12%
Unfamiliar	0	0%

Women in tourism:

Yes	3	38%
No	4	50%
Don't know	0	0%
Unfamiliar	1	12%

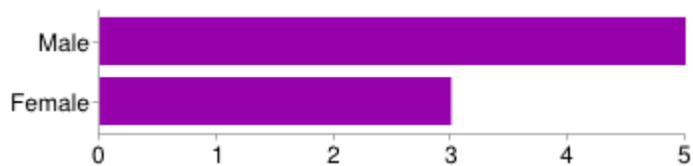
National tourism organizations:

Yes 1 12%
No 5 63%
Don't know 2 25%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Travel [R]:

Yes 8 100%
No 0 0%
Don't know 0 0%
Unfamiliar 0 0%

Gender:

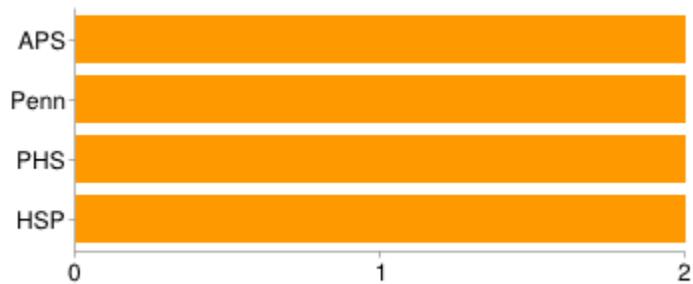


Male 5 62.5%
Female 3 37.5%

Highest degree of education or training:

Bachelor's degree 1 12%
Master's degree 7 88%
Doctorate 0 0%

Repository:



APS 2 25%

Penn 2 25%

PHS 2 25%

HSP 2 25%

Interview Schedule #:

PENN.2

PENN.1

PHS.1

PHS.2

APS.1

HSP.2

HSP.1

APS.2

Appendix E

Users' Travel-Related Collections Questionnaire (12 responses)

Users' Travel-Related Collections Questionnaire (12 responses)

Summary

1) When you want to know what kinds of collections or items are in an archive/special collections library, which of these aids do you find most effective (with "1" being the most effective and "4" being the least)?

Card catalogues:

1	1 8%
2	0 0%
3	0 0%
4	9 75%
N/A [written-in]	2 17%
[left blank]	0 0%

Online catalogues/databases:

1	6 50%
2	2 17%
3	3 25%
4	0 0%
N/A [written-in]	1 8%
[left blank]	0 0%

Published guides:

1	1 8%
2	6 50%
3	4 34%
4	1 8%
N/A [written-in]	0 0%
[left blank]	0 0%

Staff:

1	4	33.4%
2	4	33.4%
3	4	33.2%
4	0	0%
N/A [written-in]	0	0%
[left blank]	0	0%

2) The four aids listed above are referred to as “access points.” When thinking of access points for the collection, please rank the following in order of which you do first (with “1” being the one you would likely go to first and “4” being the one you would do last).

Card catalogues:

1	0	0%
2	1	8%
3	0	0%
4	9	75%
N/A [written-in]	1	8%
[left blank]	1	9%

Online catalogues/databases:

1	8	67%
2	1	8.25%
3	1	8.25%
4	1	8.25%
N/A [written-in]	1	8.25%
[left blank]	0	0%

Published guides:

1	1	8%
2	6	50%
3	5	42%
4	0	0%
N/A [written-in]	0	0%
[left blank]	0	0%

Staff:

1	3 25%
2	4 33%
3	5 42%
4	0 0%
N/A [written-in]	0 0%
[left blank]	0 0%

3a) When using an online catalogue or database, do you usually use a “keyword” search or do you use a “subject” search?

keyword	8 67%
subject	2 17%
[both checked or written-in]	1 8%
[left blank]	1 8%

3b) Why?

I use the keyword first because it is easier to guess keywords than knowing the precise subject to search. A keyword search usually leads to a precise subject, which I then use for a search.

Because I expect that keywords search more fields than just the subjects.

"Subject" provides lateral research.

I like to work "in" from larger concepts to more specific items.

N/A: Finding Aids for this repository were not available online when I began my research project.

Keyword is more flexible in general whereas subject sometimes must be an exact syntax match. Using subjects usually comes after gaining familiarity.

Initially I cast a net as wide as possible, then use the "subject" link within particularly useful items to return a narrower range of responses.

Because the subject search always delivers enormous amounts of information, mostly irrelevant to my research. Keywords restrict the search scope.

Keyword search will search subject field as well. However, keyword searching is not always an option. Preference indicated is slight.

I was not confident that subject tags had been applied to all the data/files of interest. I should add that [at] PHS I could and did search for individuals as well by their personal names.

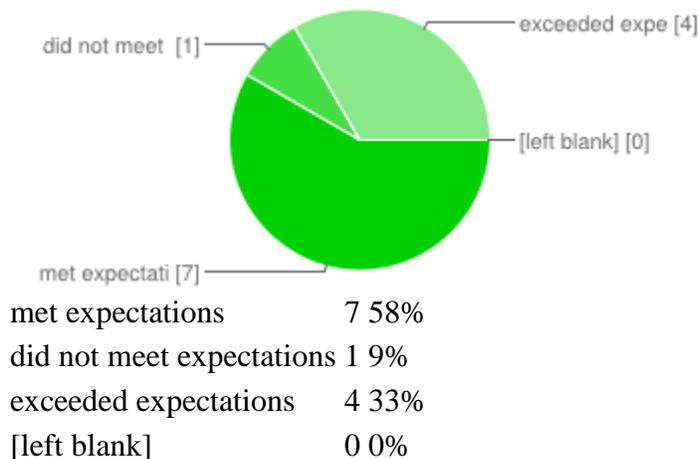
It's easier to find out what my research needs by the "keyword" search. Sometimes a "subject" search would fail if I am not familiar with how the libraries/archives create the subjects, because they usually use different terms.

Tends to return more results

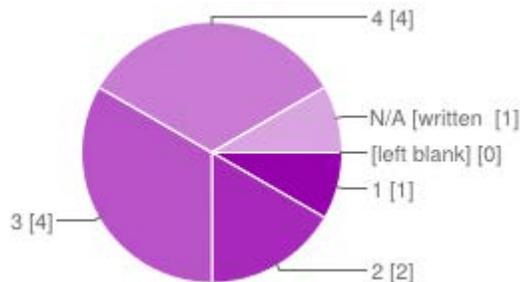
4) When you were at the designated repository, were you able to use the card catalogues, online catalogues/databases and published guides on your own or did you need mediation from staff?

Own	7 58%
Staff	4 33%
[both checked or written-in]	1 9%
[left blank]	0 0%

5) At the designated repository, were you able to find the amount of material you expected, when you came to do research, based on your experience searching the online catalogues/databases or published guides prior to your visit?

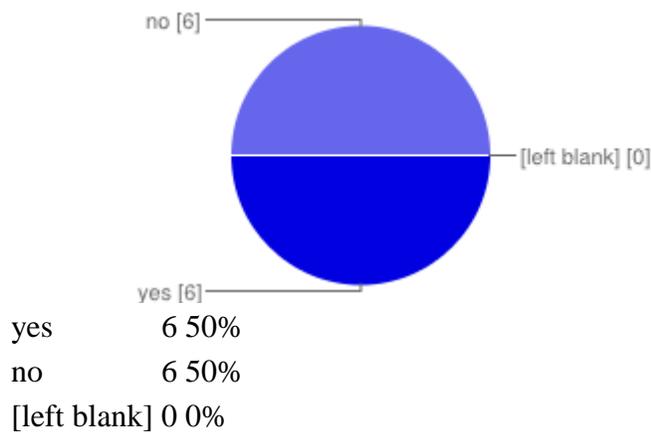


6) Indicate your level of confidence using online research tools, with 4 being the most confident:



1	1 8%
2	2 17%
3	4 33.5%
4	4 33.5%
N/A [written in]	1 8%
[left blank]	0 0%

7a) Did you use travel-related subject terms in your research?



7b) If you used travel-related subject terms in your research, which ones?

Place names; missionary

Correspondence between Davenport and Steggorda, Kidder, and Francis Geno Benedict in the Charles B. Davenport Papers. Also his diaries. Subjects: Race crossings, Jamaica/Yucatan

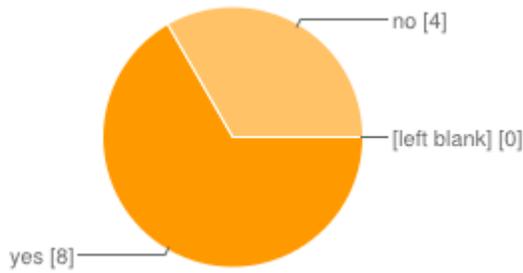
Transportation, urban transportation, description and travel, travel, gazetteers, Cumberland Road, roads

I used the search heading "Sudan" and "Ethiopia" since I was only interested in the history of particular ethnic groups.

Names of particular places; names of people who traveled to those places

"Matto Grosso Expedition," "Brazil Exploration 1931"

8a) Did you use genre/form terms (“diaries,” “journals,” “archives”) when searching?



yes 8 67%
 no 4 33%
 [left blank] 0 0%

8b) If you used genre/form terms, which ones?

diaries, journals

diaries, journals, accounts, personal narratives

hospital reports, journals, magazines

correspondence, field notes, journals, catalog

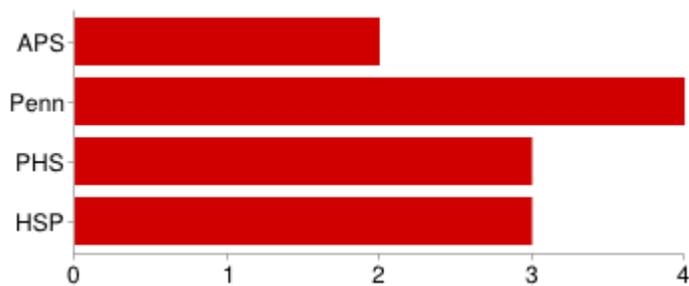
archives, journals, field notes, photographs

diaries, journals, narratives, correspondence, memoirs

diaries, journals, notes, correspondence, reports, accounts, photographs, field notes

letters, wills, maps, plans, newspapers (Spanish equivalents)

Repository:



APS 2 17%
Penn 4 33%
PHS 3 25%
HSP 3 25%

Gender:

Male 7 58%
Female 5 42%
[undetermined] 0 0%

Questionnaire #:

PHS.3
PENN.1
PENN.2
PENN.3
PENN.4
PHS.1
PHS.2
APS.1
HSP.3
HSP.2
HSP.1
APS.2

Appendix F

Acronyms

Acronyms

AACR2

Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd edition

ACRL

Association of College and Research Libraries

AJHS

American Jewish Historical Society

ALA

American Library Association

AMC

Archival and Manuscripts Control

APS

American Philosophical Society

AT

Archivists' Toolkit

DACS

Describing Archives: A Content Standard

DVAG

Delaware Valley Archivists Group

EAC-CPF

Encoded Archival Context—Corporate bodies, Persons, and Families

EAD

Encoded Archival Description

FAST

Faceted Application of Subject Terminology

FRBR

Functional Requirement for Bibliographic Records

HSP

Historical Society of Pennsylvania

HTML

HyperText Markup Language

ICA

International Council on Archives

InterPARES

International Research of Permanent Authentic Electronic Record Project

IR

Information Retrieval

IRLA

Independent Research Libraries Association

JSTOR

Journal Storage

LC

Library of Congress

LCP

Library Company of Philadelphia

LCSH

Library of Congress Subject Headings

LISTA

Library, Information Science and Technology Abstracts

LOC

Library of Congress

MARC

Machine Readable Cataloguing

MARC AMC

Machine Readable Cataloguing Archival and Manuscripts Control

MPLP

More Product, Less Process

NAAIRS

National Archives Automated Archival Information Retrieval System

NARA

National Archives and Records Administration

NLP

Natural Language Processing

OCLC

Online Computer Library Center

OECD

Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development

OPAC

Online Public Access Catalogue

PACSCL

Philadelphia Area Consortium of Special Collections Libraries

PC1

Public Catalogue 1(Historical Society of Pennsylvania)

PCCSA

Presbyterian Church in the Confederate States of America

PCUS

Presbyterian Church in the U.S.

PC(USA)

Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.)

PDF

Portable Document Format

PHS

Presbyterian Historical Society

Presnet

Presidential Libraries Information Network

RDA

Resource Description and Access

RLG

Research Libraries Group

RLIN

Research Libraries Information Network

SAA

Society of American Archivists

SATW

Society of American Travel Writers

UBC

University of British Columbia

UCLA

University of California--Los Angeles

Unisa

University of South Africa

UPCUSA

United Presbyterian Church in the U.S.A.

USMARC

United States Machine Readable Cataloguing

WHC

Western History Collections (University of Oklahoma)